BASIC FIELD MANUAL

VOLUME II

INFANTRY DRILL REGULATIONS

UNITED STATES INFANTRY ASSOCIATION

THE GENERAL SERVICE SCHOOLS

LIBRARY



CLASS NUMBER M 404-G.73-A

ACCESSION NUMBER 51091

SPECIAL COLLECTIONS

FILE WITH 27-5 C.1

BASIC FIELD MANUAL

UNITED STATES ARMY

VOLUME II

INFANTRY DRILL REGULATIONS

PREPARED UNDER THE
DIRECTION OF THE CHIEF
OF INFANTRY

(INCLUDES ALL CHANGES TO MARCH 1, 1931)

OBSOLETE

PRODUCED FOR
THE UNITED STATES INFANTRY ASSOCIATION
BY THE
NATIONAL SERVICE PUBLISHING COMPANY
WASHINGTON, D. C.

NOV 17 '31

Copyright by
United States Infantry Association
Washington, D. C.

1st Edition, January, 1930
2nd Edition, April, 1930
3rd Edition, May, 1930
4th Edition, January, 1931
5th Edition, March, 1931

KNOWLEDGE IS POWER



National Service Publishing Co.

The Lord Baltimore Press
BALTIMORE, MD., U. S. A.

A. G. 062.11 BFM (6-19-29) Pub.

FIRST INDORSEMENT

War Department, Adjutant General's Office, Washington, D. C., June 22, 1929.

To Chief of Infantry.

1. The text of Basic Field Manuals, Vols. I, II, and III, is approved for extended trial by the Service.

2. There is no objection to their being printed and distributed commercially to the Service by the Infantry Association.*

3. The manuals contain in compact form the substance of regulations now in force and of others, approved or under consideration, but not yet published. While these manuals are tentative in nature their use by the Service is authorized.

4. If printed, this indorsement will appear as a foreword in order to define clearly the status of the publications.

5. The submission to The Adjutant General of criticisms and comment on the manuals is invited.

By order of the Secretary of War:

ALFRED J. BOOTH,
Adjutant General.

* Under this authority the publishers have produced this text exactly as prepared by the War Dept., following the approved system of paragraph references. Chapter, section and paragraph numbers are shown on all right hand pages, and in a few cases page references have been inserted in the text, where this appeared helpful. An alphabetical index of topical headings of numbered paragraphs will be found in the back of the book.

THE FIELD MANUAL PROJECT

A MANUAL FOR COMMANDERS OF LARGE UNITS. (M. C. L. U.)

Vol. I. *Operations*
A guide for commanders and staffs for tactical operations of large units.

Vol. II. *Administration*
A guide for the administration of large units in a theater of operations.

STAFF OFFICERS' FIELD MANUAL. (S. O. F. M.)

Staff principles and functions applicable to the staffs of all units, together with pertinent reference data.

BASIC FIELD MANUALS. (B. F. M.)

Training, administrative and reference data applicable to more than one arm, with special reference to the smaller units.

Vol. I. *Field Service Pocketbook.* (F. S. P.)
The individual.

Vol. II. *Infantry Drill Regulations.* (I. D. R.)
Drill, dismounted ceremonies and inspections; the infantry pack, display of equipment and tent drill.

Vol. III. *Basic Weapons.* (B. W.)
Marksmanship and mechanical training of the rifle, automatic rifle, pistol, machine gun, 37-mm. gun, 3-inch trench mortar, bayonet and grenade instruction. Technique of fire (37-mm. gun, 3-inch trench mortar and machine gun); musketry and combat practice of small units, instruments.

Vol. IV. *Signal Communications.* (S. C.)
Signal regulations and technical information needed by officers and enlisted men on signal communications duty of arms other than the Signal Corps.

Vol. V. *Transport.* (T.)
Equitation, training remounts, use and care of animals and of animal-drawn, pack, motor and tractor transport.

Vol. VI. *Administrative Regulations.* (A. R.)
Army Regulations essential to small units.

Vol. VII. *Military Law.* (M. L.)
The Manual for Courts-Martial, including the Articles of War; the Rules of Land Warfare, including recent conventions relative to the sick and wounded of armies in the field and to prisoners of war; an epitome of the legal principles applicable to military forces when aiding the civil power.

Vol. VIII. *Operations of Combined Arms (Small Units).* (O. C. A.)
The principles, doctrines and methods governing the tactical employment of combined arms with reference to the small units.

FIELD MANUALS FOR THE ARMS.

The manual for each arm contains, primarily, the principles, doctrines and methods governing the employment of that arm and pertinent reference data.

***Infantry Field Manual.* (I. F. M.)**
Vol. I. *Units other than Tanks.*
Vol. II. *Tank Units.*

***Cavalry Field Manual.* (C. F. M.)**

***Field Artillery Field Manual.* (F. A. F. M.)**
Vol. I. *Organization and Drill.*
Vol. II. *Tactics and Technique.*

***Coast Artillery Field Manual.* (C. A. F. M.)**
Vol. I. *Harbor Defense, Railway and Tractor-drawn Units.*
Vol. II. *Antiaircraft Artillery Units.*

***Air Corps Field Manual.* (A. C. F. M.)**

***Engineer Field Manual.* (E. F. M.)**
Vol. I. *Engineer Troops.*
Vol. II. *Military Field Engineering.*

***Signal Corps Field Manual.* (S. C. F. M.)**

BASIC FIELD MANUAL

VOLUME II.

INFANTRY DRILL REGULATIONS

TABLE OF CONTENTS

NOTE.—The various chapters and sections of this text are based on the Training Regulations listed in the left hand column.

PART ONE. DRILL

CHAPTER 1

GENERAL INTRODUCTION

SECTION			PAGE
420-45	I.	Definitions	1
	II.	General rules	2

CHAPTER 2

DRILL AND COMBAT SIGNALS

SECTION			
420-40	I.	General	6
	II.	Whistle signals	6
	III.	General arm-and-hand signals	7
	IV.	Additional arm-and-hand signals for rifle companies	11
	V.	Additional arm-and-hand signals for machine gun companies	13
	VI.	Additional arm-and-hand signals for howitzer companies	13
	VII.	Arm-and-hand signals for service companies (transportation)	14
	VIII.	Special signals for scouts, observers and patrols	14

CHAPTER 3

DISMOUNTED, WITHOUT ARMS

SECTION			
50-15	I.	General rules	16
	II.	Elementary instruction	16
	III.	Steps and marchings	19

CHAPTER 4

DISMOUNTED, WITH RIFLE AND AUTOMATIC RIFLE

SECTION			
50-20	I.	General rules	22
	II.	Manual of arms	25
	III.	Loadings and firings	30

CHAPTER 5

MANUAL OF THE PISTOL

SECTION			
50-55	I.	General	33
50-55	II.	Dismounted	33
50-60	III.	Mounted	34

CHAPTER 6

MANUAL OF THE GUIDON

SECTION			PAGE
420-45	I.	General	36
	II.	Dismounted	36
	III.	Mounted	38

CHAPTER 7

CLOSE ORDER

SECTION			
420-50	I.	The rifle squad	39
	II.	The rifle platoon	45
	III.	The rifle company	54
420-60	IV.	The battalion	64
420-80	V.	The regiment	68
	VI.	The brigade	75
420-65	VII.	Headquarters companies, battalion, regiment and brigade	76
420-70	VIII.	The service company, regiment	82
420-75	IX.	The howitzer squad, platoon and company	89
420-55	X.	The machine-gun squad, platoon and company	125

CHAPTER 8

EXTENDED ORDER

SECTION			
420-85	I.	The rifle squad, section and platoon	173
420-90	II.	The machine-gun squad, section, and platoon	187

PART TWO. DISMOUNTED CEREMONIES AND INSPECTIONS

CHAPTER 1

DISMOUNTED CEREMONIES

SECTION			
	I.	General rules	201
420-20	II.	Reviews	202
	III.	Parades	208
	IV.	Presentation of decorations	212
	V.	Escorts	213
135-5	VI.	Guard mounting, foot troops	216
	VII.	Relieving the old guard	221

CHAPTER 2

INSPECTIONS

SECTION			
	I.	The rifle company	223
420-50	II.	The battalion	225
	III.	The regiment	226
	IV.	The service company, regiment	226
	V.	The howitzer company	227
	VI.	The machine-gun company	228
	VII.	The headquarters company	233

PART THREE. THE INFANTRY PACK, DISPLAY OF EQUIPMENT AND TENT DRILL

CHAPTER 1

THE INFANTRY PACK

		PAGE
SECTION 50-80	I. Methods of attaching and assembling	235
	II. The adjustment of equipment	245
	III. Special equipment	246

CHAPTER 2

DISPLAY OF EQUIPMENT, FOOT TROOPS, DISMOUNTED AND MOUNTED

50-90	DISMOUNTED AND MOUNTED	248

CHAPTER 3

SHELTER TENT DRILL, FOOT TROOPS

SECTION 225-5	I. Pitching single shelter tents	252
	II. Pitching double shelter tents	254
	III. When packs are not carried	255
	IV. To strike shelter tents	255
	V. In the field	255

CHAPTER 4

WALL AND PYRAMIDAL TENT DRILL

SECTION 225-15	I. To pitch, strike and fold common and wall tents	256
	II. To pitch, strike and fold pyramidal tents	257
	III. In the field	258

APPENDIX

Equipment carried by the rifle squad	259
Equipment carried by the machine gun squad	261

TOPICAL INDEX 263

Additional copies of
this manual
may be obtained
from

THE INFANTRY JOURNAL
1115 17TH ST.
WASHINGTON, D. C.

Prices

In cloth binding, postpaid..... **$1.60**
In flexible, waterproof leatherette, postpaid..... **1.80**

25% discount, F.O.B. Washington, on orders for 10 or more books.

30% discount, F.O.B. Washington, on orders for 100 or more books.

Your name stamped in gold on front cover of leatherette binding, 35 cents a copy.

PART ONE. DRILL

CHAPTER 1

GENERAL INTRODUCTION

	Paragraphs
SECTION I. Definitions	1
II. General rules	2–16

SECTION I

DEFINITIONS

1. Definitions.—*Alignment.*—A straight line upon which several elements are formed, or are to be formed; or the dressing of several elements upon a straight line.

Base.—The element on which a movement is regulated.

Center.—The middle point or element of a command.

Column.—A formation in which the elements are placed one behind another.

Depth.—The space from head to rear of any formation or of a position, including the leading and rear elements. The depth of a man is assumed to be 12 inches.

Distance.—Space between elements in the direction of depth. Distance is measured with respect to: Dismounted men, from the back of the man in front to the breast of the man in rear; mounted men and animals, from the croup of the animal in front to the head of the animal in rear; vehicles, from the rear part of the vehicle in front to the front part of the vehicle or head of animal hitched thereto (as the case may be) in rear. Distance between troops in formation is measured from the rearmost individual, rank or line whether of men, animals, or vehicles of the unit in front to the foremost individual, rank or line whether of men, animals, or vehicles of the unit in rear. The commander of any unit, or of any element thereof, and those accompanying him, are not considered in measuring distance between units. The color and guard are not considered in measuring distance between subdivisions of a unit with which they are posted. The distance between ranks of dismounted men is 40 inches in both line and column. Facing distance is 14 inches. It is the distance between dismounted men who are faced to the flank, from a position in which they are in line at 4-inch intervals. The distance between ranks of mounted men in close order is 45 inches (1½ paces).

Element.—A file, squad, platoon, company, or larger body, forming part of a still larger body.

File.—Two men, the front-rank man and the corresponding man of the rear rank. The front-rank man is the file leader. A file which has no rear-rank man is a blank file. The term file applies also to a single man in a single-rank formation.

File closers.—Such officers and noncommissioned officers of a company as are posted in rear of the line. For convenience, all men posted in the line of file closers.

Flank.—The right or left of a command in line or in column or the element on the right or left of the line. Also the side of a force or of a position in the direction of depth.

Formation.—Arrangement of the elements of a command. The placing of all fractions in their order in line, in column, or for battle.

Frontage.—The space occupied by an element measured from one flank to the opposite flank. The frontage of a man is assumed to be 22 inches.

Guide.—An officer, noncommissioned officer, or private upon whom the command (or elements thereof) regulates its march.

Head.—The leading element of a column.

Interval.—Space between elements of the same line. Interval is measured, with respect to: Dismounted men from the elbow; mounted men from the knee; animals from the shoulder; vehicles from the hub of the wheel or the track. Between troops in formation it is measured from the left flank of the unit on the right, to the right flank of the unit on the left. The commander of any unit, or of any element thereof, and those accompanying him are not considered in measuring interval between units. The color and guard are not considered in measuring interval between subdivisions of a unit with which they are posted. The interval between men in ranks in close order is: Dismounted, 4 inches; mounted, 6 inches.

Left.—The left extremity or element of a body of troops.

Line.—A formation in which the different elements are abreast of each other.

Loose pieces.—Rifles and automatic rifles not used in making stacks.

Order, close.—The formation in which the units, in double rank, are arranged in line or in column with normal intervals and distances.

Piece.—The term piece as used in these regulations means the rifle and the automatic rifle.

Pace.—A step of 30 inches; the length of the full step in quick time.

Rank.—A line of men placed side by side.

Right.—The right extremity or element of a body of troops.

Step.—The distance measured from heel to heel between the feet of a man walking. A step may be any prescribed number of inches. The half step and back step are 15 inches. The right step and left step are 10 inches. The steps in quick and double time are 30 and 36 inches, respectively.

SECTION II

GENERAL RULES

2. Purpose of drill.—Close-order drill provides the means for training in precise movements. Drills executed at *attention* are *disciplinary exercises* designed to give practice in soldierly movements and to inculcate that prompt obedience which is essential to discipline. To this end smartness and precision should be developed in the execution of every detail. Such drills should be frequent but short.

3. Explanation of text in using right and left.—Movements that may be executed toward either flank are explained as toward but one flank. To adapt a description of a movement executed toward one flank to its execution toward the opposite flank it is necessary only to substitute the word "left" for "right" as the case requires.

4. Movements.—*a.* In movements executed toward the right flank when marching, the command of execution is given when the right foot strikes the ground; in movements toward the left flank, when the left foot strikes the ground.

b. Any movement may be executed either from a halt or when marching unless otherwise prescribed. If at a halt the command for movements involving marching, such as 1. ***Column right (left),*** 2. **MARCH,** is not prefaced by the command ***Forward.***

5. Double time.—*a.* Any movement not specially excepted may be executed in ***double time.***

b. If a unit is at a halt, or marching in quick time, and it is desired that a movement be executed in double time, the command ***Double time*** precedes the command of execution.

c. To hasten the execution of a movement begun in quick time, the command: 1. ***Double time,*** 2. ***MARCH,*** is given. Where applicable the leading or base unit continues to march in quick time, or remains at a halt if already halted; the other units complete the execution of the movement in double time and then conform to the gait of the leading or base unit.

6. Correction of errors and commands.—*a.* To arrest a movement for the correction of errors in the execution when marching, the command: 1. ***In place,*** 2. ***HALT,*** is given. All halt and stand fast without changing the positions of the pieces. To resume the movement, the command: 1. ***Resume,*** 2. ***MARCH,*** is given.

b. To revoke a command, or to begin anew a movement improperly begun from a halt, the command: ***AS YOU WERE,*** is given, at which the movement ceases and the former position is resumed.

7. General rules for the guide.—*a.* Unless otherwise announced, the guide of a platoon or subdivision of a company in line is *right;* of a company in line or line of subdivisions, *center;* of a rank in column of squads, toward the side on which the guide of the column marches.

b. To march with the guide other than as prescribed above, or to change the guide, the command: ***Guide (right, left,*** or ***center),*** is given.

c. In successive formations into line, the guide is toward the point of rest; in platoons or larger subdivisions, the guide is so announced.

d. The announcement of the guide, when made in connection with a movement, follows the command of execution for the movement.

8. Pivots.—*a.* The turn on fixed pivots by subdivisions is used in all formations from line into column and the reverse.

b. The turn on the moving pivot is used by subdivisions of a column in executing changes of direction.

9. Partial changes of direction.—*a.* Partial changes of direction may be executed by interpolating in the preparatory command the word *half,* as ***Column half right (left),*** or ***Right (left) half turn,*** so as to change direction 45°.

b. Slight changes in direction are effected by the command: ***Incline to the right (left).*** The guide or guiding element moves in the indicated direction, and the remainder of the command conforms.

10. Formation designations.—The designations ***line of sections, line of platoons,*** or ***line of companies,*** refer to the formations in which the sections, platoons, or companies, each in column of squads, are in line.

11. Distance and step.—*a.* Full distance in column of subdivisions is such that in forming line to the right or left the subdivisions will have their proper intervals.

b. In column of subdivisions, the guide of the leading subdivision is charged with the step and direction; the guides in the rear preserve the trace, step, and distance.

12. Formation in double rank.—In close-order, all details, detachments, and other bodies of troops are habitually formed in double rank.

13. Method of obtaining intervals.—Uniformity of interval between files, when falling in and when aligning elements, is obtained as outlined in Section I, Chapter 7.

14. Posts of officers, noncommissioned officers, guidons, and special units.—*a.* The posts of officers, noncommissioned officers, guidons, and special units, in the various formations of infantry units are shown in the figures in succeeding chapters which cover the drill of each unit.

b. When changes of formation involve changes of posts, the new post is taken by the most convenient and direct route, except where otherwise prescribed, as soon as practicable after the command of execution for the movement; officers and noncommissioned officers who have prescribed duties in connection with the movement ordered take their new posts when such duties are completed.

c. When acting as instructors, officers and noncommissioned officers go wherever their presence is necessary. As file closers, they rectify mistakes and insure steadiness and promptness in the ranks.

d. In subsequent movements after the initial formation, guidons and special units maintain their relative positions with respect to the flank or end of the command on which they were originally posted.

e. In all formations and movements, a noncommissioned officer commanding a platoon or company carries his rifle as the men do, if he is so armed. He takes the same post as prescribed for an officer in command. When giving commands, making reports, or drilling a unit, his rifle is at the right shoulder, if he be so armed.

15. The staff.—*a.* The staff of a commander, and officers and enlisted men attached thereto at formations are referred to collectively as the staff. General, field, and staff officers are habitually mounted.

b. The staff of an officer forms in his rear, the commissioned staff in one rank at a distance of 1½ paces, the second officer in line immediately in rear of the commander, and the enlisted personnel of the staff in one rank, immediately in rear of and at a distance of 1½ paces from the commissioned staff. If only one officer is present, he is posted one pace to the right and 1½ paces to the rear of the commander. Staff officers are arranged from right to left generally in order of rank, the senior on the right, but the commander may cause them to be arranged in any order desired by him. The enlisted personnel of the staff is posted in the same order from right to left as the officers of the staff, except that the bearer of a general officer's flag is on the right.

c. When necessary to reduce the frontage of the staff, as in movements to the front, rear, right, or left, or in marching, each rank forms a column of twos or fours, under the direction of the staff officer on the right of the leading rank, and follows the commander.

16. Commands.—*a.* Commands only are employed in close-order drill at attention.

b. In these regulations a command is the direction of the commander expressed orally and in prescribed phraseology.

c. Where it is not mentioned in the text who gives the prescribed commands, they will be given by the commander of the unit.

d. There are two kinds of commands:

(1) The *preparatory command,* such as ***Forward,*** which indicates the movement that is to be executed.

(2) The *command of execution,* such as ***MARCH, HALT,*** or ***ARMS,*** which causes the execution.

e. Preparatory commands are distinguished in these regulations by ***Heavy Type (Boldface or Blackface)*** and those of execution by ***BOLDFACE CAPITALS.***

f. The preparatory command is given at such interval of time before the command of execution as to admit of proper understanding; the command of execution is given at the instant the movement is to commence.

g. When the preparatory command consists of more than one part, its elements are arranged as follows:

(1) For movements to be executed successively by the subdivisions or elements of an organization.

(a) Description of the movement.

(b) How executed, or on what element executed.

(2) For movements to be executed simultaneously by the subdivisions of an organization.

(a) The designation of the subdivision.

(b) The movement to be executed.

h. The tone of the command should be animated, distinct, and of a loudness proportioned to the number of men for whom it is intended.

i. Commanders of companies and larger units repeat such commands of their superiors as are to be executed by their units except where otherwise prescribed.

j. When giving commands to troops the commander faces them. When the platoon in close-order drill or in ceremonies is part of a larger unit, the leader turns his head toward the column to give commands but does not face about. Indifference in giving commands must be avoided, as this leads to laxity in execution. Commands must be given with spirit.

k. Officers and men fix their attention at the first word of command.

l. Commanders or leaders of subdivisions repeat commands whenever repetition is deemed necessary to insure prompt and correct execution.

CHAPTER 2

DRILL AND COMBAT SIGNALS

		Paragraphs
SECTION I.	General	17–18
II.	Whistle signals	19–21
III.	General arm-and-hand signals	22–46
IV.	Additional arm-and-hand signals for rifle companies	47–48
V.	Additional arm-and-hand signals for machine gun companies	49–56
VI.	Additional arm-and-hand signals for howitzer companies	57–65
VII.	Arm-and-hand signals for service companies (transportation)	66–74
VIII.	Special signals for scouts, observers, and patrols	75–78

SECTION I

GENERAL

17. Purpose of signals.—Signals are for the purpose of transmitting commands when the transmission will be in a simpler, more direct, and more efficient manner than would be possible by the use of the voice.

18. General.—*a.* Signals may be by whistle and by arm-and-hand, as prescribed herein.

b. A signal includes both the preparatory command and the command of execution; the movement commences as soon as the signal is understood, unless otherwise prescribed.

c. Officers and men fix their attention at the first note of the whistle, or the first motion of the signal.

d. Commanders or leaders repeat signals whenever repetition is deemed necessary to insure prompt and correct execution.

e. Prescribed signals are limited to such as are essential as a substitute for the voice under conditions which render the voice inadequate.

SECTION II

WHISTLE SIGNALS

19. Whistle signals.—Whistle signals will be made with the whistle prescribed for the leader or commander concerned and will be confined to ***ATTENTION TO ORDERS*** and ***SUSPEND FIRING.***

20. Attention to orders.—Sound a *short blast* of the whistle. The signal is used to fix the attention of troops, or of their commanders and leaders, preparatory to giving commands, orders, or signals.

When in charge of a portion of the firing line, each squad leader will fix his attention upon his platoon or section leader for signals at the short blast of a whistle. If the squad leader's attention is attracted by a whistle other than that of his platoon or section leader, or if he receives no orders or commands to give to his squad, he will return his full attention to his squad or group at once.

21. Suspend firing.—Sound a *long blast* of the whistle. This signal will be verified at once by an arm-and-hand signal or by other means.

SECTION III

GENERAL ARM-AND-HAND SIGNALS

22. General.—*a.* In making arm-and-hand signals, either arm and hand may be used, unless specifically stated otherwise.

b. When possible, the signals will be commenced with the hand at the side and will be completed by its return to that position.

c. If a movement is to be executed by an integral part of a command, the signal designating the unit or units will be given before the signal for the movement.

d. Signals made up of two or more elements will be avoided unless the component parts are easily recognized.

e. On the firing line, or in drills simulating firing-line conditions, leaders will "repeat back" at once each signal received.

23. Forward, march; By the right (left) flank, march; To the rear, march.—Face and move in the desired direction of march; at the same time extend the hand vertically to the full extent of the arm, palm to the front, and lower the arm and hand in the direction of movement until horizontal.

24. Halt.—Carry the hand to the shoulder, palm to the front; then thrust the hand upward vertically to the full extent of the arm and hold it in that position until the signal is understood.

25. Lie down; or, **Take cover.**—Turn toward the unit or group and raise the hand, palm down, in front of the elbow, forearm horizontal; thrust the hand downward and back to this position several times, holding the wrist rigid.

26. Double time, march; or, **Rush.**—Carry the hand to the shoulder, fist closed; rapidly thrust the fist upward vertically to the full extent of the arm and back to the shoulder several times.

27. Quick time, march.—Raise the elbow to a position above and to the right (left) of the shoulder and extend the forearm to the left (right), hand above the head, palm to the front.

28. Change direction, march.—Carry the hand that is on the side toward the new direction across the body to the opposite shoulder and, with the palm down and the forearm horizontal, swing the forearm in a horizontal plane, extending the arm and hand to point in the new direction.

29. As skirmishers, march.—Raise both arms laterally until horizontal, arms and hands extended, palms down. If it is necessary to indicate direction of march, signal ***Forward march,*** moving at the same time in the desired direction.

30. As skirmishers, right (left), march.—Raise both arms laterally until horizontal, arms and hands extended, palms down; swing the arm and hand on the side toward which the deployment is to be made, upward until vertical and back immediately to the horizontal position; repeat swinging movement several times; hold the other arm and hand steadily in the horizontal position until the signal is completed.

31. Assemble, march.—Raise the hand vertically to the full extent of the arm, fingers extended and joined, and describe large horizontal circles with the arm and hand.

32. Range; or, **Change elevation.**—Announce the range by extending the arm fully toward the leader or men for whom the signal

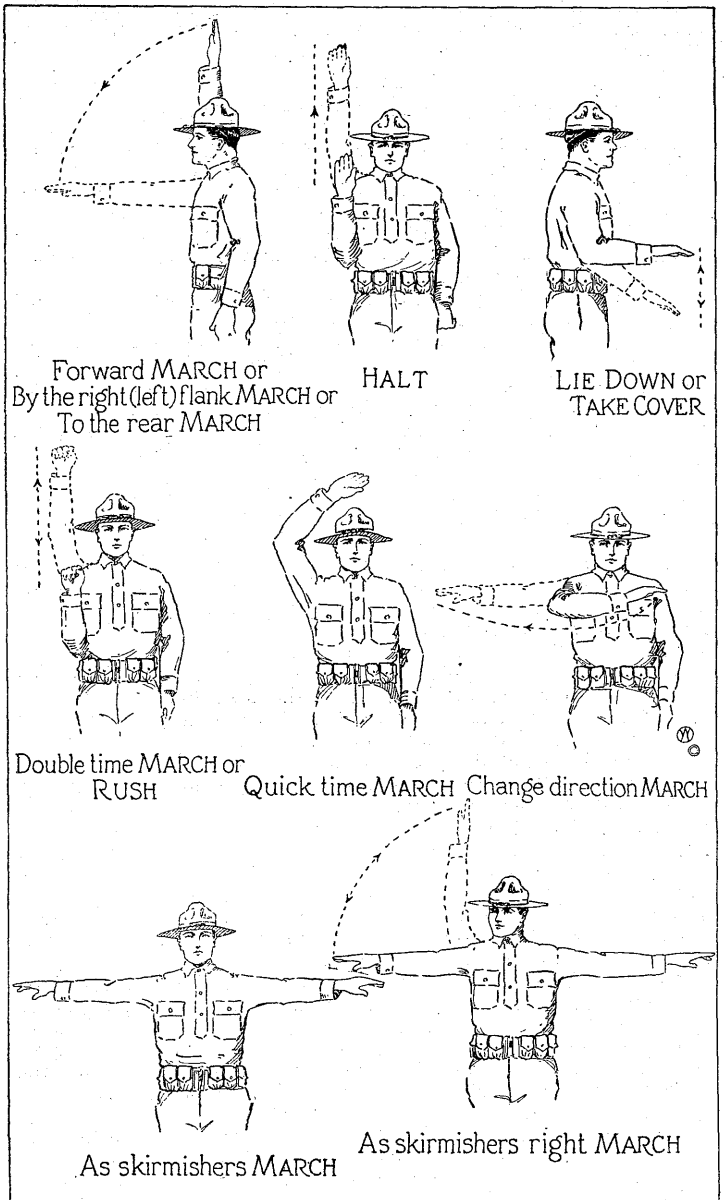


FIG. 1.—Arm-and-hand signals.

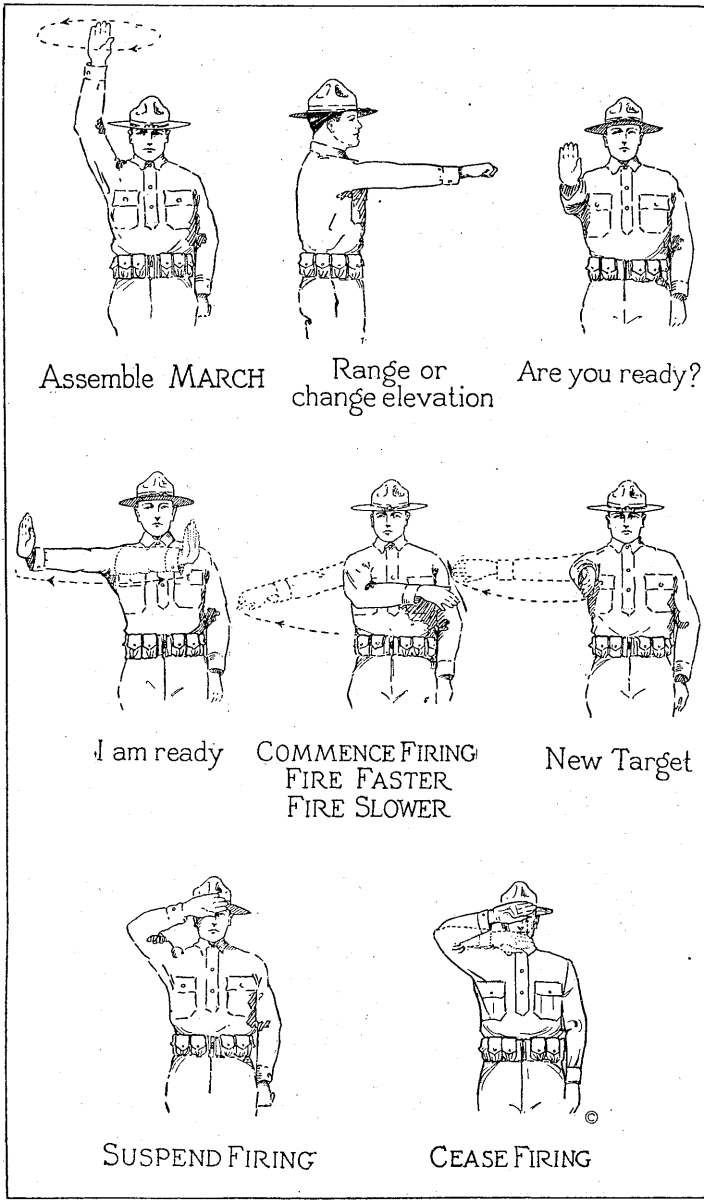


FIG. 2.—Arm-and-hand signals.

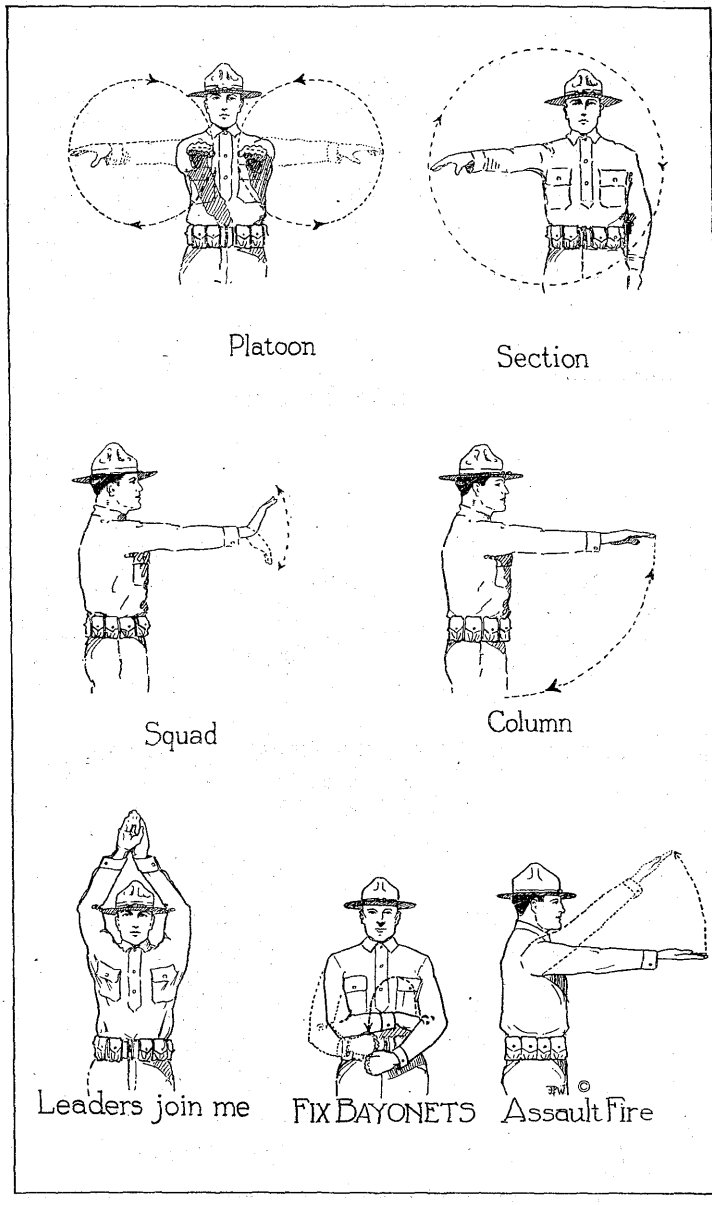


FIG. 3.—Arm-and-hand signals.

is intended, with the fist closed; open the fist, exposing the palm and fingers to the leaders or men, once for 500 yards, twice for 1,000 yards, and so on; move the fist upward, wrist rigid, and back to the range announcing position once for each 100 yards up to 500 and for each additional 100 yards above 500 or the multiples of 500; describe a short horizontal line with the arm, fist closed, to add 50 yards. Change elevation by indicating the complete new range.

33. Are you ready?—Extend the arm toward the leader for whom the signal is intended, hand raised, fingers extended and joined, palm toward the leader.

34. I am ready.—Execute the signal ***Are you ready,*** and, holding the arm in its horizontal position, rotate the arm to the right and left several times, the hand in a vertical plane.

35. Commence firing.—Extend the arm and hand horizontally in front of the body to their full extent, palm of the hand down; move them several times through a wide horizontal arc.

36. Fire faster.—Execute rapidly the signal ***Commence firing.*** For machine guns, a change to the next higher rate of fire is required.

37. Fire slower.—Execute slowly the signal ***Commence firing.*** For machine guns, a change to the next lower rate of fire is required.

38. New target.—Extend the arm and hand to the front, palm of the hand to the right (left); swing them to the right (left) to point in the direction of the new target.

39. Suspend firing.—Raise the forearm to a horizontal position in front of the forehead, palm of the hand to the front; hold the forearm steady until the signal is understood.

40. Cease firing.—Raise the forearm as in ***Suspend firing*** and swing it up and down several times in front of the face.

41. Platoon.—Extend both arms toward the platoon leader, palms of the hands down, and describe large vertical circles.

42. Section.—Extend one arm and hand toward the section leader, palm of the hand down, and describe large vertical circles.

43. Squad.—Extend the hand and arm toward the squad leader, palm of the hand down; distinctly move the hand up and down several times, holding the arm steady.

44. Section or squad column.—Execute the signal ***Section*** or ***Squad;*** drop the arm and hand to the side and immediately swing them, extended in a pendulum movement straight to the front, not higher than the shoulder, and back again to the side.

45. Section or squad column, right (left).—Execute the signal ***Section column*** or ***Squad column;*** swing the arm, on the side toward which the deployment is to be made, upward until vertical and back to the horizontal, pointing to the right (left); repeat the swinging movement of the arm several times.

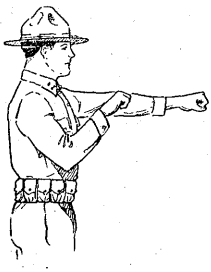
46. Leaders join me.—Raise both arms over the head, palms to the front; clasp the back of the right hand in the palm of the left. This signal is preceded by the signal ***Squad, Section,*** or ***Platoon.***

SECTION IV

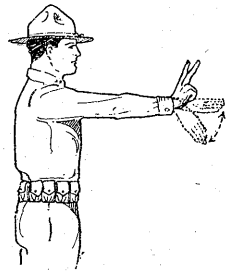
ADDITIONAL ARM-AND-HAND SIGNALS FOR RIFLE COMPANIES

47. Fix bayonet.—Simulate the movement of the right hand in executing ***Fix bayonet.***

48. Assault fire.—Extend the arm and hand to the front, palm of the hand up; move them upward, describing an arc of about 45°; then signal ***Forward march.***



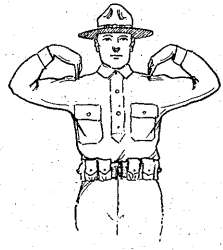
Echelon formation



DEPRESS 2 MILS



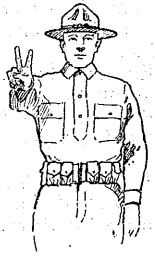
OFF CARTS



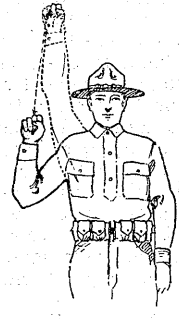
ON CARTS



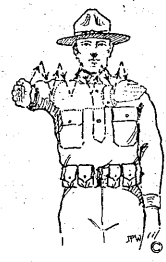
Out of action



FIRE (so many) ROUNDS.



Increase the range



Traversing fire

FIG. 4.—Arm-and-hand signals.

SECTION V

ADDITIONAL ARM-AND-HAND SIGNALS FOR MACHINE-GUN COMPANIES

49. Action.—Thrust the fist several times in the direction toward which it is desired to go into action.

50. Echelon formation.—Face the unit for whom the signal is intended; extend both arms horizontally to the front, fists closed with the knuckles up; withdraw either fist halfway toward the body by flexing the arm at the elbow.

51. Elevate, Depress.—Extend the arm toward the gunner (s) concerned; move the hand in short upward (downward) movements by flexing the arm at the wrist; with the palm of the hand toward the gunner (s), expose one finger for each mil the gun is to be elevated (depressed).

52. Shift right (left).—Extend the arm toward the gunner (s) concerned; swing the hand and arm horizontally in the direction in which the fire is to be shifted, palm turned in that direction; with the palm of the hand toward the gunner (s), expose one finger for each mil the fire is to be shifted.

53. Off carts.—Face the unit for which the signal is intended; raise the elbow laterally the height of the shoulder and touch the shoulder with the fingers.

54. On carts.—Face the unit for which the signal is intended; raise both elbows laterally to tLe height of the shoulders and touch the shoulders with the fingers.

55. Out of action.—Strike the closed fist of one hand rapidly against the open palm of the other several times.

56. Around carts.—Face the unit (s); extend the hand and arm fully toward the unit (s) concerned, fist closed but with the forefinger pointing down; raise and lower the hand by flexing the arm at the wrist, at the same time moving the hand in a large horizontal circle by flexing the arm at the elbow and shoulder.

SECTION VI

ADDITIONAL ARM-AND-HAND SIGNALS FOR HOWITZER COMPANIES

57. Action.—See paragraph 49.

58. Change deflection.—Thrust the hand out horizontally to the full extent of the arm, in the direction in which the change in deflection is to be made, beginning the thrust at the shoulder with the palm of the hand down. For the 37-mm. gun, each thrust, with the fist closed, signifies 1 mil; with the hand open, 5 mils. For the 3-inch trench mortar, each thrust, with the fist closed, signifies one half turn of the traversing handle; with the hand open, one complete turn of the traversing handle.

59. Echelon formation.—See paragraph 50.

60. Fire (so many) rounds.—Extend the arm toward the gunner for whom the signal is intended, with the hand raised and the palm toward him; expose the fingers to indicate the number of rounds to be fired, one finger for one round, two fingers for two rounds, and so on.

61. Increase (Decrease) the range.—Thrust the fist upward vertically from the shoulder to the full extent of the arm once

for each increase of 25 yards; thrust it downward vertically in the same manner for each decrease of 25 yards.

62. Off carts.—See paragraph 53.

63. On carts.—See paragraph 54.

64. Out of action.—See paragraph 55.

65. Traversing fire.—Extend the hand and arm fully to the front; move them upward and downward with a chopping motion, at the same time, swinging the arm to the right (left) in the direction it is desired to distribute the fire.

SECTION VII

ARM-AND-HAND SIGNALS FOR SERVICE COMPANIES (TRANSPORTATION)

66. Execution of transportation signals.—The signals for transportation formations and movements consist of two parts—a preparatory signal and a signal of execution. The preparatory signal is the part designating the formation or movement; the signal of execution is the return of the hand to the side. When applicable, these signals may be used by the other companies having transportation.

67. Attention.—Extend the hand upward vertically to the full extent of the arm, palm to the front, and move the arm and hand slowly back and forth several times from right to left, left to right, in a vertical plane.

68. Forward, march.—See paragraph 23.

69. Halt.—See paragraph 24.

70. Change direction, march.—See paragraph 28.

71. Right (left) by section, march.—Point to the right (left) section with the arm fully extended, palm of the hand down, and then signal ***Forward march.***

72. Sections column right (left), march.—Signal a change of direction to the right (left); then describe several small vertical circles with the hand while the arm is fully extended to the right (left).

73. Right (left) into line, march.—Signal ***Sections column right (left), march.***

74. Right (left) front into line, march.—Describe several large vertical circles on the right (left) side of the body with the arm and hand fully extended.

SECTION VIII

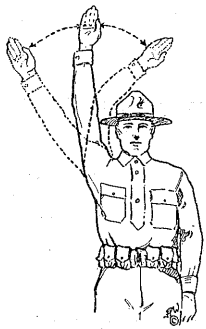
SPECIAL SIGNALS FOR SCOUTS, OBSERVERS, AND PATROLS

75. Dangerous locality.—Signal ***Double time march*** and point in the direction of the probable hostile position. This signal will indicate to the leader that the area where the scout then is, is considered dangerous ground and should be avoided or passed over quickly.

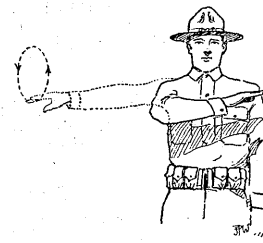
76. Enemy in sight in small numbers.—Hold the weapon horizontally above the head with the arm or arms extended as if guarding the head.

77. Enemy in sight in large numbers.—Hold the weapon as explained in paragraph 76; lower and raise it several times by flexing the arm or arms at the elbow.

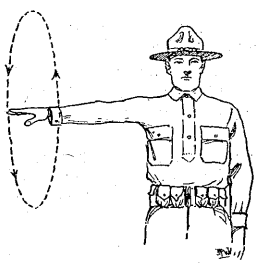
78. More time needed for reconnaissance.—Signal ***Halt.*** The signal will indicate to the leader that the scout needs more time for reconnaissance. The leader acts as he deems necessary.



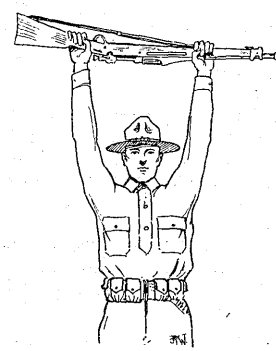
ATTENTION



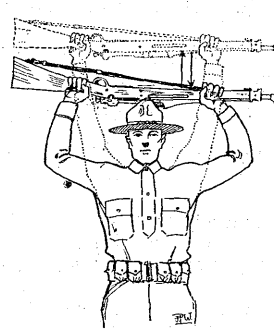
Sections column right MARCH



Right front into line MARCH



Enemy in sight in small numbers



Enemy in sight in large numbers.

FIG. 5.—Arm-and-hand signals.

CHAPTER 3
DISMOUNTED WITHOUT ARMS

		Paragraphs
SECTION I.	General rules	79–80
II.	Elementary instruction	81–86
III.	Steps and marchings	87–98

SECTION I
GENERAL RULES

79. Duties of instructor.—The instructor explains briefly each movement, first executing it himself. He requires the recruits to take the proper positions unassisted and touches them only for the purpose of correction, when they are unable to correct themselves. He avoids keeping the recruits too long at any movement. Each movement should, however, be understood before passing to another. The instructor exacts by degrees the desired precision and uniformity.

80. Grouping recruits.—*a.* To permit of more individual instruction, recruits are separated into groups, each group being as small as is consistent with the number of trained instructors available. Each group is then divided into 2 ranks, or is formed in single rank, depending upon the number of men in the group and the nature of the instruction.

b. As instruction progresses, the recruits are grouped according to proficiency, those showing a lack of aptitude and quickness being separated from the others and placed under the most experienced drill masters.

SECTION II
ELEMENTARY INSTRUCTION

81. Position of the soldier, or **of attention.**—*a.* Heels on the same line and as near each other as the conformation of the man permits.

b. Feet turned out equally and forming an angle of 45°.

c. Knees straight without stiffness.

d. Hips level and drawn back slightly; body erect and resting equally on hips; chest lifted and arched; shoulders square and falling equally.

e. Arms hanging straight down without stiffness, so that the thumbs are along the seams of the trousers; back of the hands out; fingers held naturally.

f. Head erect and squarely to the front; chin drawn in so that the axis of the head and neck is vertical; eyes straight to the front.

g. Weight of the body resting equally on the heels and the balls of the feet.

h. In assuming the position of the soldier, or of attention, the heels are brought together smartly and audibly.

82. Rests.—*a.* Being at a halt, the commands are: ***FALL OUT; REST; AT EASE;*** 1. ***Stand at,*** 2. ***EASE;*** and 1. ***Parade,*** 2. ***REST.***

b. At the command ***Fall out,*** the men leave the ranks, but are required to remain in the immediate vicinity. The men resume their former places at attention at the command ***Fall in.***

c. At the command ***Rest,*** the right foot is kept in place, but silence and immobility are not required.

d. The command being ***At ease,*** keep the right foot in place. Silence but not immobility is required.

e. The command being 1. ***Stand at,*** 2. ***EASE,*** at the command ***EASE,*** move the left foot smartly 12 inches to the left of the right foot; at the same time, clasp the hands behind the back, palms to the rear, thumb and fingers of the right hand clasping the left thumb, without constraint. Preserve silence and immobility, except that the head and eyes may be turned toward the instructor or unit commander. This command is given when it is desired to maintain a uniform appearance of the organization.

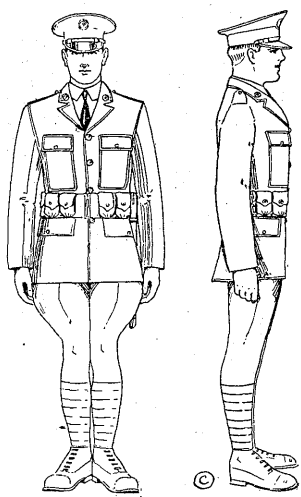


FIG. 6.—Position of the soldier, or of ***Attention.***

83. Parade rest.—At the command, 1. ***Parade,*** 2. ***REST,*** carry the right foot 6 inches straight to the rear, left knee slightly bent, weight of the body equally distributed on both feet; at the same time, clasp the hands, without constraint, in front of the center of the body, fingers joined, left hand uppermost, left thumb clasped by the thumb and forefinger of the right hand; preserve silence and immobility.

Being at any of the rests, to resume the attention: 1. ***Squad,*** 2. ***ATTENTION.*** Take the position of the soldier.

84. Eyes right or **left.**—1. ***Eyes,*** 2. ***RIGHT (LEFT),*** 3. ***FRONT.*** At the command ***RIGHT,*** each man turns his head to the right, except the guide and, when in line, the man on the right in the rear rank and the man on the right in line of file closers. The eyes are fixed on the line of eyes of the men in, or supposed to be in, the same rank. At the command ***FRONT,*** turn the head and eyes to the front.

85. Facings.—*a.* Execute all facings in the cadence of quick time.

b. To the flank.—(1) 1. ***Right,*** 2. ***FACE.*** Raise slightly the left heel and right toe; face to the right, turning on the right heel, assisted by a slight pressure on the ball of the left foot. Hold the left leg straight without stiffness. ***(TWO)*** Place the left foot beside the right.

(2) Execute left face on the left heel in a corresponding manner.

c. To the oblique. 1. ***Right (left) half,*** 2. ***FACE.*** Execute half face as in paragraph *b.* above, facing but 45°.

d. To the rear. 1. ***About,*** 2. ***FACE.*** Carry the toe of the right foot about a half-foot length to the rear and slightly to the left of the left heel without changing the position of the left foot; weight of the body mainly on the heel of the left foot; right leg straight

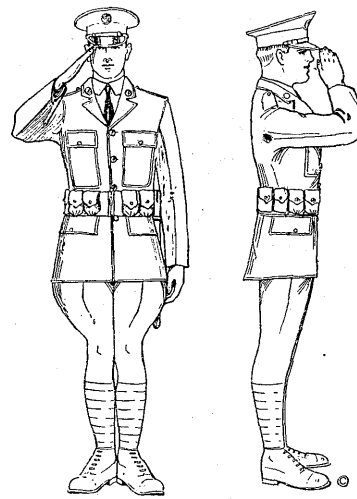


FIG. 7.—Hand salute.

without stiffness. ***(TWO)*** Face to the rear, turning to the right on the left heel and on the ball of the right foot; place the right heel beside the left.

86. Salute with the hand.—*a.* 1. ***Hand,*** 2. ***SALUTE.*** Raise the right hand smartly until the tip of the forefinger touches the lower part of the headdress or forehead above and slightly to the right of the right eye, thumb and fingers extended and joined, palm to the left, upper arm horizontal, forearm inclined at about 45°, hand and wrist straight; at the same time turn the head and eyes toward the person saluted. (Do not turn the head more than 45° from the front.) ***(TWO)*** Drop the arm to its normal position by the side in one motion, at the same time turning the head and eyes to the front.

b. Execute the first position of the hand salute when 6 paces from the person saluted, or at the nearest point of approach, if more than 6 paces. Hold the first position until the person saluted

has passed, or the salute is returned. Then execute the second movement of the hand salute.

c. In passing in review at ceremonies execute the hand salute similarly, except that the first position of the salute is held until 6 paces beyond the person saluted. Look the person saluted squarely in the eyes at the first motion of the salute and thereafter hold the head and eyes in the position of *eyes right* (*left*) until the salute is completed.

SECTION III

STEPS AND MARCHINGS

87. General rules.—*a.* All steps and marchings executed from the halt, except right step, begin with the left foot.

b. (1) The length of the full step in quick time is 30 inches, measured from heel to heel, and the cadence is at the rate of 128 steps per minute.

(2) The length of the full step in double time is 36 inches; the cadence is at the rate of 180 steps per minute.

c. The instructor, when necessary, indicates the cadence of the step by calling ***One, two, three, four,*** the instant the left and right foot, respectively, should be planted.

88. Quick time.—*a.* Being at a halt, to march forward in quick time: 1. ***Forward,*** 2. ***MARCH.***

b. At the command ***Forward,*** shift the weight of the body to the right leg, without preceptible movement.

c. At the command ***MARCH,*** move the left foot smartly straight forward 30 inches from the right, sole near the ground, and plant it without shock; next, in like manner, advance the right foot and plant it as above; continue the march. Swing the arms about 6 inches to the front, and about 3 inches to the rear of the body.

89. Double time.—*a.* Being at a halt or in march in quick time, to march in double time: 1. ***Double time,*** 2. ***MARCH.***

b. If at a halt, at the command ***Double time,*** shift the weight of the body to the right leg without perceptible movement. At the command ***MARCH,*** raise the forearms, fingers closed, knuckles out, to a horizontal position along the waist line; take up an easy run with the step and cadence of double time, allowing a natural swinging motion to the arms.

c. If marching in quick time, at the command ***MARCH,*** given as either foot strikes the ground, take one step in quick time and then step off in double time.

d. To resume the quick time: 1. ***Quick time,*** 2. ***MARCH.*** At the command ***MARCH,*** given as either foot strikes the ground, advance and plant the other foot in double time; resume the quick time, dropping the hands by the sides.

90. To halt.—*a.* To arrest the march in quick time: 1. ***Squad,*** 2. ***HALT.*** When marching forward or backward or marking time, at the command ***HALT,*** given as either foot strikes the ground, plant the other foot as in the movement being executed; raise and place the former by the latter.

b. To arrest the march in double time: 1. ***Squad,*** 2. ***HALT.*** At the command ***HALT*** given as either foot strikes the ground plant the other foot as in double time, then halt in two counts as in quick time.

c. To arrest the march from side step: 1. ***Squad,*** 2. ***HALT.*** At the command ***HALT*** given as the heels are together, plant the foot next in cadence as in the movement being executed, completing the halt when the heels are next brought together.

91. To mark time.—*a.* Being in march: 1. ***Mark time,*** 2. ***MARCH.***

b. At the command ***MARCH,*** given as either foot strikes the ground, advance and plant the other foot; bring up the foot in rear, placing it so that both heels are on line and continue the cadence by alternately raising and planting each foot. The feet are raised 2 inches from the ground.

c. Being at a halt, at the command ***MARCH,*** raise and plant first the left foot, then the right as prescribed above.

92. Half step.—*a.* 1. ***Half step,*** 2. ***MARCH.*** Take steps of 15 inches in quick time and 18 inches in double time in the same manner as in the full step.

b. ***Forward, half step, halt,*** and ***mark time*** may be executed one from the other in quick or double time.

c. To resume the full step from half step or mark time: 1. ***Forward,*** 2. ***MARCH.***

93. Side step.—*a.* The soldier being at a halt or marking time: 1. ***Right (left) step,*** 2. ***MARCH.***

b. Carry the right foot 10 inches to the right; place the left foot beside the right, left knee straight. Continue in the cadence of quick time.

c. The side step is used for short distances only and is not executed in double time.

94. Back step.—*a.* Being at a halt or mark time: 1. ***Backward,*** 2. ***MARCH.***

b. Take steps of 15 inches straight to the rear. The back step is used for short distances only and is not executed in double time.

95. To face in marching.—*a. To face in marching and advance from a halt.*—At the command of execution, turn in the designated direction on the ball of the right foot and at the same time step off in the new direction with the left foot with a half step, full step or in double time, as the case may be.

b. To face in marching and mark time from a halt.—Execute the movement similarly, the left foot being placed beside the right as in mark time.

c. To face to the right in marching and advance, being in march.—At the command of execution, given as the right foot strikes the ground, advance and plant the left foot. ***(TWO)*** Turn to the right on the ball of the left foot and at the same time step off in the new direction with the right foot at a half step, full step, or in double time, as the case may be.

d. To face to the left in marching and advance, being in march.—Execute the movement similarly, the command of execution being given as the left foot strikes the ground.

e. To face to the right (left) in marching and mark time, being in march.—At the command of execution, given as the right foot strikes the ground, advance and plant the left foot. ***(TWO)*** Turn to the right on the ball of the left foot; at the same time raise the right foot and place it beside the left foot as in mark time.

f. In movements, such as the turn on the fixed pivot at a halt, wherein a definite number of steps is required, the execution of the prescribed face in marching by certain members of the squad is not always possible. For such cases, facing on the ball of either foot is authorized.

96. To march by the flank.—*a.* Being in march: 1. ***By the right (left) flank,*** 2. ***MARCH.***

b. At the command ***MARCH,*** given as the right foot strikes the ground, advance and plant the left foot, then face to the right in marching and step off in the new direction with the right foot.

97. To march to the rear.—*a.* Being in march: 1. ***To the rear,*** 2. ***MARCH.***

b. At the command ***MARCH,*** given as the right foot strikes the ground, advance and plant the left foot; turn to the right about on the balls of both feet and immediately step off with the left foot. If marching in double time, turn to the right about, taking four steps in place and keeping the cadence, and then step off with the left foot.

98. To change step.—*a.* Being in march in quick time: 1. ***Change step,*** 2. ***MARCH.***

b. At the command ***MARCH,*** given as the right foot strikes the ground, advance and plant the left foot; plant the toe of the right foot near the heel of the left and step off with the left foot.

c. Execute the change on the right foot similarly, the command ***MARCH*** being given as the left foot strikes the ground.

d. Being in march in double time: At the command ***MARCH,*** given as either foot strikes the ground, take one hop on the next foot and continue the march.

CHAPTER 4

DISMOUNTED WITH RIFLE AND AUTOMATIC RIFLE

		Paragraphs
SECTION I.	General rules	99–103
II.	Manual of arms	104–128
III.	Loadings and firings	129–134

SECTION I

GENERAL RULES

99. Instruction of recruit.—As soon as practicable the recruit is taught the use, care, and nomenclature of the rifle. When fair progress has been made in the instruction without arms, he is taught the manual of arms. Instruction without arms and with arms should alternate.

100. Rules governing carrying of the rifle.—*a.* The rifle is not carried with cartridges in either the chamber or the magazine except when specifically ordered. When so loaded or when supposed to be loaded, it is habitually carried locked; that is, with the *safety lock* turned to the *safe*. At all other times it is carried unlocked, with the trigger pulled.

b. Whenever troops are formed under arms, pieces are immediately inspected at the command: 1. ***Inspection,*** 2. ***ARMS.*** A similar inspection is made before dismissal. If cartridges are found in the chamber or magazine, they are removed and placed in the belt.

c. The cut-off is kept turned *off* except when cartridges are actually used. (Applicable to troops armed with U. S. Rifle, Model 1903.)

d. The bayonet is fixed at any time when so ordered.

e. ***Fall in*** is executed with the rifle at the order arms.

f. (1) If at the order, unless otherwise prescribed, the rifle is brought to the right shoulder at the command ***MARCH*** (in quick time), the 3 motions corresponding with the first 3 steps. If ***Double time*** is given prior to ***MARCH,*** the unit is brought to the ***Right (left) shoulder*** or ***Port arms,*** before the command ***Double time.***

(2) Movements may be executed at the *trail* by prefacing the preparatory command with the words ***at trail;*** as 1. ***At trail, forward,*** 2. ***MARCH.*** The trail is taken at the command ***MARCH.***

(3) When the facings, alignments, open and close ranks, side step and back step, taking interval and assembly are executed from the order, the rifle is brought to the trail while in motion and the order resumed on halting.

g. The rifle is brought to the order on halting except in executing: 1. ***In place,*** 2. ***HALT.*** The execution of the order begins when the halt is completed.

h. In double time, when armed with the rifle, a disengaged hand is held as when without arms.

101. Rules governing carrying of the automatic rifle.—*a.* At the command ***Fall in,*** automatic rifles are slung over the right shoulder, butt down, barrel to the rear.

b. For ceremonies and drill, the automatic rifle is carried slung over the right shoulder, butt down, barrel to the rear.

c. For marches and field exercises, the automatic rifle may be carried slung over either shoulder.

d. When troops are brought to attention, the automatic rifle is slung as prescribed for drills and ceremonies. It is carried slung until the command ***REST*** is given, unless otherwise ordered.

e. When troops are standing at ease, the automatic rifle is kept slung unless otherwise ordered. Automatic riflemen assume the position of ***AT EASE*** or ***Stand at EASE*** as without arms. If the automatic rifle is ordered unslung, the position of ***AT EASE*** or ***Stand at EASE*** is taken as prescribed for troops armed with the rifle.

f. When troops are standing at rest the automatic rifle is unslung.

g. The automatic rifleman does not execute the manual except—

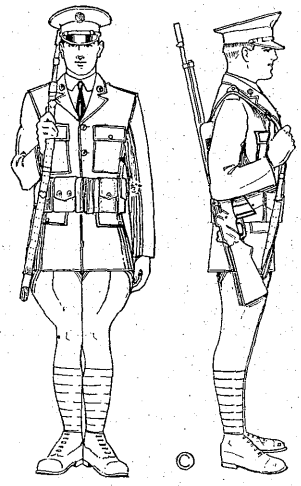


FIG. 8.—Position of automatic rifle slung over right shoulder.

(1) 1. ***Parade,*** 2. ***REST.*** Execute the movement as without arms.

(2) 1. ***Inspection,*** 2. ***ARMS.*** At the command ***ARMS*** grasp the magazine with the left hand, at the same time pressing the magazine release with the right hand. Withdraw the magazine with the left hand and place in belt. Pull back the operating handle with the left hand.

(3) Being at inspection arms: 1. ***Order (port, right shoulder),*** 2. ***ARMS.*** At the command ***Order,*** pull the trigger, replace the magazine, and resume the position of the soldier, the automatic rifle being kept slung.

h. When arms are stacked the automatic rifle is placed on the stack as prescribed for a loose piece.

i. The automatic rifle belt is worn whenever the automatic rifle is carried.

j. The salute. When the automatic rifle is unslung the salute is executed as with the rifle. When the automatic rifle is carried slung, the hand salute is executed.

k. Automatic rifles are carried habitually; except that for instruction, ceremonies, and drill, the organization commander may, in his discretion, substitute rifles.

102. Rules governing execution of the manual of arms.—*a.* In all positions of the left hand at the balance, the thumb clasps the rifle; the sling is included in the grasp of the hand. In describing the manual of arms, the term *at the balance* in this text refers to the center of the rear-sight leaf of the model 1903 rifle, and to the center of the groove on the hand guard of the model 1917 rifle.

b. In all positions of the rifle, *diagonally across the body,* the position of the rifle, left arm and left hand is the same as in port arms.

c. In resuming the order from any position in the manual, the motion next to the last concludes with all fingers of the right hand grasping the rifle just above the lower band, the butt of the rifle about 3 inches from the ground, barrel to the rear, the left hand above and near the right, steadying the rifle, thumb and fingers extended and joined, forearm and wrist straight and inclining downward. To complete the order, lower the rifle gently to the ground with the right hand, cut away the left smartly to the side, and take the position of order arms. Allowing the rifle to drop through the right hand to the ground, or similar abuse of the rifle to produce effect in executing the manual, is prohibited.

d. The cadence of the motions is that of quick time. The recruits are first required to give their whole attention to the details of the motions, the cadence being gradually acquired as they become accustomed to handling their rifles. The instructor may require them to count aloud in cadence with the motions.

e. (1) The manual may be executed while marching, except ***Present arms, Order arms, Parade rest, Trail arms, Stand at ease, Inspection arms,*** and ***Fix*** and ***Unfix bayonets.***

(2) The manual is taught at a halt and the movements are, for the purpose of instruction, divided into motions and executed in detail. In this case, the command of execution determines the prompt execution of the first motion, and the commands ***TWO, THREE, FOUR,*** that of the other motions.

(3) To execute the movement in detail, the instructor first cautions: ***By the numbers.*** All movements divided into motions are then executed as above explained until he cautions: ***Without the numbers,*** or commands movements other than those in the manual of arms.

f. (1) Whenever circumstances require, the regular positions of the manual of arms and the firings may be ordered without regard to the previous position of the rifle.

(2) Under exceptional conditions of weather or fatigue, the rifle may be carried in any manner directed.

g. The front-sight cover will be removed only when cleaning the rifle or when engaged in musketry practice.

103. Rules governing the conduct of men armed with the pistol.—*a.* Officers and enlisted men, armed with the pistol only, remain at the position of the soldier without arms during the execution of the manual, except when their units are brought to the present as a part of a ceremony such as:

(1) The ceremonies described in Chapter 1, Part two.
(2) The presentation of an organization to its commander.
(3) At retreat.
(4) At guard mounting.

b. Under the conditions set forth above, officers and enlisted men, armed with the pistol only, execute the first motion of the hand salute at the command ***ARMS,*** and the second motion of the hand salute at the command of execution of the next command.

c. When organizations and detachments are not formed as part of a larger unit, and are composed entirely of men armed with the pistol, the commands for rendering the salute prescribed above are: 1. ***By the numbers,*** 2. ***Hand,*** 3. ***SALUTE,*** 4. ***TWO.***

d. Individuals leading or driving saddle or draft animals or standing to horse do not execute the salute.

SECTION II

MANUAL OF ARMS

104. Position of order arms.—The butt rests on the ground, barrel to the rear, toe of the butt on line with the toe of, and

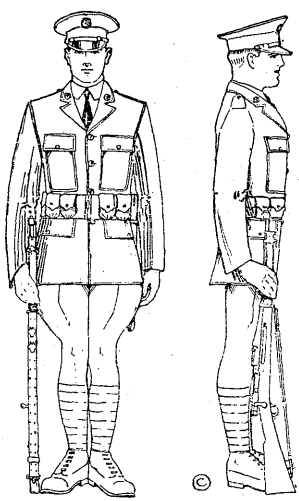


FIG. 9.—Position of ***Order arms.***



FIG. 10.—Position of ***Trail arms.***

touching the right shoe, right hand holding the rifle between the thumb and fingers, left hand as in position of the soldier without arms.

105. Being at order arms.—1. ***Trail,*** 2. ***ARMS.*** Raise the rifle and incline the muzzle forward so that the barrel makes an angle of about 30° with the vertical, the right arm bent slightly.

106. Being at trail arms.—***Order,*** 2. ***ARMS.*** Lower the rifle with the right hand and resume the order.

107. Being at order arms.—1. ***Port,*** 2. ***ARMS.*** With the right hand, raise and throw the rifle diagonally across the body, regrasp it smartly with both hands at the same time; the right, at the small of the stock, palm down; the left, at the balance, palm toward the body, wrist straight; barrel up, sloping to the left and crossing opposite the junction of the neck with the left shoulder; the right forearm

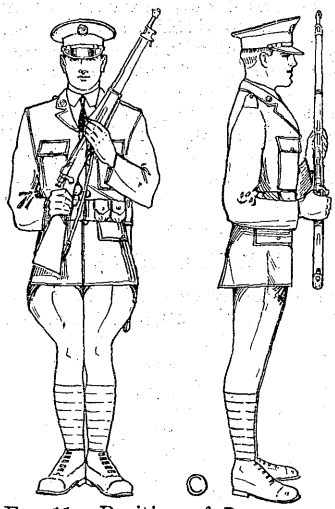


FIG. 11.—Position of ***Port arms.***

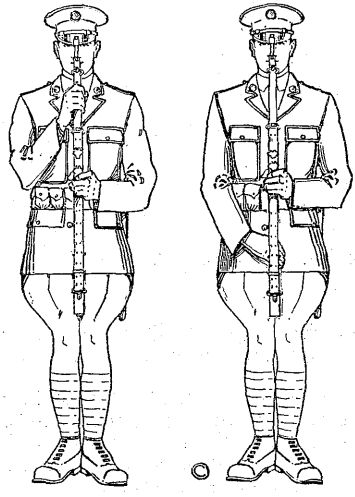
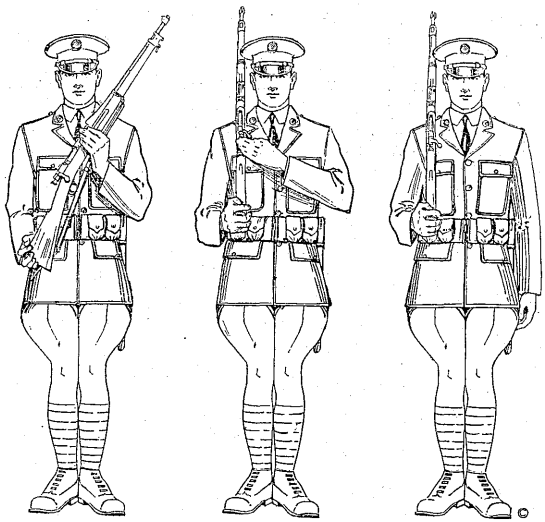


FIG. 12.—1. ***Present,*** 2. ***ARMS.***

horizontal; left forearm resting against the body; the rifle in a vertical plane parallel to the front.

108. Being at present or port arms.—1. ***Order,*** 2. ***ARMS.*** Drop the rifle to the next to last position of order arms, at the same time regrasp it smartly with the right hand just above the lower band and place the left hand above and near the right. ***(TWO)*** Complete the order, cutting away the left hand smartly to the side.

109. Being at order arms.—1. ***Inspection,*** 2. ***ARMS.*** At the command ***ARMS,*** take the position of port arms. ***(TWO)*** Seize the bolt handle with the thumb and forefinger of the right hand, turn the handle up, draw the bolt back, lower the head and eyes sufficiently to glance into the magazine. Having found the magazine empty, or having emptied it, raise the head and eyes to the front.



First position. Second position. Third position.

FIG. 13.—1. ***Right shoulder,*** 2. ***ARMS.***

110. Being at inspection arms.—1. ***Order (right shoulder, port),*** 2. ***ARMS.*** At the preparatory command, push the bolt forward, turn the handle down, pull the trigger, and resume the ***port arms.*** At the command ***ARMS,*** complete the movement ordered.

111. Being at order arms.—1. ***Present,*** 2. ***ARMS.*** With the right hand, carry the rifle in front of the center of the body, barrel to the rear and vertical, grasp it with the left hand at the balance, forearm horizontal and resting against the body. Include the rear sight leaf in the grasp of the left thumb. (Applicable to troops armed with the U. S. Rifle, Model 1903). ***(TWO)*** Grasp the small of the stock with the right hand.

112. Being at order arms.—1. ***Right shoulder,*** 2. ***ARMS.*** With the right hand, raise and throw the rifle diagonally across the body; grasp it with the right hand at the butt, the heel between the first two fingers, thumb and fingers closed on the stock. ***(TWO)*** With-

out changing the grasp of the right hand, place the rifle on the right shoulder, barrel up and inclined at an angle of about 45° from the horizontal, trigger guard in the hollow of the shoulder, right elbow againts the side, forearm horizontal, the rifle in a vertical plane perpendicular to the front; carry the left hand, thumb and fingers extended and joined, to the small of the stock, first joint of the forefinger touching the cocking piece, wrist straight and elbow down. ***(THREE)*** Cut away the left hand smartly to the side.

113. Being at right shoulder arms.—1. ***Order,*** 2. ***ARMS.*** Press down the butt quickly and throw the rifle diagonally across the body, the right hand retaining the grasp of the butt. ***(TWO), (THREE)*** Execute order arms as prescribed from port arms.

114. Being at present arms.—1. ***Port,*** 2. ***ARMS.*** Carry the rifle diagonally across the body and take the position of port arms.

115. Being at port arms.—1. ***Present,*** 2. ***ARMS.*** Carry the rifle to a vertical position in front of the center of the body and take the position of present arms.

116. Being at right shoulder arms.—1. ***Port,*** 2. ***ARMS.*** Press the butt down quickly and throw the rifle diagonally across the body, at the same time turning it to the left so as to bring the barrel up, the right hand retaining its grasp of the butt. ***(TWO)*** Change the right hand to the small of the stock.

117. Being at right shoulder arms.—1. ***Present,*** 2. ***ARMS.*** Execute port arms. ***(THREE)*** Execute present arms.

118. Being at port arms.—1. ***Right shoulder,*** 2. ***ARMS.*** Change the right hand to the butt. ***(TWO), (THREE)*** Execute the last two movements as in right shoulder arms from order arms.

119. Being at present arms.—1. ***Right shoulder,*** 2. ***ARMS.*** Execute port arms. ***(TWO), (THREE), (FOUR)*** Execute right shoulder arms as from port arms.

120. Being at port arms.—1. ***Left shoulder,*** 2. ***ARMS.*** Carry the rifle with the right hand and place it on the left shoulder, barrel up, trigger guard in the hollow of the shoulder; at the same time grasp the butt with the left hand, heel between the first two fingers, thumb and fingers closed on the stock; left forearm horizontal, left elbow against the side, the rifle in a vertical plane perpendicular to the front. ***(TWO)*** Cut away the right hand smartly to the side.

121. Being at left shoulder arms.—1. ***Port,*** 2. ***ARMS.***—*a.* Grasp the rifle with the right hand at the small of the stock. ***(TWO)*** Carry the rifle to the right with the right hand, regrasp it with the left, and take the position of port arms.

b. Left shoulder arms may be ordered directly from the order, right shoulder or present, or the reverse. At the command ***ARMS,*** execute port arms and continue in cadence to the position ordered.

122. Being at order arms.—1. ***Parade,*** 2. ***REST.*** Carry the right foot 6 inches straight to the rear, left knee bent slightly; carry the muzzle in front of the center of the body, barrel to the left, turning the rifle on the heel of the butt, grasp the rifle with the left hand just below the stacking swivel, and with the right hand below and against the left; the weight of the body resting equally on the heels and balls of both feet.

123. Being at parade rest.—1. ***Squad,*** 2. ***ATTENTION.*** Turn the rifle to the left on the heel of the butt, and bring it to a vertical position, at the same time placing the right foot beside the left. ***(TWO)*** Cut away the left hand smartly to the side and resume the order.

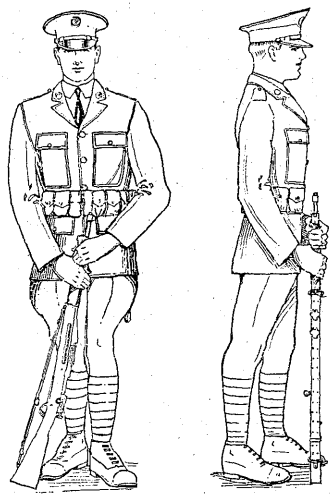


FIG. 14.—Position of ***Parade rest.***

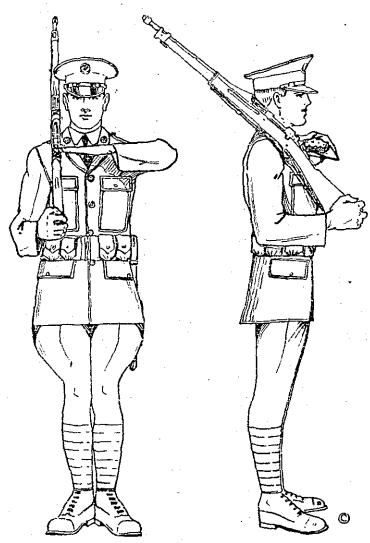


FIG. 15.—Position of ***Rifle salute.***

124. Being at right shoulder arms.—1. ***Rifle,*** 2. ***SALUTE.*** Carry the left hand smartly to the small of the stock, forearm horizontal, palm of the hand down, thumb and fingers extended and joined, first joint of the forefinger touching end of cocking piece; look toward the person saluted. ***(TWO)*** Cut away the left hand smartly to the side; turn the head and eyes to the front.

125. Being at order or trail arms.—1. ***Rifle,*** 2. ***SALUTE.*** Carry the left hand smartly to the right side, palm of the hand down, thumb and fingers extended and joined, forearm and wrist straight, first joint of forefinger against the rifle just above the stacking swivel; look toward the person saluted. ***(TWO)*** Cut away the left hand smartly to the side; turn the head and eyes to the front.

126. Being at order arms.—1. ***Fix,*** 2. ***BAYONETS.***—*a.* If the bayonet scabbard is carried on the belt: Execute parade rest; grasp the bayonet with the right hand, back of the hand toward the body; pressing the spring with the forefinger, draw the bayonet from the scabbard and fix it on the barrel, glancing at the muzzle; resume the order.

b. If the bayonet is carried on the haversack: Draw and fix the bayonet in the most convenient manner.

127. Being at order arms.—1. ***Unfix,*** 2. ***BAYONETS.***—*a.* If the bayonet scabbard is carried on the belt: Execute parade rest; grasp the handle of the bayonet with the right hand, pressing the spring, raise the bayonet until the handle is about 12 inches above the muzzle of the rifle; drop the point to the left, back of the hand toward the body, and glancing at the scabbard, return the bayonet, the blade passing between the left arm and the body; regrasp the rifle with the right hand and resume the order.

b. If the bayonet scabbard is carried on the haversack: Take the bayonet from the rifle as described above and return it to the scabbard in the most convenient manner.

128. Being at order arms.—1. ***Stand at,*** 2. ***EASE.*** At the command ***EASE,*** carry the left foot about 12 inches to the left, keeping the legs straight, so that the weight of the body rests equally on both feet. At the same time incline the muzzle of the rifle to the front, the right arm extended, right hand grasping the rifle just below the upper band. Hold the left hand behind the body resting in the small of the back, palm to the rear.

SECTION III

LOADINGS AND FIRINGS

129. General rules.—*a.* The commands for loading and firing are the same whether standing, kneeling, sitting, or lying down.

b. When kneeling, sitting, or lying down in double rank, the rear rank does not load, aim, or fire.

c. The instruction in firing is preceded by a command for loading.

d. Loadings are executed in line and skirmish line only.

e. Rifles having been ordered loaded, are kept loaded without command until the command ***UNLOAD*** or ***INSPECTION ARMS,*** fresh clips being inserted when the magazine is exhausted.

130. To load.—*a.* Being in line or skirmish line at a halt: 1. ***With dummy (blank or ball) cartridges,*** 2. ***LOAD.*** At the command ***LOAD*** each front rank rifleman or skirmisher faces half right and carries the right foot about 12 inches to the right to such position as will insure the greatest firmness and steadiness of the body; raises or lowers the rifle and drops it into the left hand at

the balance, left thumb extended along the stock, muzzle at the height of the breast, and if armed with the model 1903 rifle, turns the cut-off up. With the right hand he turns up the bolt and draws it back; takes a loaded clip and inserts the end in the clip slots; places his thumb on the powder space of the top cartridge, the fingers extending around the rifle and tips resting on the magazine floor plate; forces the cartridges into the magazine by pressing down with the thumb; removes the clip; thrusts the bolt home, turning down the handle; turns the safety lock to the *safe* and carries the hand to the small of the stock. When in double rank each rear rank rifleman moves to the right front, takes a similar position opposite the interval to the right of his front rank man, muzzle of his rifle extending beyond the front rank, and loads. Automatic riflemen do not execute the loadings or firings in close order.

b. For instruction in loading: 1. ***Simulate,*** 2. ***LOAD.*** Execute as above described except that the cut-off (model 1903 rifle) remains *off* and the handling of the cartridges is simulated. The recruits are first taught to simulate loading and firing. After a few lessons, dummy cartridges may be used. Later blank cartridges may be used.

c. The model 1903 rifle may be used as a single loader by turning the magazine *off*. The magazine may be filled in whole or in part while *off* or *on* by pressing single cartridges down and back until they are in the proper place. The use of the rifle as a single loader is, however, to be regarded as exceptional. The model 1917 rifle cannot be used as a single loader.

131. To unload.—Being in line or skirmish line: ***UNLOAD.*** Take the position of ***load,*** turn the safety lock (model 1903 rifle) up (if armed with the model 1917 rifle turn the safety lock to the front) and move the bolt alternately backward and forward until all the cartridges are ejected. After the last cartridge is ejected, the chamber is closed by first thrusting the bolt forward slightly to free it from the stud holding it in place when the chamber is opened, pressing the follower down and back to engage it under the bolt, and then thrusting the bolt home. The trigger then is pulled, the cartridges are picked up, cleaned and returned to the belt, and the rifle is brought to the order.

132. To fire by volley.—*a.* Being in any firing formation and rifles loaded: 1. ***Ready,*** 2. ***AIM,*** 3. ***Squad,*** 4. ***FIRE.*** (For ceremonial purposes.)

At the command ***Ready*** take the position of ***load*** if not already there and turn the safety lock to the ***ready.*** At the command ***AIM*** raise the rifle with both hands, butt placed and held firmly against the shoulder, left hand well under the rifle, left hand grasping the rifle at or in front of the balance, rifle resting in the palm of the left hand, right elbow at the height of the shoulder, right cheek held firmly against the stock as far forward as it can be placed without straining. The rifle is held 30° above the horizontal or, if ordered, at the horizontal. The left eye is closed, right eye looking through the notch of the rear sight. At the command ***FIRE*** the trigger is squeezed rapidly; the rifle is then lowered to the position of load and loaded.

When in double rank each rear rank man aims through the interval to the right of his file leader and leans forward slightly to advance the muzzle of his rifle beyond his front rank man.

b. To continue the firing: 1. ***AIM,*** 2. ***Squad,*** 3. ***FIRE.*** Each command is executed as previously explained. ***LOAD*** (from the magazine) is executed by drawing back and thrusting home the bolt with the right hand, leaving the safety lock turned up to the *ready.*

133. To suspend firing.—*a.* The instructor blows a long blast of the whistle and repeats it, if necessary, or commands ***SUSPEND FIRING.***

Firing stops; rifles are held loaded and locked, in a position of readiness for instant resumption of firing, rear sights unchanged. The men continue to observe the target or aiming point, or place at which the target disappeared, or at which it is expected to reappear. Suspend firing is used for short pauses or to steady the men.

b. This whistle signal may be used as a preliminary to ***cease firing.***

134. To cease firing.—*a.*—***CEASE FIRING.*** Firing stops; rifles not already there are brought to the position of ***load;*** those not loaded are then loaded; sights are laid and rifles are locked and brought to the order. Cease firing is used for long pauses, to prepare for changes of position.

b. Commands for suspending or ceasing fire may be given at any time after the preparatory command for firing whether the firing has actually commenced or not.

CHAPTER 5
MANUAL OF THE PISTOL

		Paragraphs
SECTION I.	General	135
II.	Dismounted	136–144
III.	Mounted	145–153

SECTION I
GENERAL

135. General.—*a.* The movements hereinafter described differ in purpose from the manual of arms for the rifle in that they are not designed to be executed in exact unison. Furthermore, with only a few exceptions, there is no real necessity for their simultaneous execution. They are not therefore planned as a disciplinary drill to be executed in cadence with snap and precision, but merely as simple, quick, and safe methods of handling the pistol. Commands are prescribed for only such movements as may be occasionally executed simultaneously by the squad or larger unit.

b. In general, movements begin and end at the position of ***raise pistol.***

c. Commands for firing, when required, are limited to ***COMMENCE FIRING*** and ***CEASE FIRING.***

d. Whenever the pistol is carried mounted the lanyard will be used. The lanyard should be of such length that the arm may be fully extended without constraint.

SECTION II
DISMOUNTED

136. To raise the pistol.—The command is: 1. ***Raise,*** 2. ***PISTOL.*** Unbutton the flap of the holster with the right hand and grasp the stock, back of the hand outward. Draw the pistol from the holster; reverse it, muzzle up, the thumb and last three fingers holding the stock, the forefinger extended outside the trigger guard, the barrel of the pistol to the rear and inclined to the front at an angle of 30°, the hand as high as, and 6 inches in front of, the point of the right shoulder. This is the position of ***raise pistol.***

137. To withdraw the magazine.—Without lowering the right hand, turn the barrel slightly to the right; press the magazine catch with the right thumb and with the left hand remove the magazine. Place it in the belt or otherwise dispose of it; in no case throw it away.

138. To open the chamber.—Withdraw the magazine and resume the position of raise pistol. Without lowering the right hand, grasp the slide with the thumb and the first two fingers of the left hand (thumb on left side of slide and pointing downward); keeping the muzzle elevated, shift the grip of the right hand so that the right thumb engages with the slide stop. Push the slide downward to its full extent, and force the slide stop into its notch with the right thumb, without lowering the muzzle of the pistol.

139. To close the chamber.—With the right thumb press down the slide stop and let the slide go forward. Squeeze the trigger.

140. To insert a magazine.—Without lowering the right hand, turn the barrel to the right. Grasp a magazine with the first two fingers and thumb of the left hand; withdraw it from the belt and insert it in the pistol. Press it fully home.

141. To load the pistol.—The command is: 1. ***Load,*** 2. ***PISTOL.*** If a loaded magazine is not already in the pistol, insert one. Without lowering the right hand, turn the barrel slightly to the left. Grasp the slide with the thumb and fingers of the left hand (thumb on right side of slide and pointing upward). Pull the slide downward to its full extent. Release the slide and engage the safety lock.

142. To unload the pistol.—The command is: 1. ***Unload,*** 2. **PISTOL.** Withdraw the magazine. Open the chamber. Glance at the chamber to verify that it is empty. Close the chamber. Take position of ***raise pistol*** and squeeze the trigger. Then insert an empty magazine.

143. To inspect the pistol.—The command is: 1. ***Inspection,*** 2. ***PISTOL.*** Withdraw the magazine. Open the chamber. Take the position of ***raise pistol.*** The withdrawn magazine is held in the open left hand at the height of the belt. After the pistol has been inspected, or at the command 1. ***Return,*** 2. ***PISTOL,*** close the chamber, take the position of ***raise pistol,*** and squeeze the trigger. Insert an empty magazine, and execute ***return pistol.***

144. To return pistol.—The command is: 1. ***Return,*** 2. ***PISTOL,*** Lower the pistol to the holster, reversing it, muzzle down, back of the hand to the right; raise the flap of the holster with the right thumb; insert the pistol in the holster and thrust it home; button the flap of the holster with the right hand.

SECTION III

MOUNTED

145. The following movements are executed as prescribed in Section II: ***Raise pistol, return pistol, close chamber.***

146. The mounted movements may be practiced when dismounted by first cautioning, ***MOUNTED POSITION.*** The right foot is then carried about 20 inches to the right, and the left hand to the position of the bridle hand.

147. Whenever the pistol is lowered into the bridle hand, the movement is executed by rotating the barrel to the *right.* Grasp the slide in the full grip of the left hand, thumb extending along the slide, back of the hand down, barrel down and pointing upward and to the left front.

148. To withdraw the magazine.—Lower the pistol into the bridle hand. Press the magazine catch with the forefinger of the right hand, palm of the hand over the base of the magazine to prevent it from springing out; withdraw the magazine and place it in the belt, or otherwise dispose of it.

149. To open the chamber.—Withdraw the magazine. Grasp the stock with the right hand, back of the hand down, thrust forward and upward with the right hand, and engage the slide stop by pressure of the right thumb.

150. To insert a magazine.—Lower the pistol into the bridle hand. Extra magazines should be carried in the belt with the projection on the base pointing to the left. Grasp the magazine with

the tip of the right forefinger on the projection, withdraw it from the belt, and insert it in the pistol. Press it fully home.

151. To load the pistol.—The command is: 1. ***Load,*** 2. ***PISTOL.*** Lower the pistol into the bridle hand. If a loaded magazine is not already in the pistol, insert one. Grasp the stock with the right hand, back of the hand down, and thrust upward and to the left front; release the slide and engage the safety lock.

152. To unload the pistol.—The command is: 1. ***Unload,*** 2. ***PISTOL.*** Withdraw the magazine. Open the chamber. Glance at the chamber to verify that it is empty. Close the chamber. Take the position of ***Raise pistol*** and squeeze the trigger. Then insert an empty magazine.

153. To inspect pistol.—The command is: 1. ***Inspection,*** 2. ***PISTOL.*** (The pistol is inspected mounted only at Mounted Guard Mounting. The magazine is not withdrawn.) Take the position of ***raise pistol.*** After the pistol has been inspected, or at the command, pistols are returned.

CHAPTER 6
MANUAL OF THE GUIDON

		Paragraphs
SECTION I.	General	154
II.	Dismounted	155–167
III.	Mounted	168

SECTION I
GENERAL

154. Care and use.—The guidon is a company emblem, its specifications prescribed and use authorized by Army Regulations. The care and use of the guidon are governed by the following general rules:

a. It is carried at ceremonies; on other occasions it is carried only when prescribed by the commander.

b. In garrison it is kept in the orderly room when not being carried in formation.

c. In camp between reveille and retreat, except during inclement weather and when being carried in formation, it is displayed in front of the tent of the company commander.

d. On the march the guidon is with the company baggage or left at the orderly room should the baggage not be carried.

e. In combat the guidon is always with the company baggage.

f. The guidon bearer is a specially selected enlisted man designated by the company commander.

SECTION II
DISMOUNTED

155. General rules.—The guidon is brought to ***present arms, parade rest,*** the ***order,*** and the ***trail*** with the company. At the command of execution of other movements of the manual, the guidon is brought to the ***carry.*** When falling in, standing at rest or at ease, executing the facings, side step, back step, and alignments the guidon is carried as prescribed for the rifle. When marching at route step or at ease the guidon is at the carry, the pike held by either hand. If at the order, unless otherwise prescribed, the guidon is brought to the carry at the command of execution for marching in quick time. The guidon is brought to the position of double time at the preparatory command for marching in double time.

156. Carry guidon.—Heel of pike in socket at height of and in front of the right hip, right hand grasping the pike at the height of the chin, right arm extended without stiffness, pike inclined to the right front.

157. Being at the carry guidon, to execute order guidon.—Bring the pike to a vertical position and lift the heel of the pike from the socket, assisted by the left hand. Then lower the pike with the right hand, allowing the pike to slide through the hand, left hand steadying the pike until the heel of the pike rests on the ground on

a line with and touching the toe of the right shoe. Cut the left hand to the side, right hand grasping the pike between the thumb and fingers, right forearm horizontal, right elbow close to the body, pike inclined to the right front. This is the position of ***order guidon.***

158. Being at order guidon, to execute carry guidon.—Throw guidon up with right hand until heel of pike is approximately opposite socket, assisted by the left hand place heel of pike in socket, cut left hand to side and take position of ***carry guidon.***

159. Being at order guidon, to execute parade rest.—Execute parade rest as without arms at the same time carrying the pike, without moving the position of the heel, to the left so that it is diagonally across the body, both hands grasping the pike, left hand uppermost.

160. Being at parade rest, to resume the position of attention.—Assume the position of ***order guidon*** in two counts similar to the execution of the movement with the rifle.

161. Guidon salute.—*a. From the carry.* At the command ***present,*** bring the pike to a vertical position, at the same time lift the heel of the pike from the socket, assisted by the left hand. At the command ***ARMS,*** assisted by the left hand place the pike beneath the hollow of the right shoulder, right arm fully extended, pike horizontal; cut the left hand to the side. When passing in review, the first motion of the guidon salute is executed as the company commander executes the first motion of the saber salute. The salute is completed as the company commander completes the saber salute. The guidon is brought to the ***carry*** with the company commander.

b. From the order. At the command ***present,*** throw the guidon up to a vertical position, regrasping the pike at the place for the right hand in ***carry guidon,*** steadying the pike with the left hand below the right. At the command ***ARMS,*** complete the salute as for the ***carry.***

162. Being at the guidon salute.—*a. To execute carry guidon.* Raise pike to a vertical position with the right hand, assisted by the left hand place the heel of the pike in the socket and assume the position of ***carry guidon.***

b. To execute order guidon. Raise pike to a vertical position with the right hand. Then lower the pike with the right hand, steadied by the left, allowing the pike to slide through the hand until heel of pike rests on the ground on a line with and touching the toe of the right shoe, and assume the position of ***order guidon.***

163. Individual salute by guidon bearer.—At the *carry, order,* or *trail.* Bring the pike to a vertical position. Salute with the left hand. Left hand and arm in same relative position as when executing the rifle salute.

164. Being at the order, to execute trail guidon.—Raise the pike and incline the guidon forward so that the pike makes an angle of about 30° with the vertical, the right arm bent slightly.

165. Being at the trail, to execute order guidon.—Lower the pike with the right hand and resume the order.

166. To stand at ease.—Take the same position as with the rifle without changing the position of the right hand on the pike.

167. At double time.—The heel of the pike is disengaged from the socket, the pike held diagonally across the body, the right hand grasping the pike at the position used at the *carry,* right forearm horizontal, elbow near the body, left hand grasping the pike opposite the junction of the neck and left shoulder.

SECTION III

MOUNTED

168. General rules.—When carried mounted the following modifications will prevail:

a. When leading the horse the pike is held in the left hand in the same relative manner as in the trail dismounted.

b. At *stand to horse,* the heel of the pike rests on the ground on a line with and touching the toe of the left shoe, holding the pike with the left hand in the same relative manner as in the order, *dismounted.*

c. At the command ***Prepare to mount,*** the pike is raised slightly from the ground while stepping back; upon halting, the heel is placed on the ground about one foot in front of the left forefoot of the horse; the left hand continues to grasp the pike, as well as a lock of the mane.

d. After mounting, the pike is grasped with the right hand and is then raised over the reins, and is lowered on the right side of the saddle, the heel being inserted in the guidon socket, the right arm is passed through the sling.

e. When mounted, the heel being in the guidon socket, the right hand grasps the pike, forearm nearly horizontal, the arm through the sling, pike vertical. This is the position of ***carry guidon,*** *mounted,* and is the habitual position of the guidon when the guidon bearer is mounted.

f. (1) *Guidon salute* and return to the *carry* are executed as from *carry, dismounted,* except that the left hand is not used in executing these movements.

(2) The individual salute is not rendered by a guidon bearer when mounted.

g. At the command ***Prepare to dismount*** the arm is disengaged from the sling, the heel is disengaged from the guidon socket; the pike, slightly inclined to the rear is carried over the reins, the pike lowered until the heel rests on the ground about one foot in front of the left forefoot of the horse and the pike grasped jointly in the left hand with a lock of the mane. After dismounting the position of *stand to horse* is assumed.

h. When the organization is marching at *route order, route step,* or *at ease* the guidon may be carried at will with the spearhead elevated.

CHAPTER 7
CLOSE ORDER

		Paragraphs
SECTION I.	The rifle squad	169–180
II.	The rifle platoon	181–190
III.	The rifle company	191–208
IV.	The battalion	209–212
V.	The regiment	213–220
VI.	The brigade	221–226
VII.	Headquarters companies, Battalion, Regiment and Brigade	227–228
VIII.	The Service Company, Regiment	229–232
IX.	The Howitzer Squad, Platoon and Company	233–240
X.	The Machine-Gun Squad, Platoon and Company	241–249

SECTION I
THE RIFLE SQUAD

169. Definition and purpose.—A squad is a group of soldiers formed for the purpose of instruction, discipline, control, and order.

The movements of squad drill are so designated as to use the squad as a fixed unit for the purpose of facilitating and controlling the movements of the company.

The term *squad,* as hereinafter used, means the rifle squad unless otherwise stated.

170. Strength.—The squad proper consists of a corporal and seven privates and (or) privates, first class.

If the number of men grouped is more than 5 and less than 12, they are formed as a squad of 4 files, any excess above 8 being posted in the line of file closers.

If the number of men grouped is greater than 11, two or more squads are formed and the group is termed a section or a platoon.

For the instruction of recruits these rules may be modified.

171. Organization.—*a.* The corporal is the squad leader and when absent is replaced by the second in command. If the second in command is also absent the senior private, first class, or private acts as leader.

b. The corporal, when in ranks, is posted as the left man in the front rank of the squad. When the corporal leaves the ranks to drill his squad, his rear-rank man steps into the front rank and No. 3, rear rank, moves over and covers No. 4, front rank. When the corporal returns to ranks, the original formation is resumed.

c. When there are only seven men in the squad, No. 3 is a blank file; when only six, Nos. 2 and 3 are blank files.

d. When a squad is faced or marches to the rear, the original rear rank becomes the front rank and remains such until the formation is again changed, but blank spaces in the original rear rank are not filled.

e. When any blank space occurs in the front rank it is immediately filled by the corresponding rear-rank man, except as noted in paragraph *d* above. In case there is no corresponding rear-rank man the blank space is filled by some other rear-rank man.

f. One rifleman is a substitute automatic rifleman. He is the first man to take over the automatic rifle, in the event the automatic rifleman becomes a casualty.

g. Two riflemen are scouts.

172. To form the squad.—*a.* To form the squad before the permanent organization has been made, the instructor places himself 3 paces in front of where the center of the squad is to be and commands: ***FALL IN.***

The men assemble at attention, pieces at the order and are arranged by the corporal in double rank in order of height from right to left. Each man brings up his left arm as in ***right dress*** (see par. 174), and drops it as soon as the man on his left has his interval. The rear rank forms with distance of 40 inches. The men on the left of the squad (left file) do not bring up their arms.

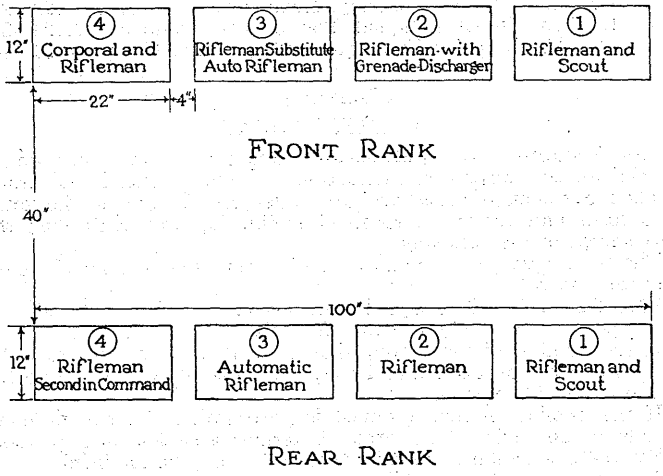


FIG. 16.—Squad organization.

The instructor then commands: 1. ***Count,*** 2. ***OFF.*** At this command, all except the right file execute ***Eyes right,*** and, beginning on the right, the men in each rank count *one, two, three, four;* each man turns his head and eyes to the front as he counts.

Pieces are then inspected as prescribed in paragraph 109.

b. As soon as its permanent organization has been fixed, the squad forms, without regard to height, in the desired formation as follows: No. 1 front rank, rifleman and scout; No. 1 rear rank, rifleman and scout; No. 2 rear rank, rifleman; No. 4 rear rank, rifleman and second in command; No. 2 front rank, rifleman with grenade discharger; No. 3 rear rank, automatic rifleman; No. 3 front rank, rifleman and substitute automatic rifleman; No. 4 front rank, corporal.

173. Previous instruction applicable.—The squad executes the *halt, rests, facings, steps,* and *marchings,* and the *manual of arms* as prescribed in Chapters 3 and 4.

174. Alignments.—*a.* To align the squad, the base file or files having been established, the command is: 1. ***Right (left),*** 2. ***DRESS,*** 3. ***FRONT.***

(1) At the command ***DRESS,*** each man who has to furnish 4 inches interval to the man on his left, places the left hand with the fingers extended downward and joined, thumb along the forefinger, upon the left hip, heel of the hand resting against the hip bone near the belt. The left elbow is in the plane of the body. At the same time each man except the base file executes ***Eyes right*** and places himself so that his right arm rests lightly against the left elbow of the man on his right, and so that his eyes and shoulders are in line with those on his right. The rear-rank men cover in file. Each man stands fast upon his arrival at his proper position.

(2) The instructor verifies the alignment of both ranks from a position 2 paces from that flank toward which the squad is dressing, which is the point of rest, and orders up or back such men as may be in rear or in advance of the line; only the men designated move.

(3) At the command ***FRONT,*** given when the ranks are aligned, each man turns his head and eyes smartly to the front and drops his left hand quickly by his side.

b. When marching, the men preserve their intervals from the side of the guide, yield to pressure from that side, and resist pressure from the opposite direction.

They recover intervals, if lost, by gradually opening out or closing in; they recover alignment by slightly lengthening or shortening steps. The rear-rank men cover their file leaders at 40 inches.

In double rank the front-rank man on the right, or designated flank, is the guide. When marching faced to the flank the leading man of the front rank is the guide.

175. To open and close ranks.—*a.* The squad being in line at a halt, to open ranks, the command is: 1. ***Open ranks,*** 2. ***MARCH,*** 3. ***FRONT.*** At the command ***MARCH*** the front-rank men execute right dress; the rear-rank men and file closers march backward four steps, halt, and then execute right dress.

The instructor verifies the alignment and commands: ***FRONT,*** as described in paragraph 174.

b. The squad being at open ranks, to close ranks, the command is: 1. ***Close ranks,*** 2. ***MARCH.*** At the command ***MARCH*** the rear-rank men close to 40 inches, each man covering his file leader; the file closers close to 2 paces from the rear rank.

176. To take interval.—*a.* When the unit is in line at a halt, the command to take interval is: 1. ***Take interval,*** 2. ***To the right (left),*** 3. ***MARCH,*** 4. ***Squad,*** 5. ***HALT.*** At the command ***To the Right,*** the rear-rank men march backward four steps. At the command ***MARCH,*** all execute ***Right face*** and the leading man of each rank steps off. The other men in the front rank step off in succession, each man planting his foot in his first step as the preceding man plants his foot in his fifth step. Rear-rank men step off with, and march abreast of, their file leaders. At the command ***To the right,*** the file closers march backward eight steps and at the command ***MARCH,*** face to the right. Each steps off with the file nearest him. When armed, at the command ***MARCH,*** the leading man in each rank comes to the *trail* and executes a complete right face and, without coming to the *order,* steps off. At the command ***HALT,*** given when all have their intervals, all halt and face to the front; when armed, all retain their rifles at the trail until the face to the front is completed.

b. The unit being at intervals, the command to assemble is: 1. ***Assemble to the right (left),*** 2. ***MARCH.*** At the command ***MARCH,*** the front-rank man on the right stands fast. The rear-rank man on the right closes to 40 inches. The other men face to the right in marching, close by the shortest line, halt and face to the front. The left hand is raised as in dressing to secure accuracy of interval; it is then dropped quickly to the side. File closers resume their position in line, moving by the most direct route. If armed, the movement is executed with the rifles at the *trail* without such command.

177. To stack and take arms.—*a.* The unit being in line at a halt, to stack arms the command is: 1. ***Stack,*** 2. ***ARMS.*** At the command ***ARMS,*** each even number of the front rank grasps his rifle with the left hand at the upper band and rests the butt between his feet, barrel to the front, muzzle inclined slightly to the front and opposite the center of the interval on his right, the thumb and forefinger raising the stacking swivel. Each even number of the rear rank then regrasps his rifle with the right hand at the balance, carrying it to a horizontal position, barrel up, and passes his rifle to his file leader, who grasps it between the bands with his right hand and throws the butt about 2 feet in advance of that of his own rifle and opposite the right of the interval; at the same time he allows the right hand to slip to the upper band, the thumb and forefinger raising the stacking swivel; he engages the stacking swivel with that of his own rifle. Each odd number of the front rank raises his rifle with the right hand, regrasps it with the right hand at the balance, carries it well forward, barrel to the front; the left hand guiding the stacking swivel, engages the lower hook of the swivel of his own rifle with the free hook of that of the even number of the rear rank; he then turns the barrel outward into the angle formed by the other two rifles and lowers the butt to the ground, so that it will be to the right of and against the toe of his right shoe.

The stacks made, the loose pieces are laid on them by the even numbers of the front rank.

When each man has finished handling the pieces, he takes the position of the soldier.

b. The unit being in line behind the stacks to take arms, the command is: 1. ***Take,*** 2. ***ARMS.*** At the command ***ARMS*** the loose pieces are returned by the even numbers of the front rank. Each even number of the front rank grasps his own rifle with the left hand, the rifle of his rear-rank man with the right hand, holding both between the bands; each odd number of the front rank grasps his rifle in the same way with the right hand, disengages it by raising the butt from the ground, and then turning the rifle to the right, detaches it from the stack. Each even number of the front rank then disengages and detaches his rifle by turning it to the left, and passes the rifle of his rear-rank man to him. As each man receives his piece he resumes the order.

Should any squad have Nos. 2 and 3 blank files, No. 1 rear rank takes the place of No. 2 rear rank in making and breaking the stack. After the stacks are made or broken he resumes his post.

Rifles are never stacked with the bayonets fixed.

178. The oblique march.—*a.* For the instruction of recruits, the squad being in column or correctly aligned, the instructor causes each man to face half right or half left, points out his position, and explains that it is to be maintained in the oblique march.

b. The squad being in any formation, the command to oblique is: 1. ***Right (left) oblique,*** 2. ***MARCH.*** At the command ***MARCH,*** each man faces half right in marching and steps off in a direction of 45° to the right of his original front. He preserves his relative position, keeping his shoulders parallel to those of the guide (the man on the right front of the line or column) and so regulates his step that the ranks remain parallel to their original front.

c. The command ***HALT*** is given on the left foot when halting from the right oblique and on the right foot when halting from the left oblique. At the command ***HALT,*** given as the right foot strikes the ground, advance and plant the left foot as in the movement

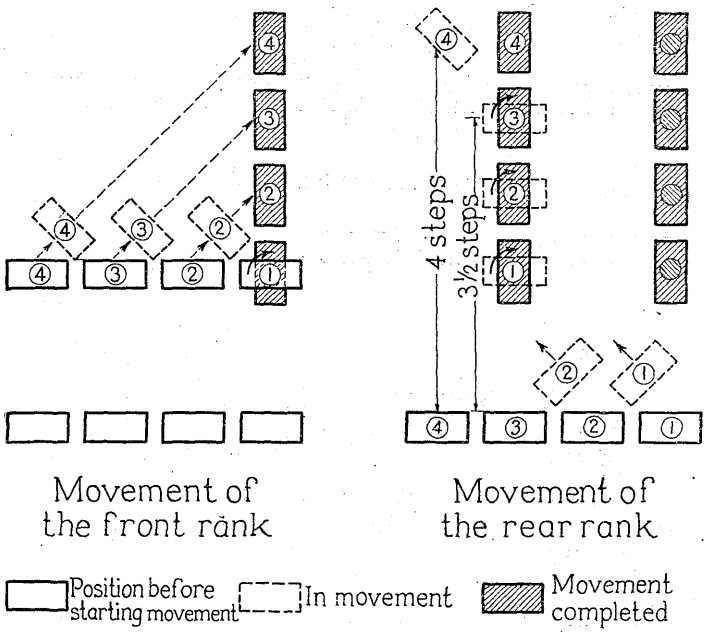


FIG. 17.—Squad right.

being executed, turning to the front on the ball of the left foot; place the right foot by the side of the left.

d. To resume the original direction the command is: 1. ***Forward,*** 2. ***MARCH.*** At the command ***MARCH,*** the men half face to the left in marching and then move straight to the front.

e. If at *half step* or *mark time* while obliquing, the oblique march is resumed by the command: 1. ***Oblique,*** 2. ***MARCH.***

179. To turn on a moving pivot.—*a.* The unit being in line to turn on a moving pivot, the command is: 1. ***Right, (left) turn,*** 2. ***MARCH.*** The movement is executed by each rank successively and on the same ground. At the command ***MARCH,*** the pivot man of the front rank faces to the right in marching, takes one full step and then takes eight half steps. The other men of the rank oblique to the right until opposite their places in line, then execute a second

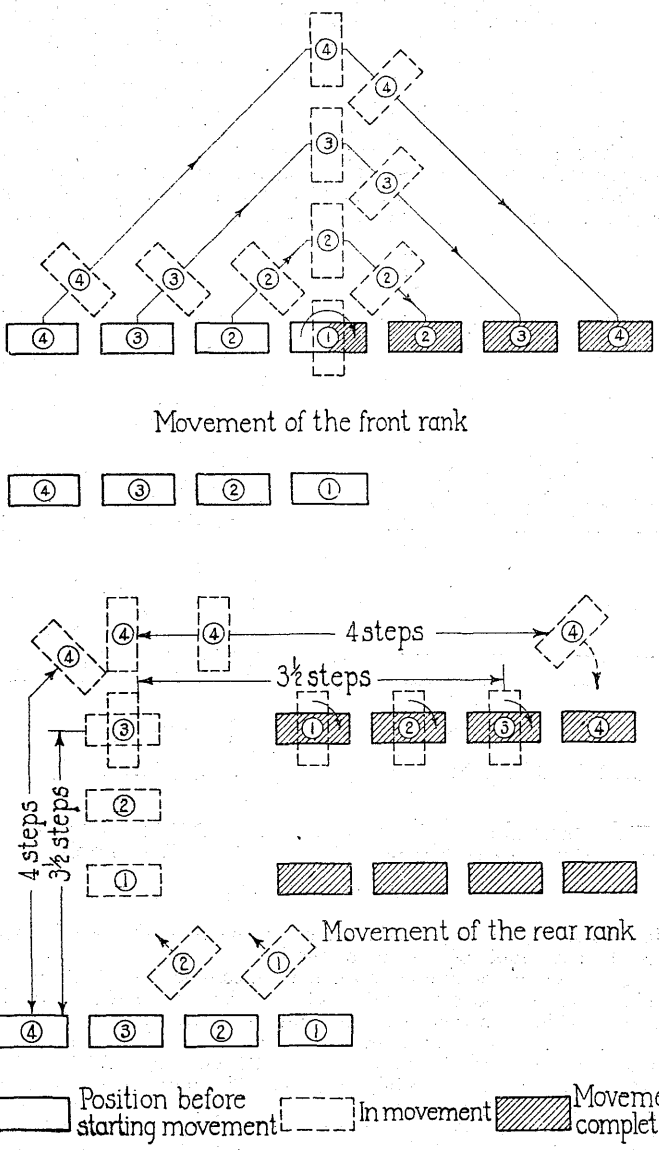


FIG. 18.—Squad right about.

right oblique, and take the half step on arriving abreast of the pivot man. The marching flank arrives abreast of the pivot man when the latter has taken eight half steps. On the tenth count all take the full step without command.

b. *Right (left) half turn* is executed in a similar manner. The pivot man makes a half change of direction to the right, takes one full step and four half steps; the other men make a quarter change in obliquing. On the sixth count all take the full step without command.

c. In turning on a moving pivot, being in march, the count for the movement begins on the second step after the command of execution.

180. To turn on a fixed pivot.—*a.* The squad being in line, to turn on a fixed pivot and march, the command is: 1. ***Squad right (left),*** 2. ***MARCH.*** At the command ***MARCH,*** the pivot man in the front rank faces to the right in marching and marks time. The other front-rank men oblique to the right, place themselves abreast of the pivot man and mark time. In the rear rank, the fourth and third men from the right march straight to the front; the second and first men from the right place themselves in column in the order named behind the third man; when in rear of their file leaders the third, second, and first men face to the right in marching, cover their file leaders, and mark time; the fourth man from the right places himself on the left of the third man from the right, and covers his file leader. All execute ***Forward march*** without command, the foot being planted in the first step in the new direction on the sixth count.

b. The squad being in line to turn on a fixed pivot and halt, the command is: 1. ***Squad right (left),*** 2. ***MARCH,*** 3. ***Squad,*** 4. ***HALT.*** The turn is executed as prescribed in the preceding paragraph except that all men, on arriving on the new line, mark time until the command ***HALT*** is given when all halt. The command ***HALT*** should be given on the fifth count.

c. The squad being in line to turn about and march, the command is: 1. ***Squad right (left) about,*** 2. ***MARCH.*** At the command ***MARCH*** the squad twice executes ***Squad right.*** In commencing the second squad right, the foot is planted in the first step on the sixth count. All execute ***Forward march*** without command, the foot being planted in the first step in the new direction on the eleventh count.

d. The squad being in line to turn about and halt, the command is: 1. ***Squad right (left) about,*** 2. ***MARCH,*** 3. ***Squad,*** 4. ***HALT.*** The third command is given after the completion of the first squad right. The turn is executed as prescribed in the preceding paragraph except that all men, on arriving on the new line, mark time until the command ***HALT*** is given. The command ***HALT*** should be given on the tenth count.

e. In turning on a fixed pivot, being in march, the count for the movement begins on the second step after the command of execution.

SECTION II

THE RIFLE PLATOON

181. Organization.—*a.* The rifle platoon at war strength comprises a platoon headquarters and six squads.

b. The platoon headquarters comprises 1 lieutenant (platoon leader), 1 platoon sergeant (second in command), and 4 privates (runners).

c. In each platoon men are arranged, as far as practicable, according to height from right to left, the tallest on the right. Departures from this rule are authorized for the purpose of assigning men to duties which they are best fitted to perform and in order to maintain the integrity of squads. If any squad contains fewer than six men, it is either increased to that number by transfers from other squads or from privates in the file closers, or it is broken up and its members assigned to other squads or posted in the line of file closers. These squad organizations are maintained by transfers, if necessary, until the platoon becomes so reduced in numbers as to necessitate a new division into squads. No squad contains fewer than six men.

d. For the purpose of formations or drill the runners may be used to fill blank files.

e. Individual duties.—(1). The platoon sergeant is second in command of the platoon. He forms the platoon and receives the reports of squad leaders at all formations and, from his post in the file closers, supervises its drill and assists the platoon leader in control.

(2) The platoon guides are responsible for the proper direction and step of the platoon. When sections drill as platoons or independently the platoon guides become section leaders and, as such, drill and control their sections.

(3) The section guides are file closers during platoon and company drill except when the sections drill as platoons, as stated in paragraph 183*b*. They assist in control by cautioning and correcting whenever necessary.

(4) The corporals (squad leaders) are responsible for control of their squads. They repeat such commands of platoon leaders as are hereinafter prescribed.

(5) The runners are file closers during drill unless temporarily assigned to squads.

(6) All noncommissioned officers in the file closers assist in control of the platoon by cautioning and correcting whenever necessary. Other file closers post themselves as illustrated in Figure 19 and conform to the movements of the platoon as hereinafter prescribed.

f. The platoon in line is formed in double rank. It is divided into squads beginning on the right flank. Platoons of more than three squads are divided into two sections. If the number of squads in the platoon is even the sections comprise an equal number of squads. If the number of squads is odd the right section is the stronger.

g. Each section at war strength comprises a section headquarters and three squads.

h. The section headquarters comprises one sergeant (section leader) and one corporal (section guide).

i. Sections and squads are numbered consecutively from right to left in each platoon. These designations do not change. For convenience in giving commands and for reference, the designations *right, center* and *left* when in line, and *leading, center* and *rear* when in column are used to designate the actual right, center, left, leading or rear section or squad.

182. To size the platoon.—The instructor arranges the men according to height in column at facing distance, tallest man in front.

Squad leaders place themselves according to height, the tallest as the seventh man, the others as every eighth man in rear. The instructor then commands: 1. ***In two ranks form platoon,*** 2. ***MARCH,*** 3. ***FRONT.***

At the command ***MARCH,*** the first man faces to the left; the second man places himself in the rear rank covering the first at a distance of 40 inches; both place the left hand upon the hip; the other men close in quick time, and form alternately in front and rear ranks, as explained for the first two. Each man halts upon arriving at his proper place, faces to the left and executes ***right dress.***

All men having formed, the instructor commands: ***FRONT.*** Each man turns his head and eyes to the front and drops his left hand by the side.

183. Formations.—*a.* The formations of the platoons ars: *Line, column of squads, twos* or *files.* (See Figure 19). The principal close-order formations are the *line* and *columns of squads.*

b. For the purpose of variation in platoon drills and for the purpose of instructing noncommissioned officers in the duties of higher command, platoon commanders may designate their sections as platoons, appointing the necessary guides and platoon leaders. The platoon may then be drilled as a company.

184. General rules for close-order drill.—*a.* The platoon executes the *halt, rests, facings, steps* and *marchings, manual of arms, obliques, resumes the direct march, preserves alignments and stacks* and *takes arms,* as explained in Section I, and in Chapters 3 and 4, in proper cases substituting in the commands, ***platoon*** for ***squad.***

b. The same rule applies to sections, detachments, and details, in proper cases substituting their designations for ***squad*** in the commands. In the same manner these execute the movements prescribed for the platoon whenever practicable, in proper cases substituting their designations for ***platoon*** in the commands.

c. Except as provided in paragraph 183*b,* close-order drill of sections in a platoon consists only of such movements as are executed according to the principles of drill of platoons in the rifle company substituting in the commands the name of the appropriate units.

d. (1) *Rules for the guides.* The guides of a column of squads place themselves on the flank opposite the file closers. To change guides and file closers to the other flank, the platoon leader commands: 1. ***File closers on the left (right) flank,*** 2. ***MARCH.*** At the command ***MARCH,*** the file closers dart through the column and post themselves on the other flank; the platoon leader and guides change to the opposite flank.

(2) *Action of guides and file closers in executing movements from column and line.* Guides and file closers, when necessary, lengthen their step to approximately 33 inches in order to contribute to the smoothness of movements. The following movements of guides and file closers, though not designated to be exact, add to the precision of platoon and company drill.

(a) *Being in line:*

(i) *Squads right.* The right guide takes two steps forward, faces to the right in marching, takes one step, and marks time. The left guide takes two steps forward, faces to the right in marching, and marks time.

(ii) *Squads right about.* The right guide faces to the right in marching and takes two steps, faces to the right in marching, and marks time. The left guide takes post in the same manner,

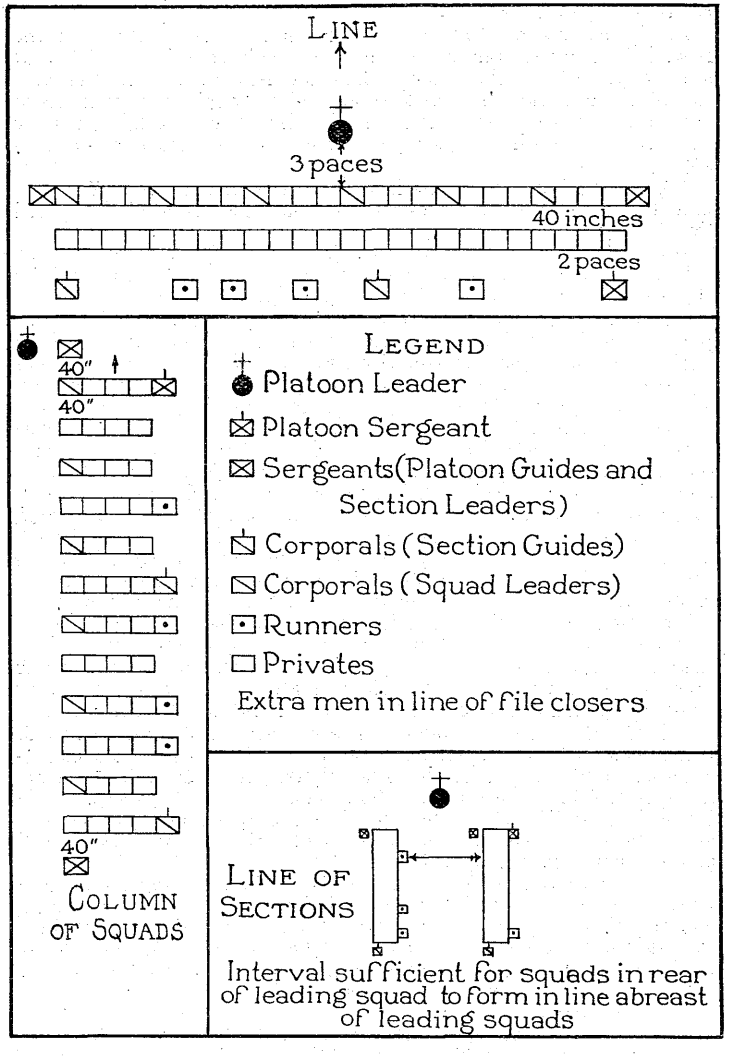


FIG. 19.—Formations of the rifle platoon.

except that he delays execution of the movement so that he will not interfere with the rear rank of the left squad.

(iii) *Squads right, column right.* The right guide faces to the right in marching and takes two steps, faces to the right in marching, takes one step, and marks time; on the sixth count he takes one full step and then eight half steps. The left guide takes post as in squads right.

(b) *Being in column:*

(i) *Squads right.*

1. When the guide is right the leading guide takes one step forward, faces to the right in marching, and marks time. The rear guide takes two steps forward, faces to the right in marching, and marks time.

2. When the guide is left the leading guide takes one step forward, faces to the right in marching, takes two steps, and marks time. The rear guide takes two steps forward, faces to the right in marching, takes two steps, and marks time.

(ii) *Squads right about.* The leading guide takes one step forward, faces to the right in marching and takes two steps, faces to the right in marching and marks time. The rear guide takes post in the same manner. The file closers take two steps forward, face to the right in marching, take two steps in the new direction, again face to the right in marching, and mark time. They regulate their execution, marking time if necessary, so as not to interfere with the movements of adjacent squads.

(iii) *Column right.*

1. When the guide is right, the leading guide faces to the right in marching and then takes post by marching to the right oblique.

2. When the guide is left, the leading guide marches by the right oblique until opposite his new line of march, when he executes a second right oblique.

(iv) *Right front into line.* The leading guide marches to the left oblique until opposite his post, takes up the half step until the leading squad comes abreast of him, when he takes up the full step. The rear guide marches to the right oblique until opposite his place in line when he obliques to the left, resumes his original direction and halts independently of the right squad and abreast of it.

(v) *On right into line.* The leading guide faces to the right in marching and takes post by the most direct practicable route. The rear guide marches straight to his front and when opposite his place in line, faces to the right in marching. He halts independently of the left squad and abreast of it.

(3) The guide of a unit keeps direction by aligning two points directly in his front and marching on them.

e. Full step from half step or mark time. In all movements requiring the half step or mark time by the platoon or any part of the platoon, the guides and file closers take the full step on the same count as the platoon, or part thereof with which connected.

f. In column of squads, each rank preserves the alignment toward the side of the guide.

g. Guides and enlisted men in the line of file closers execute the manual of arms during drill unless specially excused, when they remain at the order. During ceremonies they execute all movements of the manual.

h. In *take interval,* at the command ***Take interval,*** the men in the file closers covering the right and left files of the platoon step

to the left and right, respectively, and cover the second file from the right and left of the platoon, the right and left guides face about and post themselves on line with the file closers, face to the front, cover the right and left files of the platoon, and execute subsequent movements as prescribed for the file closers.

185. Alignments.—*a.* The alignments are executed as prescribed in paragraph 174, the guide being established instead of the flank file. The guide and the rear-rank man of the flank file, toward which the dress is made, keep their heads and eyes to the front, and the rear-rank man covers his file leader. The left guide and the rear-rank man of the left file do not bring up their left arms while dressing.

b. Whenever the position of alignment necessitates a considerable movement, such movement, at the command to dress, is exe-

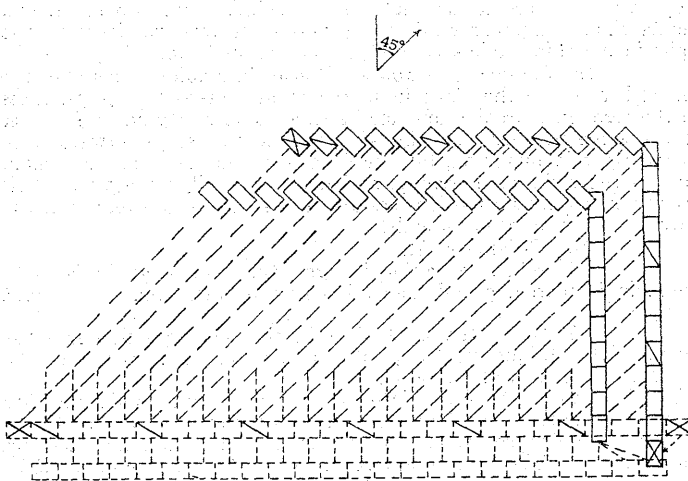


FIG. 20.—Platoon right.

cuted by marching to front or oblique, to the flank or backward, as the case may be, without other command and at the *trail.*

c. At each alignment, the platoon leader verifies the alignment of the front rank, rear rank, and file closers of his platoon, executing a face in marching in moving to his successive positions. He posts himself in each case in prolongation of the rank, 2 paces from it and facing the point of rest. After having verified the alignment of the file closers, he faces to the right (left) in marching, moves to a point 3 paces beyond the front rank, halts, faces to the left (right) and from this position commands: ***FRONT.***

The platoon leader then marches parallel to the front of his platoon until opposite its center, when he halts and faces to the front.

d. In opening ranks the platoon leader aligns his platoon as prescribed, except that after giving the command ***FRONT,*** he places himself 3 paces in front of the right guide and facing the front.

186. Movements from line.—*a.* The platoon being in line, to turn the platoon, the command is: 1. ***Platoon right (left),*** 2.

MARCH, 3. ***Platoon,*** 4. ***HALT,*** or 3. ***Forward,*** 4. ***MARCH.*** Or instead of halting, the platoon may execute by proper command the steps and marchings prescribed and authorized in Section I and in Section III, Chapter 3.

(1) At the command ***MARCH,*** the right guide steps back, takes post on the flank and marks time. The right squad executes squad right and marks time. The other front-rank men oblique to the right and, when in rear of their places on the new line established by the base squad, execute a second right oblique, place themselves on this line abreast of the pivot man, and mark time. The other men of the rear rank move straight to the front 4 paces, oblique to the right, place themselves on the new line established by the rear rank of the base squad, cover their file leaders, and mark time.

(2) The command ***HALT*** or ***MARCH*** or the command involving other movement is normally given when the last man arrives on the line, except that the command ***HALT*** may be given at any time after the movement begins. Only those halt who have completed the movement. Each of the others halts upon arriving on the line, aligns himself to the right and executes ***Front*** without command.

(3) Men glance toward the pivot as they arrive on the line to maintain alignment.

(4) Being in march the count for the four steps to the front of the rear rank begins on the second step after the command ***MARCH.***

b. The platoon being in line, to change direction the command is: 1. ***Right (left) turn,*** 2. ***MARCH,*** 3. ***Platoon,*** 4. ***HALT,*** or 3. ***Forward,*** 4. ***MARCH.*** Or the platoon may execute, by proper command, the steps and marchings prescribed and authorized in Section I and in Section III, Chapter 3.

(1) This movement is executed by each rank successively and on the same ground.

(2) At the command ***MARCH,*** the right guide faces to the right in marching and takes the half step. The other men of the rank oblique to the right until opposite their places in line, when they oblique to the right a second time. All take the half step on arriving abreast of the pivot man.

(3) Each rear-rank man obliques on the same ground as his file leader.

(4) Men glance toward the point of rest as they arrive on the line, to maintain alignment.

(5) The fourth command is given so that the halt or other movement will be executed as the last man arrives on the line.

c. The platoon being in line to form column of squads to a flank, the command is: 1. ***Squads right (left),*** 2. ***MARCH,*** 3. ***Platoon,*** 4. ***HALT.*** The movement is executed by each squad as prescribed in Section 1, Chapter 7. The file closers take post on the pivot flank abreast of and 4 inches from the nearest rank.

d. The platoon being in line to form column of squads and march to the rear, the command is: 1. ***Squads right (left), column right (left),*** 2. ***MARCH.*** The right squad initiates column right as soon as it has completed the squad right.

e. The platoon being in line, to form column of squads and march to the front the command is: 1. ***Right (left) by squads,*** 2. ***MARCH.*** At the command ***MARCH*** the right squad marches forward, taking seven full steps, then eight half steps, and then

resumes the full step. The remainder of the platoon executes *Squads right, Column left,* and follows the right squad. The right guide marches on the right flank of the right squad until seven steps have been taken, when he moves by the left oblique and takes post in front of the left flank file. Being in march the count for the steps to the front for the right squad begins on the second step after the command ***MARCH.***

187. Movements from column of squads.—*a.* The platoon being in column of squads, to change direction, the command is: 1. ***Column right (left),*** 2. ***MARCH.*** At the command ***MARCH*** the front rank of the leading squad turns to the right on a moving pivot, as in Section I. The other ranks, without command, turn successively on the same ground and in a similar manner.

b. The platoon being in column of squads, to form line to the front, the command is: 1. ***Right (left) front into line,*** 2. ***MARCH,*** 3. ***Platoon,*** 4. ***HALT,*** 5. ***FRONT.***

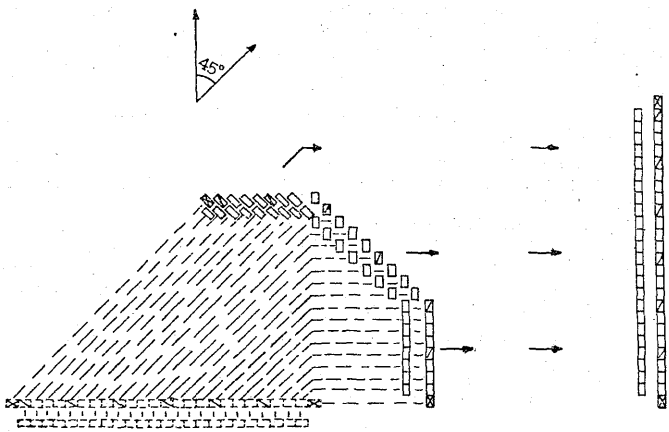


FIG. 21.—Right turn.

(1) At the command ***Right front into line,*** the leader of the leading squad, if halted, commands: ***Forward.*** If marching, he cautions: ***Continue the march.*** The leaders of the squads in rear command: ***Right oblique.*** At the command ***MARCH*** the leading squad executes *Forward march,* or continues the march and the squads in rear execute *Right oblique.*

(2) The command ***HALT*** is given when the leading squad has advanced the desired distance. It halts. Its leader then commands: 1. ***Left,*** 2. ***DRESS.*** Each of the squads in rear when opposite its place in line by an oblique to the left resumes the original direction at the command of its leader. Each is halted on the line at the command of its leader, who then commands: 1. ***Left,*** 2. ***DRESS.*** All dress on the first squad in line. The command ***DRESS*** is given at such time after the command ***HALT*** as will allow the squad to execute the dress immediately after rifles have been brought to the order.

(3) When the execution of this movement in double time is ordered, the leading squad marches in quick time; the squads in

rear march in double time to their places in line and then conform to the gait of the base squad. If the command ***HALT*** is given before the movement is completed, the squads on the line halt but do not dress; squads in rear are halted on the line and the men align themselves toward the point of rest and execute ***FRONT*** without command.

c. The platoon being in column of squads, to form line to a flank the command is: 1. ***Squads right (left),*** 2. ***MARCH.***

(1) The movement is executed by each squad as prescribed in Section I.

(2) If the platoon be formed in line toward the side of the file closers, they dart through the column and take posts in rear of the platoon at the command ***MARCH.***

d. The platoon being in column of squads, to form line on right or left, the command is: 1. ***On right (left) into line,*** 2. ***MARCH,*** 3. ***Platoon,*** 4. ***HALT,*** 5. ***FRONT.***

(1) At the command ***On right into line*** the leader of the leading squad commands: ***Right turn.*** The leaders of the squads in rear command: ***Forward,*** if at a halt. If marching, the leaders of the squads in rear caution: ***Continue the march.*** At the command ***MARCH*** the leading squad turns to the right on a moving pivot. The command ***HALT*** is given when the leading squad has advanced the desired distance in the new direction. It halts. Its leader then commands: 1. ***Right,*** 2. ***DRESS.*** The squads in rear continue to march straight to the front. Each executes ***Right turn*** at the command of its leader, when opposite the right of its place in line. Each is halted on the line at the command of its leader, who then commands: 1. ***Right,*** 2. ***DRESS.*** All dress on the first squad in line. The command ***DRESS*** is given at such time after the command ***HALT*** as will allow the squad to execute the dress immediately after rifles have been brought to the order.

(2) If executed in double time, the leading squad marches in double time until halted.

188. Movements to the rear.—*a.* The platoon being in line, or column of squads, to face or march to the rear, the command is: 1. ***Squads right (left) about,*** 2. ***MARCH,*** or 1. ***Squads right (left) about,*** 2. ***MARCH,*** 3. ***Platoon,*** 4. ***HALT.***

(1) The movement is executed by each squad as prescribed in Section I.

(2) If in line, each file closer darts through the nearest interval and takes post.

b. To march to the rear for a few paces, the command is: 1. ***About,*** 2. ***FACE.*** (3. ***At trail***), 4. ***Forward,*** 5. ***MARCH,*** 6. ***Platoon,*** 7. ***HALT.***

If in line, the guides place themselves in the rear rank, now the front rank. The file closers, on facing about, maintain their relative positions. No other movement is executed until the line is faced to the original front.

189. Movements at ease or at route step.—*a.* The column of squads is the habitual column of route, but *route step* and *at ease* are applicable to any marching formation.

b. To march in route step, the command is: 1. ***Route step,*** 2. ***MARCH.*** The men carry their pieces at will, keeping the muzzles elevated; they are neither required to preserve silence, nor to keep the step. Under favorable marching conditions platoons may be required to maintain cadence. The ranks cover and preserve distance. If halted from route step, the men stand at *rest.*

c. To march at ease, the command is: 1. ***At ease,*** 2. ***MARCH.*** The platoon marches as in route step, except that silence is preserved. When halted the men remain *at ease.*

d. Marching in route step or at ease, to resume attention, the command is: 1. ***Platoon,*** 2. ***ATTENTION.*** At the command ***ATTENTION,*** the rifles are brought to the right shoulder, the automatic rifles are slung over the right shoulder, and the cadence step of quick time is resumed.

190. To diminish the front of a column of squads and the reverse.—*a.* The platoon being in column of squads, to diminish the front to a column of twos, the command is: 1. ***Right (left) by twos,*** 2. ***MARCH.*** At the command ***MARCH,*** all files except the two right files of the leading squad execute ***In place halt*** or ***Stand fast.*** The two left files of the leading squad oblique to the right when disengaged and follow the right files at the shortest practicable distance. The remaining squads follow successively in like manner.

b. The platoon being in column of squads or twos, to diminish the front to a column of files, the command is: 1. ***Right (left) by file,*** 2. ***MARCH.*** At the command ***MARCH,*** all files except the right file of the leading two or squad execute ***In place halt*** or ***Stand fast.*** The left file or files of the leading two or squad oblique successively to the right when disengaged, and each follows the file on its right at the shortest practicable distance. The remaining twos or squads follow successively in like manner.

c. The platoon being in column of files or twos, to form column of squads; or being in column of files to form column of twos, the command is: 1. ***Squads (twos) right (left) front into line,*** 2. ***MARCH.*** At the command ***MARCH*** the leading file or files halt or stand fast. The remainder of the squad or two obliques to the right and halts on line with the leading file or files. The remaining squads or twos close up and successively form in rear of the first in like manner. This movement is ordered right or left, so as to restore the files to their normal relative positions in the two or squad.

d. The movements prescribed in the three preceding subparagraphs, *a, b,* and *c,* are difficult of execution at attention and have no value as disciplinary exercises.

SECTION III

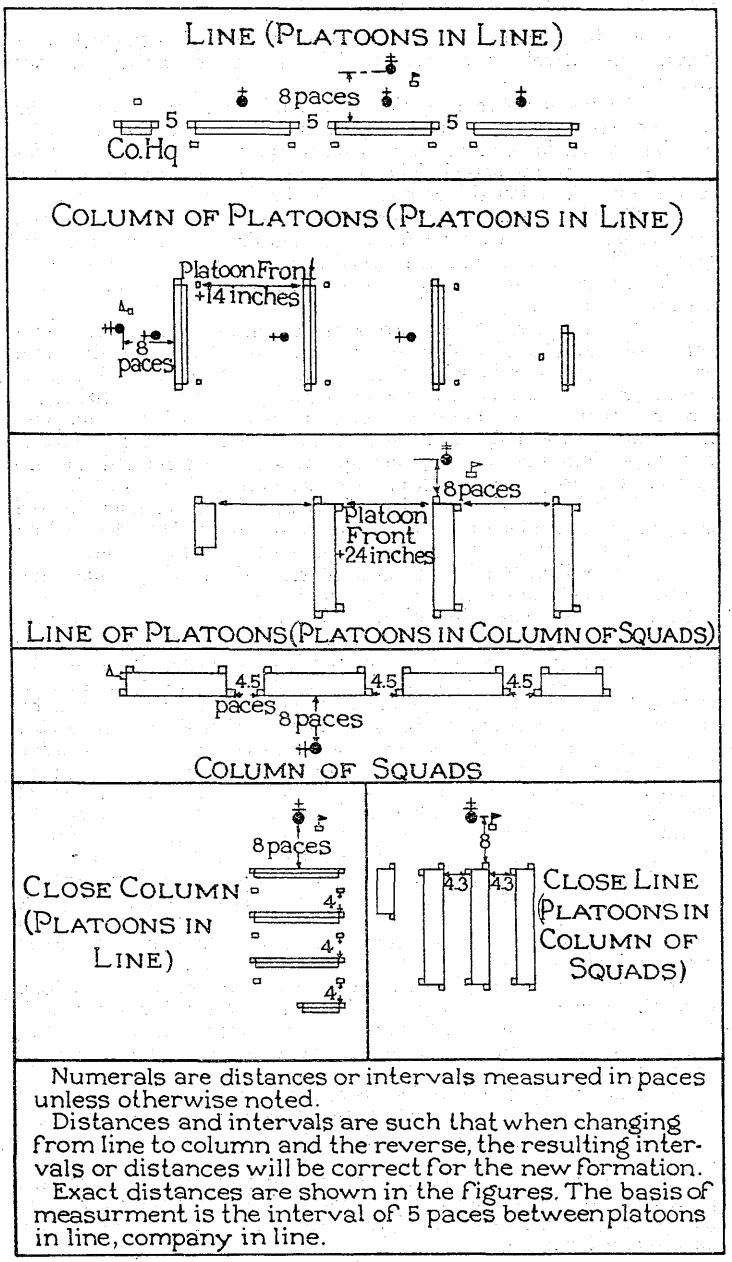
THE RIFLE COMPANY

191. Organization.—*a.* The rifle company at war strength comprises three platoons of six squads each and company headquarters. This organization will be maintained until the number of squads in the company falls below nine. A company of fewer than nine and more than five squads will be organized into two platoons.

b. The administration of the company is based upon platoon and squad organization.

192. Formations.—*a.* The formations of the company are: Line, column of platoons, close column of platoons, line of platoons, close line of platoons, and column of squads. Of these formations, the first two are assembly, ceremonial, and drill formations. In close-order drill, marching in line is exceptional; column of platoons is habitually employed for drilling troops in marching in line; close line is a suitable formation for street parades.

b. The company assembles in formation, in line or close column of platoons, as directed. (See Figure 22.)



Numerals are distances or intervals measured in paces unless otherwise noted.

Distances and intervals are such that when changing from line to column and the reverse, the resulting intervals or distances will be correct for the new formation.

Exact distances are shown in the figures. The basis of measurment is the interval of 5 paces between platoons in line, company in line.

FIG. 22.—Formations of the rifle company.

c. At the formation of the company in line, platoons are numbered consecutively from right to left. These designations do not change.

d. For convenience in giving commands and for reference, the designations *right, center,* and *left,* when in line, and *leading, center* and *rear,* when in column, are applied to the platoons. These designations apply to the actual *right, left, center, leading,* or *rear* platoon in whatever direction the company may be facing.

e. The three senior duty sergeants are assistants to the platoon leaders, one with each platoon, and are designated as platoon sergeants. The next in rank are assigned as guides, two to each platoon.

f. The first sergeant, supply sergeant, and mess sergeant are not assigned as guides.

g. The company headquarters is formed by the senior noncommissioned officer or private present. For close-order drill and ceremonies, unless otherwise directed, the members of the company headquarters are attached to platoons with a view to equalizing the strength thereof. Within the platoons members of the company headquarters are assigned to squads or placed in the file closers. For inspections the company headquarters may be formed and inspected separately as a fourth platoon as shown in Figures 22 and 23.

h. A company of fewer than six squads is commanded by the company commander as a single platoon, but retains the designation of company. Lieutenants are posted in the line of file closers.

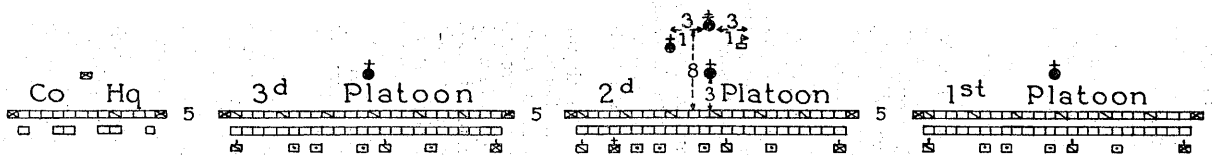
The senior lieutenant takes post in rear of the right squad and the next senior lieutenant in rear of the left squad.

193. General rules for close order drill.—*a.* Platoon leaders repeat such preparatory commands as are to be immediately executed by their platoons, such as ***Forward*** and ***Squads right,*** and the men execute the movement at the command of execution, such as ***MARCH*** and ***HALT,*** if applying to their platoons, when given by the company commander. In movements executed in route step and at ease the platoon leaders repeat the command of execution if necessary. Platoon leaders do not repeat the company commander's commands in having the company stand at ease, or at rest, having it fall out, stack arms, take arms, or in executing the manual of arms, nor those commands which are not essential to the execution of a movement by their platoons. Thus, at the company commander's command: ***Column of squads, leading platoon squads right,*** the platoon leader of the leading platoon repeats only the command ***Squads right.*** In giving commands or cautions, platoon leaders may prefix the numbers of the platoons, as: ***First platoon, halt;*** or ***Second platoon, squads right.***

b. At the command ***Guide center (right*** or ***left)*** platoon leaders command: ***Guide right*** or ***Guide left,*** according to the positions of their platoons. ***Guide center*** designates the right guide of the center platoon, or the left guide of the right platoon if there are only two platoons.

c. When platoons are to be dressed, platoon leaders place themselves on that flank toward which the dress is to be made 2 paces from the guide in prolongation of the line and facing the point of rest.

d. Each platoon leader dresses his platoon according to the principles prescribed in paragraph 185*c.* When the company commander so directs, dressing of the rear rank and file closers may be dispensed with.



Co Hq. The senior NCO present acts as Platoon Leader, the next senior as Right Guide and the next senior to him as Left Guide. The other members of the Co Hq are formed according to height from right to left.

LEGEND

- Captain
- Lieutenant
- First Sergeant
- Platoon Sergeant
- Sergeants (Platoon Guides and Section Leaders)
- Corporals (Section Guides)
- Position of Guidon
- Corporals (Squad Leaders)
- Runners
- Privates

All distances and intervals are in paces

FIG. 23.—The rifle company in line. (Platoons in line.)

e. In executing any movement or facing, in aligning units or in moving from one post to another, officers and noncommissioned officers maintain a military bearing and precision of movement.

f. If the company is in line the following rules apply to the dressing of guides away from the point of rest:

(1) If the company is at the halt, at the command ***DRESS,*** given by the platoon leader, unless otherwise prescribed as in paragraph 197, the guide away from the point of rest comes to the right shoulder.

(2) Where it is prescribed that platoons dress after movements, the guide away from the point of rest remains at the right shoulder when the platoon is halted.

(3) The guide dresses promptly on his platoon leader and the platoon beyond, thus establishing the line. During the dress he moves, if necessary, to the right and left only. The platoon leader dresses the platoon on the line thus established. The guide takes the position of order arms at the command ***FRONT.***

g. The company executes the *halt, rests, facings, steps* and *marchings, manual of arms, stacks* and *takes arms,* as explained in Section I, Chapter 7 and in Chapters 3 and 4, in proper cases, substituting in the commands ***Company*** for ***Squads.***

h. The company executes *squads right (left), squads right (left) about* and *obliques* and resumes the *direct march,* as explained in Section II.

i. The company in column of squads, twos, or files changes direction as explained for the platoon. The company in column of squads forms column of twos or files and reforms column of twos or squads, as explained for the platoon, each platoon executing the movement successively.

j. When the formation admits of the simultaneous execution by platoons of movements prescribed in Section II, the company commander may cause such movement to be executed by prefixing, when necessary, ***platoons*** to the commands prescribed therein; such as, 1. ***Platoons, right front into line,*** 2. ***MARCH.*** To complete such simultaneous movements, the commands ***HALT*** or ***MARCH,*** if prescribed, are given by the company commander. The command ***FRONT,*** when prescribed, is given by the platoon leaders.

k. In successive movements into line, column of platoons, or close column of platoons, each platoon leader, where applicable, halts when opposite or at the point where the right (left) of his platoon is to rest and gives the necessary commands from this post for changing from column to line so that the right (left) of his platoon will rest at the proper point.

l. In successive movements into line, each platoon leader, where applicable, marches beside the guide toward the point of rest after his platoon forms line or begins the change of direction.

m. Whenever commands are given involving movements of platoons in which one platoon stands fast or continues the march, the platoon leader commands: ***Stand fast*** or cautions: ***Continue the march,*** as the case may be.

n. The guidon is carried according to the principles authorized and prescribed in Chapter 6 (p. 36). In formation, the position of the guidon conforms to the indicated positions in Figures 22 and 23.

194. To form the company.—*a.* The first sergeant takes position 6 paces in front of the point where the center of the company is to be, faces it and commands: ***FALL IN.***

b. When the company is to be formed in line, the center guide places himself facing to the front so that the center of the company

will be opposite to and 6 paces from the first sergeant. The other guides place themselves at prescribed intervals from the center guide. When the company is to be formed in close column of platoons, the right guide of the leading platoon places himself so that the center of his platoon will be opposite to and 6 paces from the first sergeant, and the right guides of the rear platoons place themselves so as to cover the right guide of the leading platoon at prescribed distances. Each platoon sergeant takes post 3 paces in front of the point where the center of his platoon will be. The platoons form in their proper places, under supervision of the platoon sergeants and guides.

c. The platoon sergeants then command: ***REPORT.*** Remaining in position at the order, the squad leaders, in succession from the right, in each platoon, salute, and report: "All present," or "Private (s) ..... absent." The platoon sergeants then command: 1. ***Inspection,*** 2. ***ARMS,*** 3. ***Order,*** 4. ***ARMS,*** face about, and at the command ***Report,*** given by the first sergeant, the platoon sergeants successively, beginning with the first platoon, salute, and report: "All present or accounted for," or "..... men absent."

d. All platoons and the headquarters detachment having reported, the first sergeant commands: ***POSTS.*** The platoon sergeants take their posts. The first sergeant then faces about, salutes, and reports: "Sir, all present or accounted for," or "Sir, ... men absent," and without command takes his post.

e. If the platoons cannot be formed by squads, the platoon sergeants command: 1. ***Inspection,*** 2. ***ARMS,*** 3. ***Right shoulder,*** 4. ***ARMS,*** and call the roll. Each man, as his name is called, answers *Here* and executes ***Order arms*** if armed with the rifle. The platoon sergeant then effects the division into squads and reports the platoon as described above.

f. The company commander places himself 12 paces in front of the center of and facing the company or the leading platoon, in time to receive the report of the first sergeant.

g. The platoon leaders take their posts when the first sergeant has reported.

h. The noncommissioned officer or private in charge of the company headquarters detachment forms the detachment and reports as prescribed for the platoon sergeants.

i. The company, not under arms, is formed in like manner, omitting reference to arms.

j. In forming the company all who are required to salute and make a report maintain the position of salute until it is returned.

195. To dismiss the company.—*a.* The company being in line or close column at a halt, the company commander directs the first sergeant: ***Dismiss the company.*** The officers fall out; the first sergeant moves to a point 6 paces in front of the center of the company or the leading platoon, salutes, faces toward the company and commands: 1. ***Inspection,*** 2. ***ARMS,*** 3. ***Port,*** 4. ***ARMS,*** 5. ***DISMISSED.***

b. Dismissal may also take place by direction to the platoon leaders; by the company commander commanding: ***Dismiss your platoons.*** Each platoon is then dismissed as described for the company, the platoon sergeant performing the duties prescribed for the first sergeant. The headquarters detachment is dismissed by its leader.

196. To rectify the alignment.—The company being in line at a halt, to align the company, the command is: 1. ***Center (right or left),*** 2. ***DRESS.*** The platoon leader of the base platoon dresses his platoon immediately.

The other platoon leaders dress their platoons successively toward the center (right or left) guide of the company, each as soon as the platoon leader of or next toward the base platoon commands: ***FRONT.***

197. To give the company a new alignment.—1. ***Guides center (right*** or ***left) platoon on the line,*** 2. ***Guides on the line,*** 3. ***Center (right*** or ***left),*** 4. ***DRESS,*** 5. ***Guides,*** 6. ***POSTS.***

a. At the first command, the designated guides come to the ***trail,*** place themselves on the new line, face toward the center (right or left), and come to the ***order arms.*** The company commander establishes them in the direction he wishes to give the company.

b. At the command ***Guides on the line,*** the guides of the other platoons take posts in like manner, facing the center (right or left) so as to prolong the line.

c. At the command ***DRESS,*** each platoon leader dresses his platoon to the flank toward which the guides of his platoon face. The right (left) front-rank man places his breast against the left (right) arm of the right (left) guide. The guides remain at ***order arms.***

d. At the command ***POSTS,*** given when all of the platoons have completed the dress, the guides take their posts.

198. To open and close ranks.—*a.* The company being in line or column of platoons, the command is: 1. ***Open ranks,*** 2. ***MARCH.***

(1) When the company is in line, the platoon leader of the right platoon repeats the preparatory command of the company commander; other platoon leaders command: ***Stand fast.***

At the command ***MARCH,*** the right platoon opens ranks as prescribed for the platoon.

The other platoon leaders successively give the necessary commands for opening ranks, each as soon as the leader of or next toward the base platoon commands: ***FRONT.***

In each platoon the guide away from the point of rest comes to the right shoulder and returns to the order according to the principles of aligning the company.

(2) When the company is in column of platoons, the leading platoon executes the movement as described above for the right platoon. As soon as leaders of the platoons in rear of the leading platoon have placed their right guides so as to cover at the proper distance they give the necessary commands for opening ranks. Platoon guides remain at the order.

b. Ranks are closed as for the platoon.

c. When the company is formed as a single platoon, at the command ***MARCH,*** the lieutenants, who are posted in the line of file closers, pass around their respective flanks of the company and take position three paces in front of the front rank. The senior lieutenant takes position in front of number one of the second squad, the next senior lieutenant in front of number one of the last squad, and other lieutenants, if any, at equal intervals between the two.

199. To rectify the column.—The company being in column of platoons or in close column, at a halt, if the guides do not cover or have not their proper distances, and it is desired to correct them, the company commander commands: 1. ***Right (left),*** 2. ***DRESS.***

Leaders of the platoons in rear of the leading platoon place their right guides so as to cover at the proper distance; each platoon leader aligns his platoon to the right and commands: ***FRONT.***

200. On right (left) into line.—The company being in column of squads or platoons, to form line on the flank, the command is: 1. ***On right (left) into line,*** 2. ***MARCH,*** 3. ***Company,*** 4. ***HALT.***

a. The company being in column of squads at the command ***On right into line,*** the leader of the leading platoon commands: ***Squads right.*** If at a halt, each platoon leader in rear commands: ***Forward.*** At the command ***MARCH*** the leading platoon marches in line to the right; the platoons in rear continue to march to the front until opposite their places to the left of the preceding platoon, when they are marched in line to the right and formed successively on the left.

The command ***HALT*** is given when the leading platoon has advanced the desired distance in the new direction; it halts and is dressed to the right by its leader. The other platoons complete the movement, each being halted one pace in rear of the line established by the leading platoon, and then dressed to the right.

b. The company being in column of platoons, at the command ***On right into line,*** the leader of the leading platoon commands: ***Right turn.*** If at a halt, each platoon leader in rear commands: ***Forward.*** Each of the platoon leaders in rear of the leading platoon gives the command: 1. ***Right turn,*** 2. ***MARCH,*** when his platoon arrives opposite the right of its place in line. The preparatory command is given in time to add the command ***MARCH*** at the moment of arrival in rear of its place in line.

The command ***HALT,*** is given and the movement completed as explained above.

If the movement is executed in double time the leading platoon marches in double time until halted.

201. Front into line.—The company being in column of squads or platoons, to form line to the front, the command is: 1. ***Right (left) front into line,*** 2. ***MARCH.***

a. The company being in column of squads, at the command ***Right front into line,*** all the platoon leaders command: ***Column right.*** At the command ***MARCH,*** the leading platoon executes ***Column right*** and, as the last squad completes the change of direction, is formed in line to the left, halted, and dressed to the left. The platoons in rear execute ***Column right*** at the command ***MARCH*** and are similarly formed in line when opposite their respective places. They are halted when one pace in rear of the line established by the leading platoon and dressed to the left.

b. The company being in column of platoons, if marching, the leading platoon halts at the command ***MARCH.*** The platoon leader dresses his platoon to the left.

If at a halt, at the command ***Right front into line,*** the leader of the leading platoon commands: ***Stand fast*** and the leader of each platoon in rear commands: ***Squads right.*** At the command ***MARCH,*** the former dresses his platoon to the left and each of the latter conducts his platoon to its place in line as described above.

202. To form column of platoons successively to the right or left.—The company being in column of squads, to form column of platoons successively to the right or left, the command is: 1. ***Column of platoons,*** 2. ***Leading platoon, squads right (left),*** 3. ***MARCH.***

At the command ***MARCH,*** the leading platoon executes squads right and moves forward. The other platoons move forward in column of squads and successively march in line to the right on the same ground as the leading platoon and in such manner that the guide of each platoon covers the guide of the preceding platoon.

203. To form column of squads successively to the right or left.—The company being in column of platoons, to form column of squads successively to the right or left, the command is: 1. ***Column of squads,*** 2. ***Leading platoon, squads right (left),*** 3. ***MARCH.***

At the command ***MARCH,*** the leading platoon executes squads right and moves forward. The other platoons move forward in column of platoons and successively march in column of squads to the right on the same ground as the leading platoon.

204. To change direction.—*a.* The company being in column of platoons or close column, to change direction, the command is: 1. ***Column right (left),*** 2. ***MARCH.***

At the command ***Column right,*** the leader of the leading platoon commands: ***Right turn.*** At the command ***MARCH*** the leading platoon turns to the right on a moving pivot, the platoon leader adding: 1. ***Forward,*** 2. ***MARCH,*** upon completion of the turn.

The other platoons march squarely up to the turning point, and each changes direction by the same commands and means as the first and in such manner that the right guide covers the right guide of the preceding platoon.

The guide changes to *right,* if not already there, as soon as the change in direction is begun by each platoon, and is so announced by each platoon leader.

If deemed desirable or necessary, the guide is announced *right* by the company commander prior to the execution of the movement.

b. The company being in line of platoons or close line, to change direction, the command is: 1. ***Company right (left),*** 2. ***MARCH,*** 3. ***Company,*** 4. ***HALT.*** The right platoon changes direction to the right; the other platoons are marched by the shortest line to their places abreast of the first.

The command ***HALT*** is given when the right platoon has advanced the desired distance in the new direction; that platoon halts; the others halt successively upon arriving on the line.

c. Being in column of squads, the company changes direction by the same commands and in the same manner as prescribed for the platoon.

205. Mass formations.—*a.* The company being in line of platoons, to form in mass, the commands is: 1. ***Close on right (left) platoon,*** 2. ***MARCH,*** 3. ***Company,*** 4. ***HALT.***

At the command ***MARCH,*** the right platoon moves straight to the front or in the direction indicated by the company commander; it halts at the command ***HALT.***

At the command ***Close on right platoon,*** the other platoon leaders command: ***Column half right.*** At the command ***MARCH,*** they conduct their platoons toward the right platoon in column and halt successively in close line. This movement should not be ordered unless the other platoons have sufficient distance to complete the second change of direction before being halted.

b. The company being in line or in column of platoons, to form in mass, the command is: 1. ***Close on right (left) (leading) platoon,*** 2. ***MARCH.***

The indicated platoon halts at the command ***MARCH,*** or stands fast. The other platoons execute ***Squads right column right*** if in line, or ***Forward*** if in column of platoons, and are marched and halted successively in close column in its rear.

In close column, formed from line on the right platoon, the left guides cover. If the formation is made on the left platoon, the right guides cover. From column of platoons, the guide remains the same as before the formation.

c. The company being in column of squads, to form in mass, or at a designated interval, the command is: 1. ***Close line of platoons,*** 2. ***Right (left),*** 3. ***MARCH,*** 4. ***Company,*** 5. ***HALT,*** or 1. ***Line of Platoons (so many paces),*** 2. ***Right (left),*** 3. ***MARCH,*** 4. ***Company,*** 5. ***HALT.***

At the command ***MARCH,*** the leading platoon moves straight to the front or in the direction indicated by the company commander. It halts at the command ***HALT.*** At the command ***Right,*** platoon leaders in rear command: ***Column half right.*** At the command ***MARCH,*** they march their platoons on the indicated flank in column and halt them successively at the prescribed interval, abreast of the leading platoon. In the second case, if no interval be designated, the platoons form at intervals of platoon frontage plus 24 inches.

206. To extend the mass.—*a.* The company being in close column, to extend the mass, the commands are:

(1) 1. ***Extend on rear platoon,*** 2. ***MARCH.***

At the command ***MARCH,*** the leading platoon moves straight to the front, and the platoons in rear halt or stand fast. They are successively moved forward in time to follow at full distance. The extension is made on the rear platoon only.

(2) 1. ***Right (left) front into line,*** 2. ***MARCH.*** Executed as from column of platoons. (See paragraph 201*b*.)

(3) 1. ***Column of squads, leading platoon squads right (left),*** 2. ***MARCH,*** or 1. ***Column of squads, leading platoon, right (left) by squads,*** 2. ***MARCH.***

In the first case at the command ***MARCH,*** the leading platoon executes ***Squads right*** and moves forward. Each of the platoons in rear halts or stands fast and moves forward in time to execute squads right on the same ground as the leading platoon.

In the second case at the command ***MARCH,*** the leading platoon executes ***Right by squads.*** Each of the platoons in rear halts or stands fast and executes the movement at the proper time to follow the platoon ahead of it.

(4) When the company is in close column the mass is not extended in double time.

b. The company being in close line, to extend the mass, the commands are:

(1) 1. ***Extend on right (left) platoon,*** 2. ***MARCH,*** 3. ***Company,*** 4. ***HALT.***

At the command ***MARCH,*** the right platoon moves straight to the front or in the direction indicated by the company commander. It halts at the command ***HALT.***

At the command ***Extend on right platoon,*** the other platoon leaders command: ***Column half left,*** and at the command ***MARCH,*** march their platoons away from the right platoon in column, halting them in their proper order in line of platoons abreast of the right platoon.

(2) 1. ***Column of squads, right (left) platoon, forward,*** 2. ***MARCH.***

At the command ***MARCH,*** the right platoon moves forward; the other platoons halt or stand fast and successively take up the march and follow in column.

c. For special purposes, close column or close line may be formed or extended at other than normal distance or interval by designating the distance or interval (so many paces) after the preparatory command for closing or extending.

207. Route step and at ease.—The company marches at route step and at ease as prescribed for the platoon. When marching in column of platoons, the guides maintain trace and distance.

In route marches, the file closers march at the head, or in rear, of their platoons or company.

208. Assembly.—The company being wholly or partially deployed, or the platoons being separated, to assemble, the command is: 1. ***Assemble,*** 2. ***MARCH.***

The company commander places himself opposite to, or designates, the element or point on which the company is to assemble. Platoons are assembled and marched to the indicated point. As the platoons arrive the company commander indicates the formation to be taken.

SECTION IV

THE BATTALION

209. General rules.—*a. Commands and orders.*—(1) The commands or orders of the battalion commander are given either orally, by bugle, by signal, or by means of staff officers or orderlies who communicate the desired directions.

(2) In all close-order movements, except the manual of arms or where otherwise prescribed, each company executes the necessary movements at the company commander's command of execution.

(3) The battalion commander may employ, when applicable, the commands prescribed for the drill of the soldier, the squad, the platoon, and the company. Proper substitutions in designation of the units are made when necessary.

b. Movements.—(1) Each company commander moves his company from one formation to another by the most convenient means and route.

(2) Upon the completion of a movement ordered by the battalion commander, companies may be given **At ease** until another movement is begun, except at ceremonies.

(3) All movements, except the manual of arms, are executed independently by the companies of the battalion unless otherwise directed.

(4) Companies march at attention from one formation to another.

(5) After the battalion is halted, its subdivisions make no movement to correct alignment, intervals, or distances, unless directed by the battalion commander.

c. Formations.—(1) In forming the battalion, the companies are normally arranged from right to left or front to rear, as the case may be, in the following order: The headquarters company, the three rifle companies in alphabetical order, the machine-gun company.

(2) Column of squads is the only close-order formation that has any application in campaign.

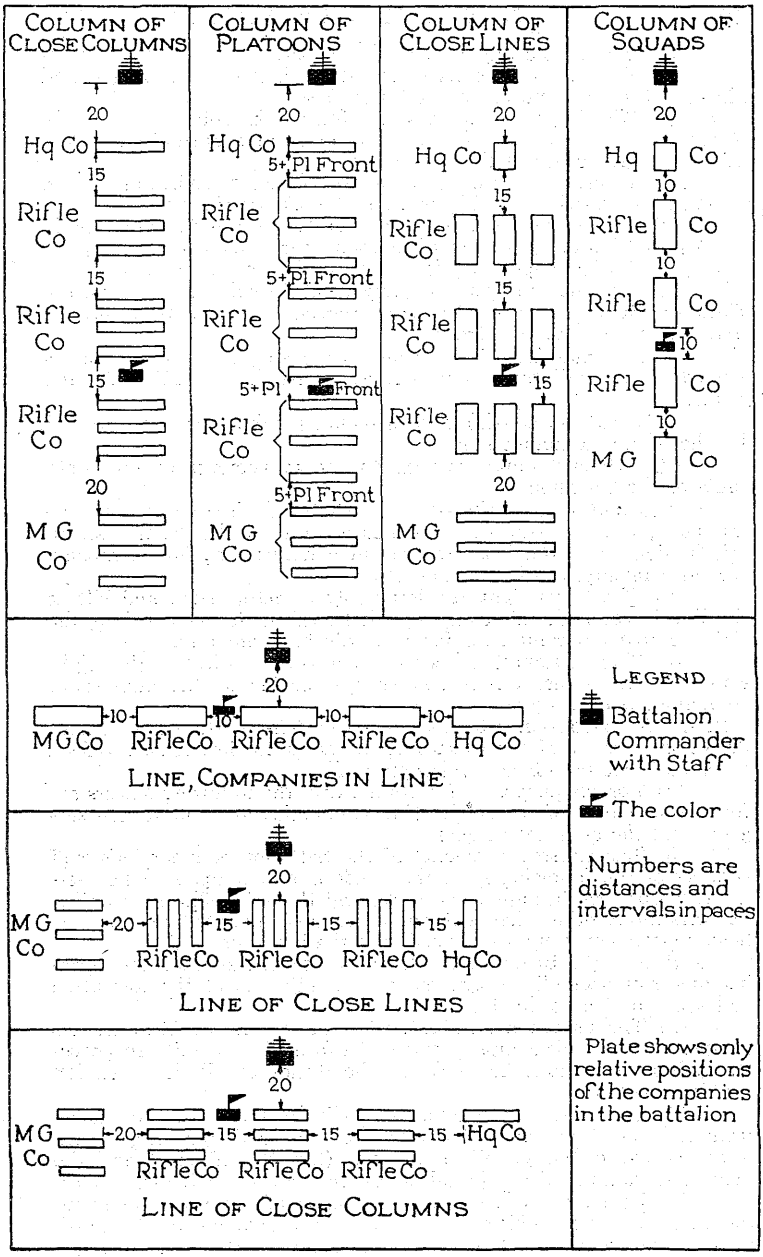


FIG. 24.—Formations of the battalion.

(3) To assume any formation the battalion commander indicates the character of the formation desired, the point of rest, and the direction the line or column is to face.

(4) The battalion is normally formed in column of squads. After the battalion has once been formed no cognizance is taken of the relative order of the companies.

(5) A peace or reduced strength battalion conforms to the formations prescribed in Figure 24 as far as practicable.

d. The machine-gun company.—(1) When the battalion is in close formation or in column of platoons, the machine-gun company will be in the corresponding formation of *line* or *column.*

(2) The machine-gun company being in column, may execute ***Column right (left)*** or ***Forward march;*** or may form ***March column*** or ***Column of squads.***

e. The Band.—The band when attached to the battalion is posted by the adjutant as prescribed in paragraphs 211*a* (5) and *b* (2).

f. Attached units.—(1) Attached units take post as directed by the battalion commander.

(2) Attached units conform to the movements of the other units of the battalion.

g. Designation of units.—(1) In whatever direction the battalion faces, the companies are designated numerically from right to left in line and from head to rear in column; *i. e.,* first company, second company, third company, etc.

(2) The terms right and left apply to actual right and left as the line faces; if the about by squads be executed when in line, the right company becomes, for instance, the left company.

(3) The designation, center company, indicates the right center or the actual center company according as the number of companies is even or odd.

210. The staff.—*a. Composition.*—(1) The battalion commander's staff consists of the executive, the adjutant, intelligence officer, plans and training officer, and supply officer.

(2) For the purposes of battalion drill the following officers are formed as a part of the staff: The communications officer, the surgeon, and the assistant surgeon.

(3) The enlisted personnel of the battalion commander's staff consists of the following from the headquarters company: The sergeant major; the headquarters clerk; and the staff officers' orderlies. In formations other than column of squads, mounted men of the headquarters company are formed with the battalion staff.

b. Posts.—(1) In war-strength organizations the plans and training officer is normally designated as the adjutant of the formation and takes post accordingly.

(2) The battalion adjutant, who commands the headquarters company, is with his company when it is formed as a unit. In peace-strength organizations he performs the duties of all the battalion staff officers.

(3) The battalion commander will supervise the formation from such positions as will best enable him to correct alignments, intervals and distances. With his staff (less the adjutant and the plans and training officer) he takes post in time to receive the report.

(4) During route marches the supply officer, the two surgeons, the communications officer, and all enlisted personnel of the headquarters company, march with their respective organizations unless otherwise directed.

211. To form the battalion.—*a. Column of squads.*—(1) The company commanders will be informed of the formation to be taken, the point of rest, and the direction in which the column is to face.

(2) The adjutant takes post 6 paces in front of the point to be occupied by the leading guide of the battalion so as to be facing the column when it is formed.

(3) *Adjutant's call* is then sounded, or the adjutant signals ***Assemble.***

(4) The companies are halted, at attention, successively from the front and in their proper order and places.

(5) The band takes post so that there will be 15 paces between the rear of the band and the head of the leading company when the leading company has halted.

(6) Attached units take their places when the rear company has halted.

(7) Each company commander, when his company is in place, salutes the adjutant, who returns the salute. The former then faces toward his company and commands: ***AT EASE.***

(8) When the last company commander has saluted and his salute has been returned, the adjutant brings the battalion to attention, faces the battalion commander, salutes and reports: "Sir, the battalion is formed." When his salute has been acknowledged he takes his post.

b. Line of close columns.—(1) The company commanders will be informed of the formation to be taken, the point of rest, and the direction in which the line is to face.

(2) The band takes post so that its left will be 15 paces to the right of and facing in the same direction as the leading platoon of the right company of the battalion when formed.

(3) The adjutant takes post so as to be 6 paces to the right of the front rank of the leading platoon of the right company when the battalion has formed, and faces in the direction in which the line is to extend.

(4) *Adjutant's call* is then sounded, or the adjutant signals ***Assemble.***

(5) When adjutant's call has been sounded, or the adjutant has signaled the assembly, the band will play until the left company of the battalion has halted on the line.

(6) The companies, arriving from the rear, each in close column, are halted on the line successively from right to left and in their proper order and places.

(7) When each company arrives within 30 paces of the line it is to occupy, the company commander commands: ***GUIDES LEADING PLATOON ON THE LINE.*** At this command the guides of the designated platoon, without changing the position of their rifles, double time, place themselves on line with the adjutant, halt, execute order arms and face toward the adjutant.

(8) The adjutant then establishes the guides in the desired direction.

(9) Each company commander halts his company 1 pace in rear of the guides which have been posted as in subparagraph (7) and commands: 1. ***Right,*** 2. ***DRESS.*** Each company is then dressed as prescribed in Sections III and X, Chapter 7.

(10) After the adjutant has established the guides he verifies the alignment of all lines from corresponding positions on the right. When this has been accomplished, and all units of the battalion have

been dressed and officers and all others have reached their posts, the adjutant from his original position commands: 1. ***Guides,*** 2. ***POST.***

(11) The adjutant then takes post facing the battalion midway between the post of the battalion commander and the center of the battalion and commands: 1. ***Present,*** 2. ***ARMS.*** He then turns about, salutes and reports to the battalion commander, "Sir, the battalion is formed."

(12) The battalion commander returns the salute and directs the adjutant: "Take your post, sir," and brings the battalion to the order.

(13) The adjutant takes his post by passing to the battalion commander's right.

c. Line.—(1) When the battalion is at peace or reduced strength, the principles of paragraph *b* apply and the formation will be as shown in Figure 24 (companies in line).

(2) The companies march in line to their respective places as prescribed above for the leading platoon except that each company commander commands: ***GUIDES ON THE LINE*** as his company arrives within 30 paces of its place in line.

212. To dismiss the battalion.—*a.* To dismiss the battalion the battalion commander commands: ***DISMISS YOUR COMPANIES.***

b. Each company commander salutes the battalion commander and marches his company off and dismisses it.

c. The battalion commander's command to dismiss the companies will be the signal for the staff, including its enlisted personnel, to fall out.

SECTION V

THE REGIMENT

213. Scope.—The regiment does not engage in prescribed drills. It may be drilled, however, in forming for ceremonies, street parades, or marches.

214. Formations.—The formations of the regiment are—

a. Line of battalions in line of close lines. (Fig. 25.)
b. Line of battalions in line of close columns. (Fig. 25.)
c. Line of battalions in column of close lines. (Fig. 26.)
d. Line of battalions in column of close columns. (Fig. 26.)
e. Column of squads.
f. Column of battalions in line of close columns. (Fig. 27.)
g. Column of battalions in line of close lines. (Fig. 27.)
h. Column of battalions in column of close columns. (Fig. 28.)
i. Column of battalions in column of close lines. (Fig. 28.)

215. Use of formations.—Column of squads is the usual column of march. Column of battalions in column of close columns and column of battalions in column of close lines are formations suitable for street parades and for marching in review. The other formations shown in Figures 25, 26, 27 and 28 are suitable for ceremonies and inspections.

216. Rules for formations.—*a.* In whatever formation the regiment may be, the battalions retain their permanent administrative designations: First, second, and third battalions. For convenience they may be designated, when in line, as right, center, or left battalion; when in column, as leading, center, or rear battalion. These designations apply to the actual positions of the battalions in line or column.

b. For all formations of the regiment, except column of squads, the headquarters company (less the commander of the communications platoon and all mounted enlisted men), the howitzer company, the service company (less the mounted officers and enlisted men

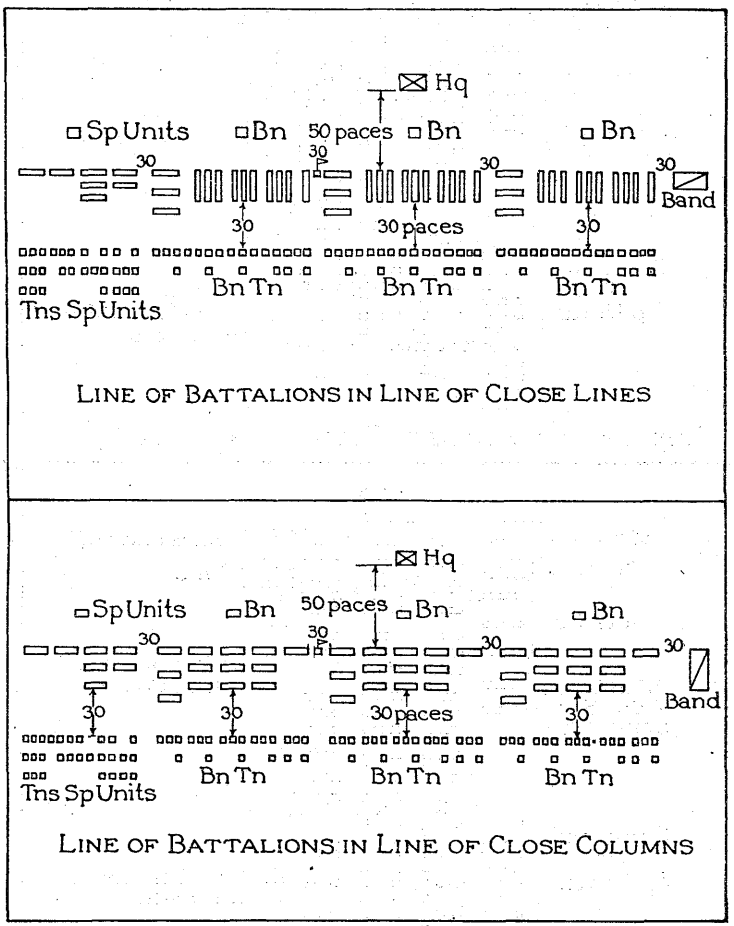


FIG. 25.—Formations of the regiment: Line of battalions in line of close lines; line of battalions in line of close columns.

of the headquarters platoon, and the transportation platoon), and the attached medical personnel (less those mounted), are combined under command of the senior officer present with the above mentioned special units, or, as directed by the regimental commander. The combined special units conform to the formations and movements of the battalions and are formed in the following order from

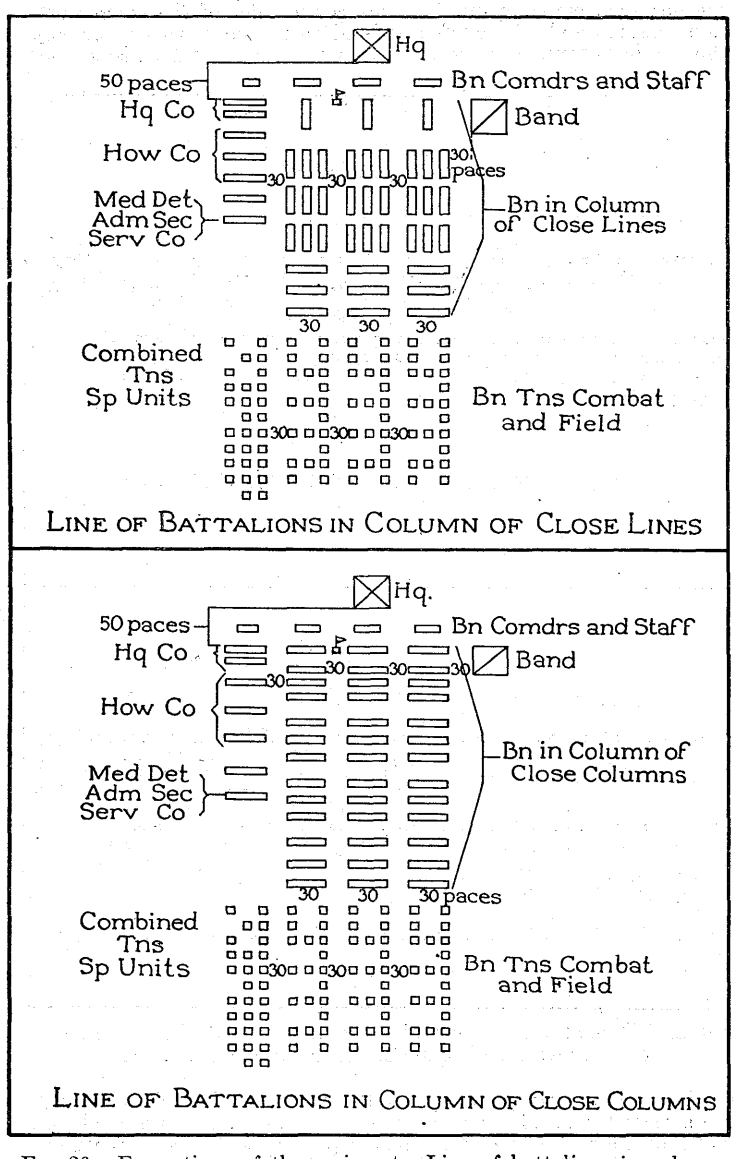


FIG. 26.—Formations of the regiment: Line of battalions in column of close lines; line of battalions in column of close columns.

right to left, when in line, and from front to rear, when in column: Headquarters company, howitzer company, attached medical personnel, service company.

c. When the regiment is in line, the battalion trains (battalion sections of the transportation platoon, service company) are formed in rear of their respective battalions; when in column, they are formed in rear of the combined special units and in the same order from front to rear as their respective battalions.

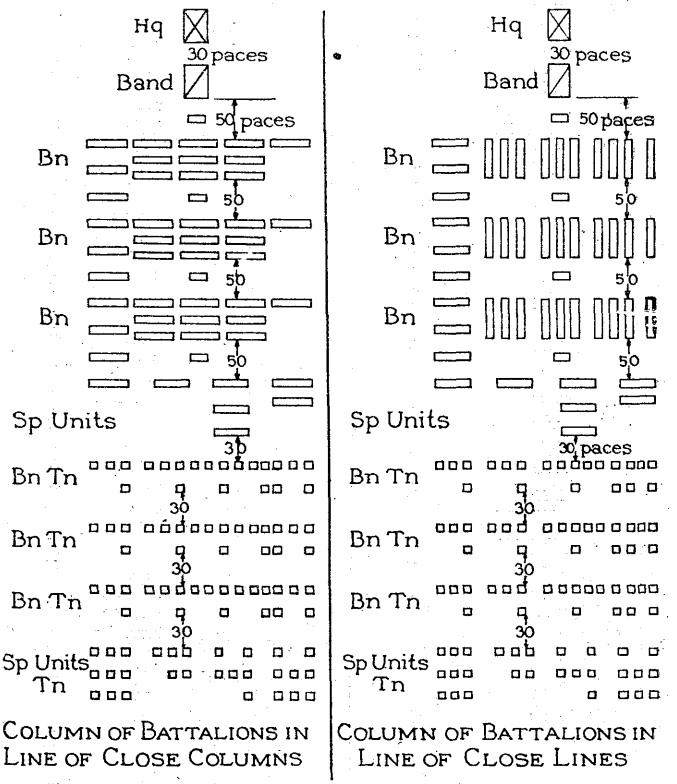


FIG. 27.—Formations of the regiment: Column of battalions in line of close columns; column of battalions in line of close lines.

d. When the regiment is in line, the combined trains of the special units are formed in rear of the combined special units; when in column, except column of squads, they are formed in rear of the battalion trains. (Fig. 29.)

e. When battalions are in line, trains are formed in line; when in column, except in column of squads, trains are formed in column. When troops are in column of squads, trains are in single column.

f. When the regiment is in column of squads, unless otherwise directed, battalion and special unit combat trains follow their re-

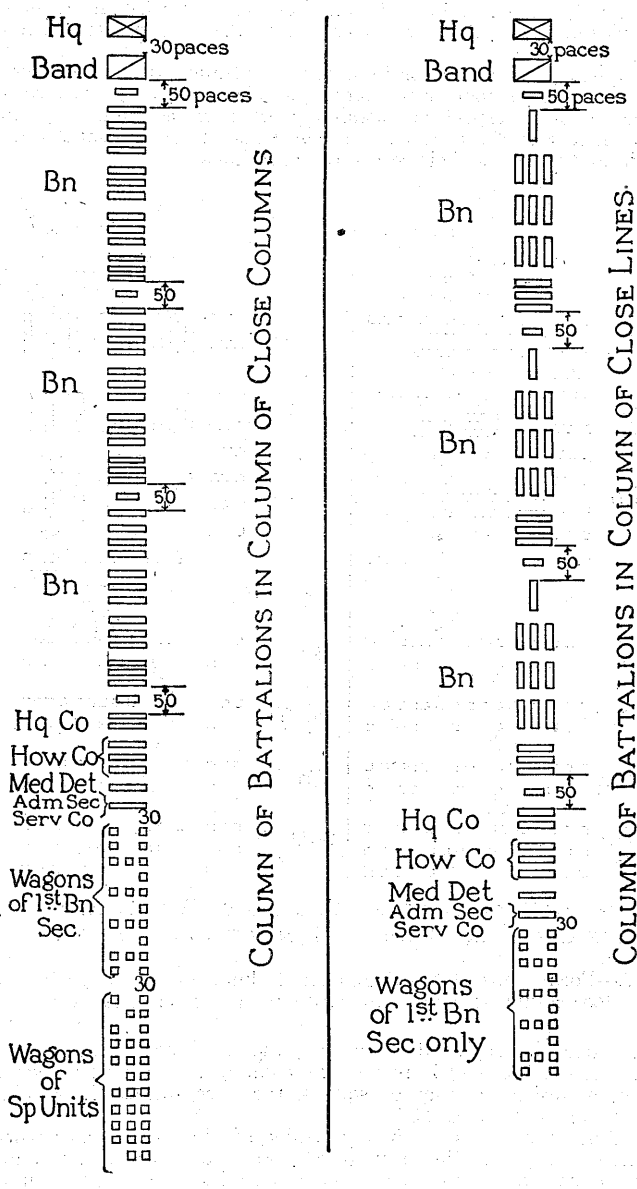


FIG. 28.—Formations of the regiment: Column of battalions in column of close columns; columns of battalions in column of close lines.

spective battalions or units, and the combat trains of units attached to battalions join the corresponding combat trains.

g. For all formations except column of squads, the regimental commander's staff is augmented by the following: The surgeon, 2 chaplains, 1 first lieutenant (commanding communications platoon, headquarters company), 1 master sergeant (headquarters company), and a mounted messenger of the communications platoon.

h. When the special units are combined, the following officers and enlisted men form the staff of the commander of the special units: 2 first lieutenants, and 1 second lieutenant (supply section, headquarters platoon, service company), 2 master sergeants and 1 supply sergeant (supply section, headquarters platoon, service company), and a private (mounted messenger, communications platoon, headquarters company).

i. When the regiment forms in column of squads, the surgeon joins the regimental commander's staff and the attached chaplains join the service company, unless otherwise directed.

j. In all formations of the regiment, except in column of squads, the colors are with the center battalion; when in column of squads the colors are with the service company, unless otherwise ordered.

k. In all formations of the regiment except in column of squads, the band takes post as shown in Figure 25. When in column of squads the band takes post as directed by the regimental commander.

217. To form the regiment.—*a.* To assume any formation, except column of squads, the regimental commander prescribes the formation, the hour of forming, the direction in which the regiment will face, the order of battalions from right to left, in line, or from front to rear, in column, and the point of rest.

b. To form the regiment in column of squads, the regimental commander prescribes the formation, the place where the regiment is to form (usually on a road), the direction in which the regiment will face, the hour of forming, the initial point (location of head of column), and the order in column of the headquarters, band, battalions, special and attached units, and field trains.

c. The regimental commander gives his orders, either orally or in writing, to form the regiment; they may be given directly to the officers concerned or may be communicated to them through staff officers or messengers.

d. Before forming the regiment, the regimental commander may cause the positions, which are to be taken by the larger elements, to be indicated by markers.

e. Battalion commanders and commanders of special and attached units move their commands by the most suitable means and routes to the place of formation and dispose them as ordered.

f. Upon arrival at their designated places in the prescribed formation, battalion and special unit commanders report the fact to the regimental commander; if the special units are combined, the commander thereof reports the arrival of the combined special units at their designated place.

g. Battalions and special units stand at ***Rest*** upon arrival at their designated places, unless otherwise directed.

218. To march.—*a.* The regiment being in any formation, the regimental commander prescribes the formation in which the regiment will march and the route to be followed, and puts the command in motion by prescribing the hour or by giving the command, 1. ***Forward,*** 2. ***MARCH,*** or by bugle or signal.

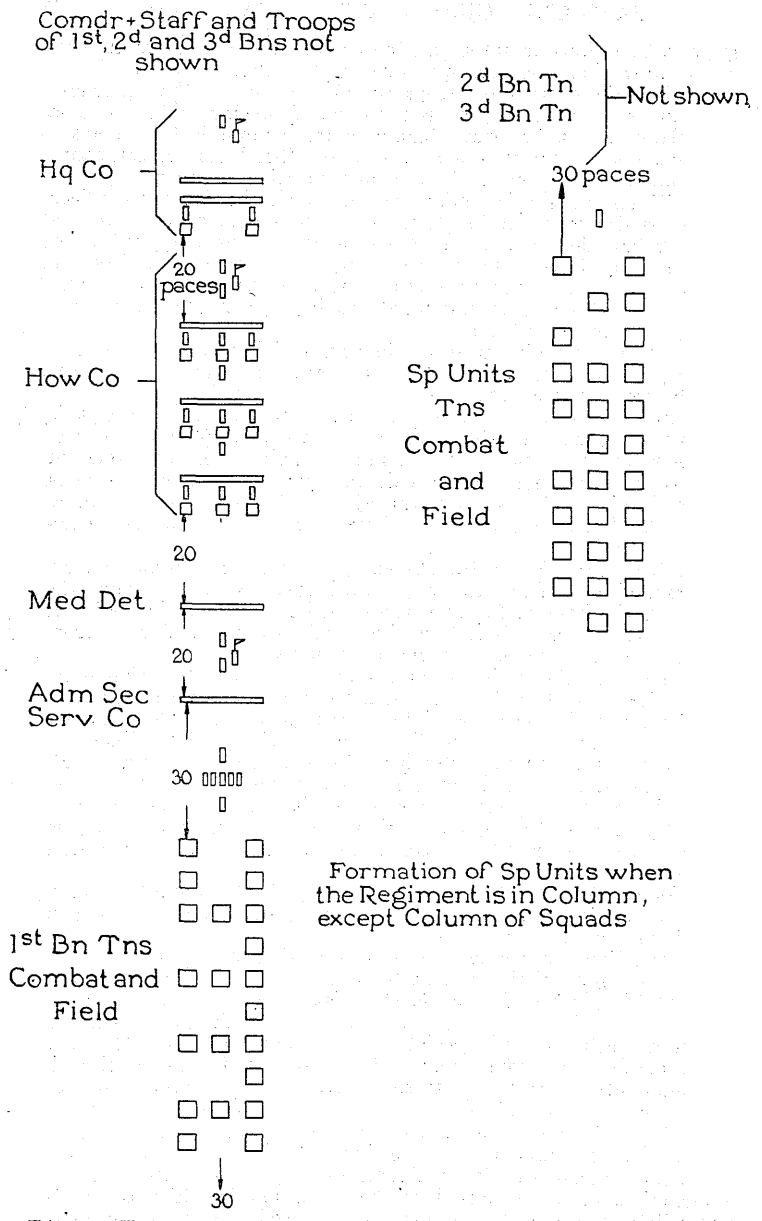


FIG. 29.—Formation of special units when regiment is in column, not column of squads.

b. If the regiment is in column of squads, the formation in which it will march may be omitted.

c. To march in route column, the regiment is not ordinarily formed and put into march as a unit. Battalion commanders and special and attached unit commanders are usually informed in orders of the destination, route, hour of starting, initial point, order of march, and, if necessary, the distances between elements, and are held responsible for having their commands take their places in the column at the prescribed times and places.

219. To halt.—To halt the regiment, the regimental commander may either prescribe the hour when the column will be halted or he may give the command or signal ***HALT.***

220. To dismiss the regiment.—To dismiss the regiment, the regimental commander orders the battalion and special and attached unit commanders to dismiss their organizations. The order may be given directly to the commanders concerned or it may be communicated to them through staff officers or messengers.

SECTION VI

THE BRIGADE

221. Drill.—The brigade does not drill.

222. Formations.—There are no prescribed formations for the brigade.

223. To form the brigade.—*a.* To assume any formation the brigade commander issues oral or written orders in which he prescribes the formation and the method of forming. When necessary, such orders are accompanied by march tables.

b. To form the brigade in route column, unit commanders are informed of the destination, the route, the hour of starting, the initial point, the order of march, and, if necessary, the distances between elements. The unit commanders will be responsible for having their commands in readiness to take their places in the column at the prescribed times and places.

c. For formations other than in route column, the brigade commander ordinarily causes the positions of the larger elements to be indicated by markers on the ground where the brigade is to form.

d. At ceremonies the brigade headquarters company is posted as the right element of the brigade in line and the leading element in column.

224. To march.—*a.* If the brigade is in route column, the brigade commander puts it in march by prescribing the hour of starting.

b. If the brigade is in any formation, other than in route column, the brigade commander indicates in orders the formation in which it will march and puts it in march by command, by signal, or by prescribing the hour of starting.

225. To halt.—*a.* To halt the brigade at any time except hourly, the brigade commander issues the necessary orders or halts the leading unit by command or signal.

b. To halt the brigade for hourly halts, the brigade commander prescribes, in his march order, when and for how long such halts will be made.

226. To dismiss the brigade.—To dismiss the brigade, the brigade commander issues the necessary orders.

SECTION VII

HEADQUARTERS COMPANIES, BATTALION, REGIMENT AND BRIGADE

227. General rules.—*a. Responsibility for training.* (1) The company commander is responsible for the general training of the company.

(2) The responsibility for the special training of each platoon and section is normally placed upon the officer under whom the platoon or section functions in time of combat.

b. How trained. (1) The company will be trained in close-order drill, mounted and dismounted.

(2) The mounted enlisted men will in addition be trained in cavalry close-order squad drill.

(3) The motorcyclists, wagoners, and chauffeurs will be trained in manuevering their vehicles to conform to the company in mounted drill.

c. Kinds of formations. The formations employed by the company are as follows:

(1) In general, all formations used by the rifle company in so far as they are applicable to a company of this size and type.

(2) The following special formations are employed:

(*a*) Dismounted assembly.
(*b*) Mounted assembly.
(*c*) Dismounted drill.
(*d*) Mounted drill.
(*e*) Route march.
(*f*) Inspections.

d. Use of formations. (1) The dismounted assembly formation is generally used for reveille, retreat, and roll call. It is the one habitually to be used on the company parade.

(2) The mounted assembly formation is used prior to forming for:

(*a*) Mounted ceremonies.
(*b*) Mounted drill.
(*c*) Route march.
(*d*) Mounted inspection.

(3) The dismounted drill formation is used for close-order dismounted drill and in preparation for dismounted ceremonies.

(4) The mounted drill formation is used for close-order mounted drill and in preparation for mounted ceremonies.

(5) The inspection formation is used for careful check of the personnel and for thorough and detailed inspection of equipment.

e. Rules for formations. (1) *General.* The company maneuvers in accordance with prescribed drill of the various infantry units.

(2) *Mounted personnel.* (*a*) *Definition.* Throughout these regulations an officer or enlisted man is considered as mounted when he has with him in formation his horse, mule, motorcycle, or any vehicle which he controls.

(*b*) *Conduct.* In all mounted formations, except at inspections, personnel equipped with horses are mounted on their horses; motorcyclists are on their motorcycles. At inspection formations all mounted personnel (except drivers of animal-drawn vehicles) dismount as soon as they have taken their positions in the formation; those with horses stand to horse; those with motor and animal-drawn vehicles stand at the left of their vehicles. All face to the front.

(c) *With large commands.* At battalion and regimental drill and at mounted ceremonies, all personnel of the battalion and regimental headquarters companies mounted on horses, with the exception of the company commanders, are normally attached to the staff of the battalion, regimental, and special unit commanders, respectively, in accordance with instructions for those units. If not required to be present with their companies the personnel of brigade headquarters companies mounted on horses may be attached to the staff of the brigade commander.

(3) *Formation of mounted personnel.* (a) *Motorcyclists, mounted.* When the company is in column of squads mounted motorcyclists form in single file. In the route march they move by bounds, regaining their proper position in the company when it halts, unless otherwise ordered.

(b) *Mounted messengers.* When the company is in column of squads mounted messengers form in column of twos. When the company is in column of twos they form in single file.

(c) *Joining company.* For mounted formations in camp the men mounted on horses or vehicles usually join the company at a designated point outside the company street.

(4) *Forming the company.* (a) *Rapidity.* Companies will have established formations for drill and will be trained in quickly taking these formations from the assembly formations. In emergencies, where time is lacking, companies will take the drill formations. In such event assembly and roll call will be omitted.

(b) *Positions.* In forming for mounted or dismounted drill or for ceremonies the platoons composed of dismounted men may, for the sake of uniformity and appearance, be formed as follows:

(i) Each with the same number of squads.

(ii) Men equipped with the rifle may be placed in one platoon. If there are too many for one platoon they may form in the front rank of another.

(c) *Size.* For formations other than assembly a platoon having less than three squads will be broken up and its personnel distributed among the other platoons; a company composed of less than six squads will be formed as one platoon.

In the regimental and brigade headquarters companies it may be found advisable, because of the few men present in company headquarters, to organize the company into two platoons. The communications platoon, intact, may then remain as the second platoon and the remainder of the men present be formed as the first platoon. The battalion headquarters company may similarly be consolidated into one platoon.

(5) Throughout these regulations, in changing from assembly formation to drill or route march formation, the second preparatory command is often expressed as: 2. ***(Describes formation desired).*** Such indication means that the company commander may give instructions for effecting any modification of the company's established formation. (See subparagraph *e.* (4). Such changes may be made necessary by the marked increase or decrease of personnel present or by orders from higher authority. In these instructions the company commander may state the following:

(a) Number of platoons.
(b) Commander of each platoon.
(c) What personnel will compose each platoon.
(d) What personnel is to report to the battalion commander.
(e) Line on which company will reform.

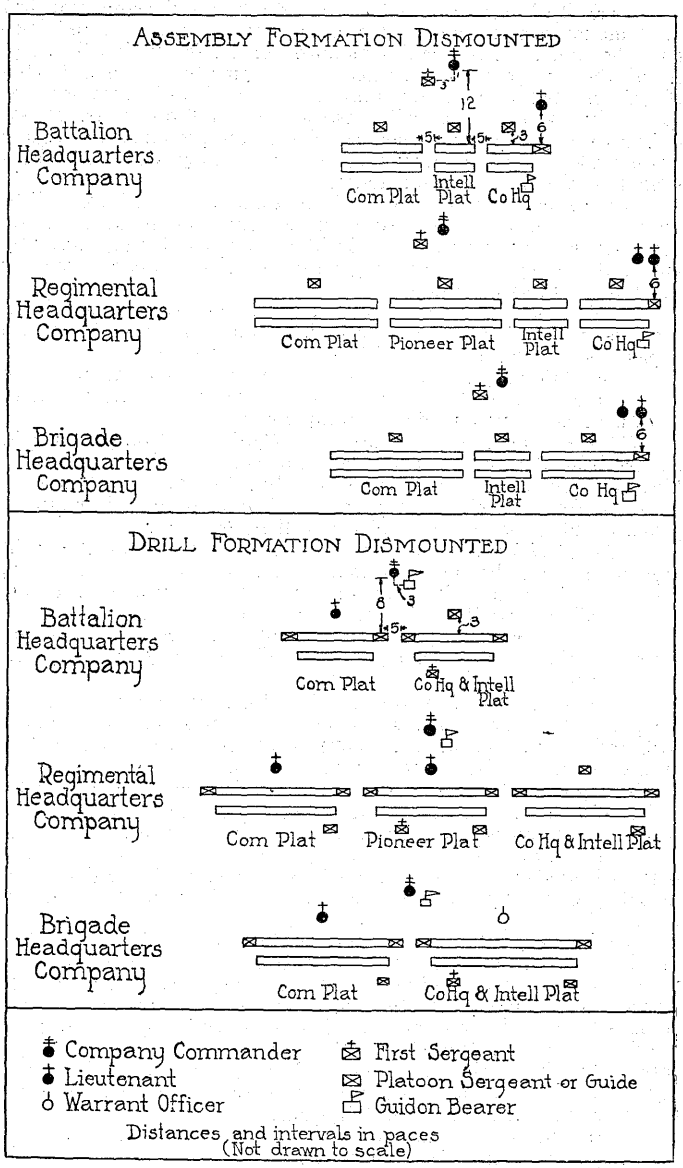


FIG. 30.—Assembly and drill formations, dismounted, of brigade, regimental and battalion headquarters companies.

228. Formations.—*a. Assembly formation.* (1) The assembly formation consists of formation in line, mounted and dismounted.

(2) At assembly formation the elements of the company are arranged from right to left as shown in Figure 30. The platoons are formed as directed by the company commander in accordance with the preceding paragraph.

The communications platoon normally forms from right to left in the following order: Message center section; radio and visual section; wire section. The integrity of sections is maintained in so far as a formation by squads will permit.

(3) The headquarters company does not drill while in assembly formation.

(4) (*a*) To form the company in dismounted assembly formation, the first sergeant takes position 6 paces in front of the point where the center of the company is to be, faces it and commands: ***FALL IN.*** The right guide places himself, facing to the front, so that the center of the company will be opposite to and 6 paces from the first sergeant. Platoons form in their proper places under supervision of the platoon sergeants, who take posts 3 paces in front of the points where the centers of their platoons will be.

(*b*) The platoon sergeants then command: ***REPORT.*** Remaining in position at the order, the squad leaders, in succession from the right, in each platoon, salute and report: "All present," or "Private (s) ..... absent." The platoon sergeants then command: 1. ***Inspection,*** 2. ***ARMS,*** 3. ***Order,*** 4. ***ARMS,*** face about, and at the command ***Report,*** given by the first sergeant, they salute and report, successively, beginning with company headquarters: "All present or accounted for," or "..... men absent." The first sergeant then faces about, salutes and reports: "Sir, all present or accounted for," or "Sir, ... men absent," and without command takes his post.

(*c*) The company commander places himself 12 paces in front of and facing the company in time to receive the report of the first sergeant.

(*d*) The lieutenants and warrant officer take their posts when the first sergeant has reported.

(*e*) The company not under arms is formed in like manner, but with omission of reference to arms.

(*f*) In forming the company all who are required to make a report maintain the first position of salute until it is returned.

(5) (*a*) To form the company in mounted assembly formation the platoons take the same position as in the dismounted assembly. The mounted men, except those commanding platoons, form on the left of the company. (See paragraph 228*d*).

(*b*) The first sergeant takes position 9 paces in front of where the center of the company will form.

(*c*) The company commander takes position 15 paces in front of the center of and facing the company, in time to receive the report of the first sergeant.

(*d*) Posts of platoon leaders, the warrant officer, and platoon sergeants are taken in accordance with the principles outlined above for the dismounted assembly and as shown in Figure 30.

b. To change to dismounted drill formation. (1) To form the company for dismounted drill or dismounted ceremonies from dismouted assembly formations the company commander directs the first sergeant to form the company for drill. The first sergeant moves to a position 6 paces in front of the center of the company,

faces it, and commands: 1. ***Form for drill,*** 2. ***(Describes formation desired),*** 3. ***MARCH.*** Officers and the warrant officer fall out. Platoon sergeants supervise the formation of their platoons. At the command ***POSTS,*** given by the first sergeant when the formation is completed, they take posts. The first sergeant then faces about, salutes and reports: "Sir, the company is formed," and takes his post.

(2) The platoon leaders take their posts when the first sergeant has reported.

c. To change to mounted drill formation. (1) To form the company for mounted drill or ceremonies from mounted assembly formation, the commands and the execution thereof are as prescribed in the preceding paragraph.

(2) Mounted men, except those commanding platoons, form on the left of the company under indicated leaders.

d. Order of elements in mounted formations. (1) In all mounted formations the following elements of the headquarters company, when present, form on the left when in line and in rear when in march column in the order given, and with an interval or distance of 5 paces between elements:

(*a*) *Battalion headquarters company.* Communication cart; mounted men not commanding platoons; motorcycles.

(*b*) *Regimental headquarters company.* Communication carts; mounted men not commanding platoons; motor transportation.

(*c*) *Brigade headquarters company.* Communication carts; mounted men not commanding platoons; motor transportation.

(2) The company commander may make such adjustments in the formation of these elements as circumstances demand.

e. To change to route march formation. (1) To form the company for route march from the mounted assembly formation the command is: 1. ***Form for route march,*** 2. ***(Describes formation desired),*** 3. ***MARCH.***

(2) *The battalion headquarters company.* (*a*) At the command ***MARCH,*** if transportation accompanies the battalion, the company headquarters personnel (less sergeant major and clerk) join the transportation assigned to the battalion headquarters company and are assigned to vehicles by the first sergeant.

(*b*) Such personnel of the company as may have been so directed by the battalion commander join the battalion staff. If the staff is at a great distance motorcycles are used to transport this personnel.

(3) *Regimental headquarters company.* (*a*) At the command ***MARCH,*** the company headquarters (less company commander, sergeant major, first sergeant, and two chauffeurs) join the transportation of the headquarters section of the service company, the personnel being assigned to vehicles by the senior noncommissioned officer present.

(*b*) Such personnel of the company as may have been so directed by the regimental commander join the regimental staff. If the staff is at a great distance motor vehicles are used to transport this personnel.

(4) *Brigade headquarters company.* (*a*) At the command ***MARCH,*** the personnel of the company headquarters, and the cook and private, miscellaneous, of the staff section join the transportation section and are assigned to vehicles by the first sergeant.

(b) Such personnel as may have been so directed by the brigade commander join the brigade staff. If the staff is at a great distance motor vehicles are used to transport this personnel.

(c) Two privates (operators) of the radio and visual section join the 1½ to 2 ton cargo truck to care for the equipment. Additional personnel is sent to this truck in accordance with orders for its employment.

(d) The warrant officer, clerk, and the stenographer of the staff section, if present, take position on the right of the company.

(e) The remaining dismounted men close to the left, forming one platoon.

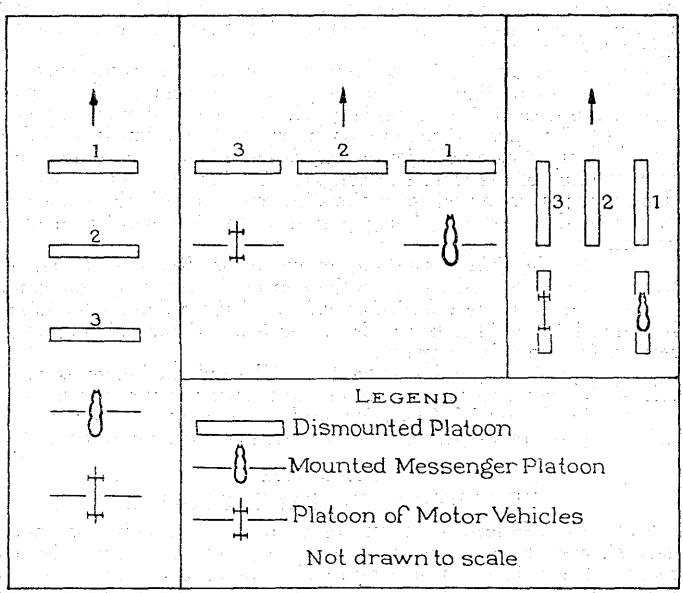


FIG. 31.—Mounted formations, headquarters companies.

(f) The communications chief and the staff sergeant of the staff section assist the communications officer in the forming of the dismounted platoon, and then take positions on the right.

(g) The 5-passenger motor cars will generally be ordered to report to brigade headquarters.

(h) The horse-drawn transportation will generally be ordered to join the combat train of the leading regiment.

(i) Platoon sections retain their designation and are formed in the same order as in the mounted assembly formation.

(j) Each section chief places himself so that he will be on the left and in the leading rank of his section when ***squads right*** is executed.

(k) In the route march the company will march as directed by the battalion, regimental, or brigade commander. Subdivisions of the company should be kept intact if possible.

f. Company mounted drill. (1) While the company will generally drill in accordance with the drill regulations of the various infantry units, it may at times be desirable for the mounted platoons to form in rear of the dismounted platoon or platoons.

(2) Such a formation is accomplished by preceding the usual preparatory command by the command ***Transportation to the rear.***

(3) At the command of execution the mounted platoons move to their positions by the shortest route and in the most expeditious manner, conforming to the formations shown in Figure 31 in so far as their organization will permit.

g. Battalion and regimental drill and mounted ceremonies. At battalion and regimental drill and mounted ceremonies the provisions of paragraph *f* above apply, except that the mounted messenger platoon will generally not be present with the company. (See paragraph 227*e*. (2) (*c*)).

h. The guidon. (1) The guidon is carried in accordance with the principles outlined in Chapter 6. If the formation is mounted the guidon is carried by a specially selected mounted enlisted man.

(2) The post of the guidon bearer in formation is as follows:

(*a*) *In assembly formation, dismounted.* The guidon bearer is in the line of file closers in company headquarters, being the right flank man; in mounted formations he remains with the detachment of mounted messengers, being posted as the left flank man of this section.

(*b*) *In drill formation, mounted or dismounted.* He is 3 paces to the right and 1 pace to the rear of the company commander.

(*c*) *In route march formation.* If the guidon is ordered to be carried the guidon bearer is at the head of the column, as prescribed for the rifle company.

(*d*) *At inspection formation.* The guidon bearer is on the left of the mounted messengers of the message center section.

(*e*) *In initial formation and subsequent movements.* The guidon bearer takes post as herein prescribed without command.

SECTION VIII

THE SERVICE COMPANY, REGIMENT

229. Introduction.—The service company as a unit does not, in general, engage in prescribed drills. Its personnel, being specialists, receive their principal instruction and training in the practical application of their respective duties as prescribed in the training publications covering their specialties. In addition to this instruction short drills must be conducted for the purpose of developing physical qualifications, discipline, equitation, and skill and accuracy in driving.

For discipline and control the company, in whole or in part, may be drilled in the close-order movements prescribed for the rifle company, platoon and squad; drills may also be conducted to prepare for ceremonies, inspections, street parades, and marches.

230. Organization.—*a. Administrative organization.* The organization of the service company is shown in Tables of Organization. It is composed of a company headquarters, a headquarters platoon. and a transportation platoon.

(1) The *company headquarters* comprises the personnel charged with the administration and interior economy of the company.

(2) The *headquarters platoon* comprises the personnel charged with regimental administration, supply, and personnel work; it is divided into a staff section and a supply section.

(*a*) The *staff section* comprises that personnel of the service company charged with regimental work.

(*b*) The *supply section* comprises that personnel charged with all factors pertaining to the supply of the regiment.

(3) The *transportation platoon* comprises that personnel required for the maintenance and operation of the regimental combat and field trains. It is divided into a platoon headquarters, a headquarters section, a howitzer company section, and three battalion sections.

(*a*) The transportation *platoon headquarters* comprises that personnel charged with the administration of the platoon and the maintenance and operation of the transportation pertaining to the service company itself.

(*b*) The *headquarters section* comprises that personnel charged with the maintenance and operation of the train transportation pertaining to regimental headquarters and the headquarters company.

(*c*) The *howitzer company section* comprises that personnel which maintains and operates the train transportation pertaining to the howitzer company.

(*d*) The *battalion sections* each comprise that personnel which maintains and operates the transportation of a battalion of the regiment.

b. Organization for drill. (1) To enable the service company to engage in close-order drills and to take part in such regimental formations as it may be required to attend, the company is divided into five sections: The administrative section, the regimental section, and the three battalion sections.

(2) For convenience in giving commands and for reference, the designations *administrative section* and *regimental section* are employed.

(*a*) The *administrative section* comprises the combined enlisted personnel of the staff section, the supply section, and company headquarters.

(*b*) The *regimental section* comprises the combined enlisted personnel of the headquarters, headquarters section, and the howitzer company section of the transportation platoon.

231. Formations and drill without transportation.—*a. General.* (1) The service company is combined with the other special units of the regiment into a temporary organization which is commanded by the senior officer present with it, or as directed by the regimental commander. The lieutenants, master sergeants, and one supply sergeant from the supply section act temporarily on the staff of the commander of the special units.

(2) Formations, except as otherwise prescribed herein, and close-order drill, both without transportation, are in general as prescribed in Sections I and II of Chapter 7, substituting section for platoon wherever necessary. The movements prescribed for platoons are executed by sections of the service company, and the duties, positions, and commands of platoon leaders are those of section leaders of that company. The only subdivision of the drill section is the squad.

(3) For company close-order drill the personnel is all dismounted. For regimental drills, ceremonies, and inspections, without transportation, the company commander, first sergeant, and officers and noncommissioned officers temporarily on the staff of the commander of the combined special units, are mounted.

(4) When the regimental special units are combined, the service company forms as the left unit in line and the rear unit in column. It conforms as far as practicable to the formations and movements of the rifle company in battalion drill.

b. Formations. The formations of the company are of two classes: Assembly formations and drill formations.

(1) The assembly formations consist of formation in line and formation in close column.

(*a*) At assembly formation in line (see Figure 32) the elements of the company are arranged from right to left as follows: Staff section, supply section, company headquarters, transportation platoon headquarters, headquarters section, howitzer company section, first battalion section, second battalion section, third battalion section. Sections are formed in two ranks—noncommissioned officers and privates armed with the pistol on the right. Mounted enlisted men form in single rank on the left of the company.

(*b*) At assembly formation in close column (see Figure 32), the company is disposed as follows from front to rear: Administrative section, regimental section, first battalion section, second battalion section, third battalion section. Elements of the administrative and regimental sections are formed in the same order from right to left as in the formation of the company in line. Mounted enlisted men are formed in single rank in rear of the last section.

(*c*) The service company does not drill while in assembly formations.

(2) *To form the company in assembly formation.* (See Figure 32.) (*a*) The first sergeant takes position 6 paces in front of the point where the center of the company is to be, faces it, and commands: ***FALL IN.*** The right guide of the staff section places himself, facing to the front, at such point that the center of the company when in line or the leading section when in column will be 6 paces from, and opposite to the first sergeant. The right flank men in the front rank of the other sections place themselves at prescribed intervals or distances from the right or leading section; section sergeants take post 3 paces in front of the points where the centers of their sections will be; the sections form in their proper places supervised by the section sergeants. The section sergeants then verify their sections and command: 1. ***Inspection,*** 2. ***ARMS,*** 3. ***Order,*** 4. ***ARMS,*** face about, and at the command ***REPORT,*** given by the first sergeant, each in turn, beginning with the right or leading section, reports, "Staff section (supply section, etc.), present or accounted for," or "..... men absent." The first sergeant then faces about and reports: "Sir, all present or accounted for," or "Sir, ... men absent," and without command takes his post.

(*b*) The company commander places himself 12 paces in front of the center of and facing the company when in line, or the leading section when in column, in time to receive the report of the first sergeant.

(*c*) The lieutenants take their posts when the first sergeant has reported.

(*d*) The company, not under arms, is formed in like manner, omitting reference to arms.

(*e*) In forming the company all who are required to make a report, salute; they maintain the first position of salute until it is returned.

(3) *To form the company for drill.* The company being in assembly formation, the company commander directs the first ser-

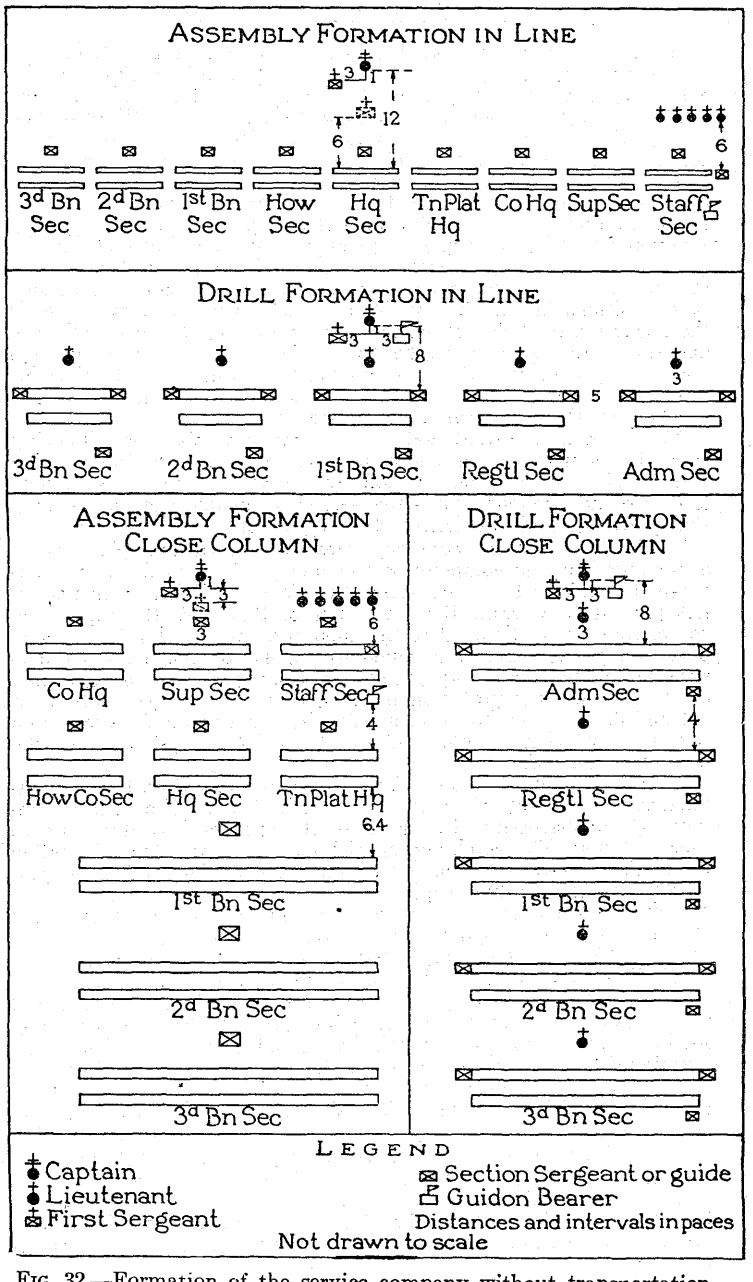


FIG. 32.—Formation of the service company without transportation.

geant to form the company for drill. (See Figure 32.) The first sergeant moves to a position 6 paces in front of the center of the company, faces it, and commands: ***FORM FOR DRILL.*** Officers fall out. The supply section and company headquarters close on the staff section in line or close column, and form the administrative section; the headquarters section and howitzer company section close on the transportation platoon headquarters in line or close column, and form the regimental section. Section sergeants of drill sections designate guides, who fall out and place themselves successively at prescribed intervals or distances from the right guide of the right or leading section. Sections form in their proper places, count off, and are divided into squads by their section sergeants; extra men take positions in the line of file closers. Upon the completion of the formation of each section, the first sergeant commands: ***POSTS,*** and the section sergeants take posts. The first sergeant then faces about and reports: "Sir, the company is formed," and takes his post. The company being formed, the company commander assigns the lieutenants to the command of sections.

232. Formations and drill with transportation.—*a. Organization.* In taking part in regimental ceremonies, inspections, drills, and marches, with transportation, the service company is divided into two independent units—the service company (less transportation platoon), and the transportation platoon.

(1) The *service company* (less transportation platoon) is commanded by the company commander. It is formed and maneuvered as explained in paragraph 231. When sufficient personnel is not present to warrant the formation of this unit, the regimental commander may direct that the men present will join the transportation platoon and be assigned to wagons, or assign them otherwise as circumstances may require. The company commander then commands the transportation platoon, riding at its head. Mounted enlisted men, whose duties do not require them to be elsewhere, join the transportation platoon and march at its head, in rear of the platoon commander.

(2) (*a*) The *transportation platoon* is charged with the maintenance and operation of the regimental trains. For drills, ceremonies, and inspections the trains of the regiment are divided into four sections: The combined special unit train and three battalion trains. The battalion trains are commanded by the assistant wagonmaster of the battalion sections of the transportation platoon; the combined special unit train is commanded by the assistant wagonmaster from the transportation platoon headquarters.

(*b*) The personnel of the transportation platoon who are not individually mounted ride on the vehicles of the train.

(*c*) The trains, as to service, are divided into combat and field trains; as to organizations, they are divided into company sections which comprise the vehicles of the combat and field train pertaining to the respective companies.

b. Train formations. (see Figure 33.) (1) At regimental formations the combined special unit and battalion trains take position as shown in Figure 25.

(2) For marches, unless otherwise directed, battalions and combined special unit combat trains follow their respective battalions or units, and the combat trains of the units attached to the battalions join the corresponding battalion combat train; field trains are consolidated and march at the tail of the regiment unless otherwise directed.

(3) The formations of the combined special unit and battalion trains for regimental drills, ceremonies, and inspections are line and column; for marches, single column (column of vehicles).

(4) In formations in line, each company section of the various trains forms in rear of and covers the same frontage as the company to which it pertains. In formation in column, other than column of squads, the vehicles of the company sections are formed as shown in Figure 33, the frontage of the train column being the same as the frontage of the troop column.

(5) The formation of the vehicles in the various company sections is the same in line and in column. Vehicles are disposed as far as practicable in column of threes; the field train vehicles in rear of those of the combat train. The interval between vehicles is variable, depending on the frontage of the companies; the distance between vehicles is 10 yards. Distance is measured from the tail gate of one vehicle to the heads of the lead team of the vehicle next in rear.

(6) In all formations of the company, section carts. if any, form on the left.

c. Gaits. The normal gait of draft animals of the company will be the walk, faster gaits being exceptional and limited to emergencies.

d. Alignments. (1) When marching in line, company sections guide on the column of vehicles which marches immediately in rear of the train commander.

(2) In column of sections the guide is right.

(3) In successive formations the guide is toward the base; rear elements should halt short of the line and dress toward the base with precision, the line being established by the position of the drivers.

(4) *Being in line at a halt.* If the company section on the side toward which the alignment is to be made is not in proper position, the train commander establishes it in the position desired, and commands: 1. ***Right (left),*** 2. ***DRESS.*** At the command ***DRESS*** the other vehicles move forward or backward, preserving their intervals, drivers turn their heads and eyes to the right and dress on the drivers of the vehicles established as a basis of alignment. The train commander superintends the alignment. Drivers individually turn their heads and eyes to the front when their alignment is completed.

e. Special unit and battalion train movements. (1) *Being in any formation to march to the front.* The train commander commands or signals: 1. ***Forward,*** 2. ***MARCH.*** The movement is executed simultaneously by all vehicles.

(2) *To halt the train.* The train commander commands or signals: 1. ***Train,*** 2. ***HALT.*** All vehicles halt simultaneously.

(3) *To change direction.* Being in section or single column, the train commander commands or signals: 1. ***Column right (left),*** 2. ***MARCH.*** The leading element changes direction to the right 90° followed by the other elements which turn on the same ground. As the pivot vehicle begins the turn, outside vehicles take up a fast walk, taking the gait of the inside vehicle on arriving abreast of it.

(4) *Being in line to move in column to the flank.* The train commander commands or signals: 1. ***Sections column right (left),*** 2. ***MARCH.*** The sections successively change direction to the right and follow in rear of the leading section.

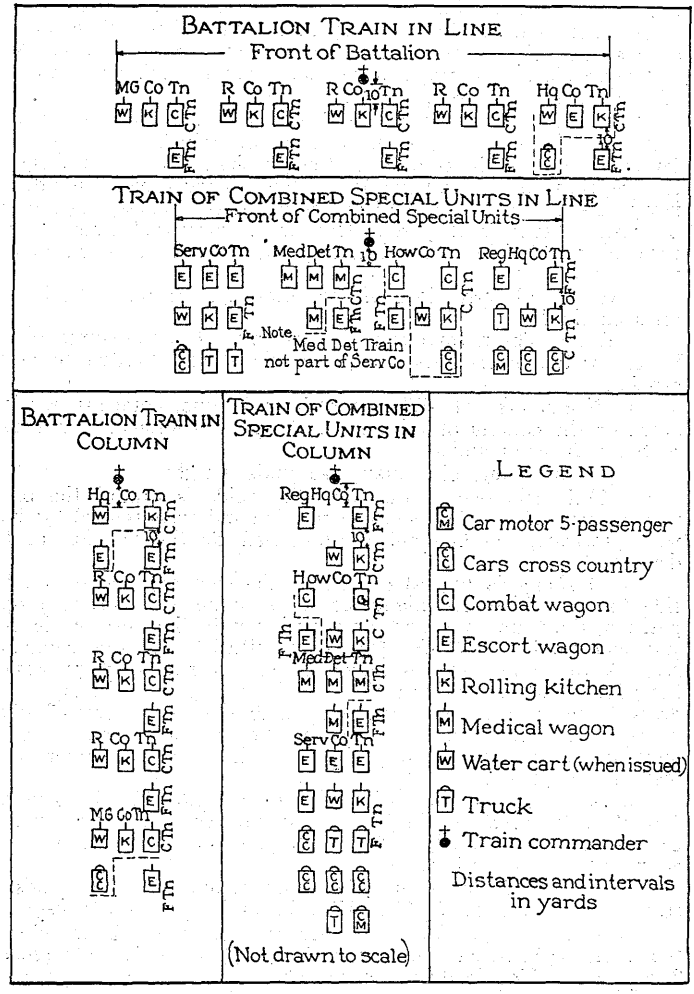


FIG. 33.—Train formations.

(5) *Being in line to form column of (company) sections.* The train commander commands or signals: 1. ***Right (left) by sections,*** 2. ***MARCH.*** The right (company) section moves forward, when disengaged the other sections in turn move forward, incline to the right, and follow the preceding section at a distance of 10 yards.

(6) *Being in column of sections to form line to the front.* The train commander commands or signals: 1. ***Right (left) front into line,*** 2. ***MARCH.*** The leading section moves straight to the front; each section in rear inclines to the right until opposite its place in line, and moves to the front. When the leading section has advanced the desired distance the train commander commands or signals: 1. ***Train,*** 2. ***HALT.*** The leading section halts and sections in rear halt when they arrive at their places in line.

(7) *Being in column of sections to form line to the flank.* The train commander commands or signals: 1. ***Right (left) into line,*** 2. ***MARCH.*** The leading section executes column right and then moves straight to the front. The other sections move forward and successively execute column right when by doing so they will be opposite their positions in line. The leading section is halted when it has advanced the desired distance; other sections halt when they arrive at their places in line.

f. Regimental train movements. The regimental train commander indicates the formation to be taken; battalion and combined special unit train commanders move their trains into position independently in the most expeditious manner.

g. Signals. For signals see Chapter 2.

h. The guidon. (1) The guidon is carried in accordance with the principles outlined in Chapter 6.

(2) The post of the guidon bearer in formation is as follows:

(*a*) In assembly formation, in line and close column, the guidon bearer takes post in the line of file closers covering the right file of the staff section.

(*b*) In drill formation, in line and close column, the guidon bearer takes post 1 pace in rear and 3 paces to the right of the company commander.

(*c*) In the initial formation and subsequent movements, the guidon bearer takes post as herein prescribed without command.

SECTION IX

THE HOWITZER SQUAD, PLATOON, AND COMPANY

233. Introduction.—*a.* Drill, the howitzer squad, platoon and company, consists of (1) close-order drill, (2) gun drill, (3) ammunition drill, and (4) transportation and cart drill.

(1) *Close-order drill.* (*a*) Individual instruction in basic subjects, such as the position of the soldier, facings, marchings, and salutes is carried out as prescribed for rifle units.

(*b*) Howitzer units also carry out close-order drills, with the exception of the manual of arms, as prescribed for corresponding rifle units. Extra numbers are placed in the line of file closers or blank files, or new squads are organized, if necessary. The members of the company headquarters are assigned to squads for close-order drill. Close-order drill in this case is conducted without transportation or gun equipment. Men armed with the rifle may be grouped for training in the manual of arms and rifle instruction.

(*c*) At formations of the company and during drills and ceremonies rifles are carried slung over the right shoulder, butt

down, barrel to the rear. Men armed with the rifle do not execute any movement of the manual of arms except *Inspection arms.* Rifles are unslung only at the commands, ***Inspection ARMS, REST, FALL OUT,*** or when specially directed.

(*d*) Close-order drill is carried out as a continuous part of garrison training for the purpose of developing discipline and the orderly movements of units in close-order formation. In the field, when practicable, close-order drills are given to maintain smartness and precision.

(2) *Gun drill.* (*a*) In drill with the gun, two objects must be kept in mind, namely:

(i) The development of accuracy and speed in handling the gun.

(ii) The development of discipline, which is the most essential part of the soldier's training.

(*b*) The gun squad must be trained as a unit so that its individual members work together smoothly, quickly, and effectively. Every man in the squad is thoroughly trained in the duties of every other man in order that the service of the gun may not be affected by casualties.

(*c*) To secure the objects set forth in (2) (*a*) above, all movements are executed at attention unless otherwise ordered by the squad leader.

(3) *Ammunition drill.* Ammunition drill consists of drill by the ammunition squad in the carrying of ammunition, and in the preparation of mortar ammunition for firing. When the drill movements prescribed for the ammunition squad have been mastered it is drilled in conjunction with the 37-mm. gun and 3-inch trench mortar squads. Such combined drill will consist of exercises involving transportation of ammunition from a battalion or other munitions distributing point to the platoon munitions distributing point, the preparation of 3-inch trench mortar ammunition, the supply of ammunition to the guns, and the movement of distributing points.

(4) *Transportation and cart drills.* (*a*) Because the animals and carts are an integral part of howitzer squads, all men in the squad are trained in harnessing, hitching, loading the carts, and leading the mules.

(*b*) Cart drill consists of drill by the squad, platoon, and company, with the appropriate transportation. The objects of cart drill are:

(i) To instruct the men to drill, maneuver, and march with the carts.

(ii) To secure uniform methods of executing the various movements.

(iii) To instruct the men in the proper methods of handling the animals.

(iv) To train the animals.

b. In addition to the above drills special training must be given all members of the company in care and handling of animals. Time for this training will be incorporated in the training schedule of the organization and will be used to instruct the men in feeding, watering, grooming, care of feet, harness adjustment, and remedies for minor injuries. Higher commanders will so arrange the scheduled hours of instruction that sufficient time for care of animals and equipment is provided.

c. Kinds of howitzer company squads. There are 3 kinds of squads in the howitzer company, namely, the 37-mm. gun squad,

the 3-inch trench mortar squad, and the ammunition squad. All men of the howitzer company receive training in the duties of the members of all 3 squads, but this must not interfere with the permanent organization of the squad.

d. General rules for drills and formations. (1) The drills and formations of the howitzer squad, platoon, and company are governed by the same general rules which govern the drill of the rifle squad, platoon, and company.

(2) Certain exceptions to the above, made necessary by the presence of guns or carts, are specified in the sections covering gun, ammunition, and cart drill.

234. Gun drill, 37-mm. gun squad.—*a. Organization of the squad.* (1) The 37-mm. gun squad, less transportation, consists of 1 sergeant, 1 corporal, 6 privates, and the squad equipment. The sergeant commands the squad, the corporal is the gunner, No. 1 is the assistant gunner and loader, and Nos. 2, 3, 4, and 5 are ammunition carriers. No. 6 (mule leader) acts as a replacement during gun drill.

(2) Each man is given a permanent number in the gun squad. When any number is absent or becomes a casualty, each higher number takes the place of the next lower number.

b. Equipment. (1) (*a*) The following articles of equipment are required for 37-mm. gun drill:

1 37-mm. gun on wheels.	4 dummy cartridges.
1 telescopic sight.	1 pair field glasses.
1 quadrant sight.	1 compass.
4 boxes of ammunition.	1 set fire-control tables.
2 aiming stakes.	5 carrying slings.

If drill is to be conducted over rough ground, two breast straps should be included.

(*b*) When the gun is drawn on wheels, the equipment is transported as follows:

Sergeant.—Carries field glass, compass, and fire-control tables.

Gunner.—Carries sights and aiming stakes.

No. 1.— } Carry 2 boxes of ammunition each.
No. 2.— }

No. 3.—No load assigned, assists as directed.

No. 4.— } Draw the 37-mm. gun.
No. 5.— }

No. 6.—Mule leader, if present, assists as directed.

When the gun is drawn by hand over rough ground, one or more members of the squad may assist in drawing the gun by means of breast straps. Ordinarily, breast straps are carried in the cart. In the field or in training for field duties all members who carry ammunition boxes or ammunition and parts of the gun are equipped with carrying slings. Ordinarily the carrying slings are carried in the carts with the breast straps.

(*c*) When the gun is carried by hand, the equipment is transported as follows:

Sergeant.—Carries field glass, compass, and fire-control tables.

Gunner.—Carries sights and aiming stakes.

No. 1.— } Carry assembled barrel and recoil cylinder, muzzle to the front, and one box of ammuni-
No. 2.— } tion each.

No. 3.— Pushes the wheels and axle.
No. 4.—
No. 5.— } Carry trails, pintle leading, and one box of ammunition each.
No. 6.— Mule leader, if present, assists as directed.

(*d*) During dismounting and mounting, the minimum number of men will be at the gun position. Only those members who are actively engaged in a phase of dismounting or mounting will be at the gun position. Those members who have dismounted or mounted a part of the gun will move clear of the gun position and hold themselves in readiness for the next formation or movement. Those members who are to dismount or mount a part of the gun will be ready to move immediately to the gun position to execute their mission when the gun position has been cleared by the preceding group.

(2) *Grounding equipment.* At the original assembly with equipment and at all halts, except at *in place, halt,* loads are grounded without command. The ammunition boxes are placed on the ground directly in front of the carrier. The rear of each box touches and is on line with the toes of its carrier. The trail of the 37-mm. gun is placed on the ground between Nos. 4 and 5.

(3) *Taking equipment.* At all preparatory commands for movement loads are taken.

c. General Rules. (1) When formed for gun drill, the 37-mm gun squad executes the *halt, steps* (except *side step*) and *marchings* (except *to the rear* and *by the flank*), *rests,* and resumes *attention* as described in Chapter 3. The squad *obliques,* resumes the *direct march, obtains* and *preserves the alignment,* and *turns on the moving pivot* as described in Section I, Chapter 7.

(2) When in squad column, the 37-mm. gun squad executes the above movements, and in addition marches to the flank and to the rear.

(3) In all changes of direction the gun is drawn to conform to the movement of the squad.

d. To form the gun squad. (1) The sergeant places himself 3 paces in front of where the center of the squad is to be and commands: ***FALL IN.***

(2) The squad forms in 2 ranks with 4 men in the front rank and 3 men in the rear rank as prescribed in Section I, Chapter 7.

(3) The sergeant then commands: ***NUMBER OFF.*** At this command, all except the right file execute ***Eyes right,*** and, beginning on the right, number off successively from right to left as follows: 1, 2, 3, gunner (front rank), 4, 5, 6 (rear rank). Each man turns his head and eyes to the front as he numbers off.

(4) Pistols, if carried, are then inspected at the command of the sergeant.

(5) When the squad is part of a larger unit the sergeant takes post as left guide of the platoon.

e. To secure equipment. (1) Normally, equipment for gun drill is secured before the squad is formed.

(2) At any time after the gun squad has been formed, to secure equipment, the command is: ***SECURE EQUIPMENT FOR GUN DRILL.*** At this command the men fall out and each secures the prescribed equipment. After the equipment is secured the squad reassembles without command.

f. To change numbers and duties in the squad. (1) The squad being in any formation, the command is: ***FALL OUT GUNNER,***

(ONE), (TWO), (or any other number in the squad). At this command the gunner takes the position of the last number of the squad. No. 1 calls out ***GUNNER,*** and moves to the position of the gunner. No. 2 calls out ***ONE,*** and moves to the position of No. 1, and in this manner throughout the squad, each man moves up one number. When a number other than the gunner is directed to fall out, he takes the position of the last number of the squad. The numbers following the designated number call out their new number and move to their new positions. The men preceding the designated number do not change their positions.

(2) This rotation in drill is made in order to train all members of the squad in the duties of the other members *and to simulate* casualties. During the earlier stages of gun drill this command is given only after a movement or command has been completely executed. After each member of the squad is familiar with the duties of each other member the command may be given before the completion of a movement. In such cases, each man at once stays the execution of his duties and takes up the duties of his new number.

g. Squad column. (1) The squad being in line, and the gun *on wheels,* to form squad column the command is: 1. ***Squad column,*** 2. ***MARCH.*** At the command ***MARCH*** the members of the squad follow the sergeant at easy marching distance in the following order. (See Figure 35.)

Nos. 5 and 4.
No. 1.
No. 2.
No. 3.
No. 6.
Gunner.

(2) When the gun is carried *by hand* the movement is the same except that the men follow the sergeant in squad column in the following order (see Figure 35):

No. 4.
No. 5.
No. 1.
No. 2.
No. 3.
No. 6.
Gunner.

h. The assembly. (1) The squad being in squad column, and the gun *on wheels,* the command is: 1. ***Assemble,*** 2. ***MARCH.*** If marching, the sergeant halts. The men move at a run toward the sergeant and form in line.

(2) The squad being in squad column, and the gun carried by hand, to assemble the squad, the command is: 1. ***Assemble,*** 2. ***MARCH.*** If marching, the squad halts. The gun is assembled *on wheels* as described in paragraph 234*j*. All men of the squad then move at a run toward the sergeant and form in line.

i. To dismount the gun and form squad column. (1) The squad being either in line or in squad column and the gun *on wheels,* the command is: ***BY HAND.***

(2) If marching, the squad halts.

(3) Nos. 4 and 5 turn the gun to the right about with the left wheel as a pivot, until the muzzle points directly to the front

and then ground the spades. No. 5 withdraws the sponge staff from the lunette swivels and hands it to No. 2.

(4) Nos. 1 and 2 each drops one box of ammunition 1 pace to the left of the center of the trails and retains the other box. No. 2 opens the breech, inserts the sponge staff through the bore, supports the breech by means of the sponge staff, and releases the elevating screw clutch from the clutch bracket. No. 1, from a position near the muzzle, unlocks the trunnion bearings, grasps the protruding end of the sponge staff, and assisted by No. 2 lifts the barrel and recoil cylinder over the left wheel.

(5) No. 4 straddles the trails, unhooks the axle stays, and raises the front of the trails slightly.

(6) No. 3 takes out the axle coupling pin, removes the axle and wheels and withdraws them 2 paces to the right so as to prevent interference with the forward movement of Nos. 4 and 5.

(7) As soon as the axle and wheels have been removed the members of the squad secure their loads. Nos. 4 and 5 take the ammunition dropped by Nos. 1 and 2. For the purpose of uniformity in drill the trails will be carried on the right hips with the top of the trails against the body. In the field, however, to avoid undue fatigue the trails may be shifted by Nos. 4 and 5 to suit their convenience. The squad forms in squad column.

(8) The squad being in position either of *prepare for action,* or *on wheels, action,* the command is: ***BY HAND.***

(*a*) Nos. 1 and 2 dispose of four boxes of ammunition as described in (4) above.

(*b*) The gunner removes the shoulder guard and passes it to No. 1. He then removes the sight, returning it to its case, and secures the aiming stakes.

(*c*) No. 1 replaces the shoulder guard on the right trail and proceeds as described in (4) above.

(*d*) No. 2 (opens the breech if not open) places the trigger thumb piece in the carrying position and proceeds as described in (4) above.

(*e*) No. 4 straddles the trails and releases the traversing screw plunger while No. 5 closes the trails and fastens the trail strap. No. 4, continuing to straddle the trails, unhooks the axle stays and raises the front of the trails slightly.

(*f*) No. 3 takes out the axle coupling pin, removes the axle and wheels, and withdraws them 2 paces to the right in order to prevent the interference with the forward movement of Nos. 4 and 5.

(*g*) Movement is completed as described in (7) above.

j. To mount the gun on wheels and form squad column. The squad being in squad column and the gun carried *by hand* the command is: ***ON WHEELS.***

(1) If marching the squad halts.

(2) No. 5 lowers the trail spades to the ground. No. 4 lowers and straddles the pintle end of the trails. No. 3 rapidly brings up the axle and wheels. No. 4 inserts the socket stud in the axle bearing and hooks the axle stays. No. 3 inserts the axle coupling pin and locks the axle lock.

(3) Nos. 1 and 2 replace the barrel and recoil cylinder on the trunnion bearings which are locked by No. 1. No. 2 fastens the elevating screw clutch, withdraws the sponge staff from the bore, and passes it to No. 5 who inserts it through the lunette swivels. No. 2 closes the breech, uncocks the gun, and puts the trigger thumb piece in the carrying position.

(4) All members secure their loads and form squad column.

k. Prepare for action. The squad being either in line or in squad column, and the gun *on wheels,* to prepare for action, the command is: ***PREPARE FOR ACTION.***

(1) If marching, the squad halts.

(2) Nos. 4 and 5 turn the gun to the right about with the left wheel as a pivot until the muzzle points directly to the front and then ground the spades. No. 4 goes to the front of the gun and unlocks the axle lock.

(3) No. 5 withdraws the sponge staff from the lunette swivels, places it on the ground beneath the axle, unfastens the trail strap, opens the trails and adjusts the transom.

(4) No. 1 places his ammunition boxes between the trails in rear of the transom, takes the shoulder guard from the right trail, passes it to the gunner, releases the trigger thumb piece from the carrying position, opens the breech, and inspects the bore.

(5) The gunner places the aiming stakes, pointed ends to the left, under the transom, attaches the shoulder guard and sight to the gun, and tests the elevating and traversing mechanisms.

(6) Any deficiencies noted by members of the squad are reported to the gunner.

(7) The members of the squad then take post as follows (see Figures 35):

(*a*) Sergeant, facing to the front, two paces to the left of and on line with the muzzle.

(*b*) Gunner, two paces to the left of, on line with, and facing the breech.

(*c*) No. 1, two paces to the right of, on line with, and facing the breech.

(*d*) Nos. 2, 3, 4, 5, and 6 (mule leader) form from right to left, facing to the front, two paces in rear of the trails.

(8) No. 2 places his ammunition boxes on the ground as described in paragraph 234*b* (2).

(9) As soon as the squad is posted the gunner reports, "Gun correct" (or the deficiencies noted).

l. Action. The 37-mm. gun may go into action either on wheels or on tripod. In action, should conditions demand a short, rapid change of position, the gun may be moved without dismounting by the most expeditious means.

(1) At the command: 1. ***On wheels (on tripod),*** 2. ***ACTION,*** the sergeant indicates the gun position to the gunner, obtains firing data, and any other information necessary. For indirect laying, No. 3 will accompany the sergeant in order to drive aiming stakes when necessary; after the stakes are driven he will then take his post in rear of the gun. The sergeant transmits the firing data to the squad and takes a position from which he can observe, direct, and control the fire. For drill purposes the gunner places the telescopic sight on the gun unless the sergeant directs otherwise. As soon as the gunner has received the fire order he adjusts the sight and lays on the aiming point indicated. At the announcement of *one round* by the sergeant, No. 1 loads. The gunner having completed the laying, commands: ***FIRE.*** At this command No. 1 fires or simulates the firing of the gun.

(2) The squad being either in line or in squad column, and the gun *on wheels,* to form for action on wheels, the command is: 1. ***On wheels,*** 2. ***ACTION.*** The squad executes ***Prepare for action,*** except that the gunner and No. 1 take firing positions (which are

prone) on the left and right trails, respectively. For drill purposes all other members of the squad take a prone position 5 paces in rear of the trails. No. 2 places his ammunition boxes by his side.

(3) The squad being either in line or in squad column, and the gun *on wheels,* to form for action *on tripod,* the command is: 1. ***On tripod,*** 2. ***ACTION.***

(*a*) If marching, the squad halts.

(*b*) Nos. 4 and 5 turn the gun as described in paragraph 234*i* (3).

(*c*) Nos. 1 and 2 remove the barrel and recoil cylinder to the left.

(*d*) Nos. 3 and 4 remove the axle and wheels from the mount. No. 3 moves the axle and wheels to a position in rear of the gun. For drill purposes the wheels are moved 8 paces in rear and one pace to the right of the right spade. No. 4 straddles the trails, grasps them between his knees, and adjusts the front leg while No. 5 unfastens the trail strap, opens the trails, and adjusts the transom.

(*e*) Nos. 1 and 2 replace the barrel and recoil cylinder on the trunnion bearings which are locked by No. 1. No. 2 fastens the elevating screw clutch, withdraws the sponge staff from the bore, places it on the ground under the gun, and releases the trigger thumb piece. No. 1 places his ammunition boxes between the trails in rear of the transom, takes the shoulder guard from the right trail and hands it to the gunner, takes his firing position on the right trail, and inspects the bore.

(*f*) The gunner places the aiming stakes, pointed ends to the left, under the transom, attaches the shoulder guard and sight to the gun, and tests the elevating and traversing mechanisms.

(*g*) The movement is completed as described in (2) above.

(4) The squad being in squad column, and the gun carried *by hand,* to form for action *on tripod,* the command is: 1. ***On tripod,*** 2. ***ACTION.*** Executed as described in (3) above except that the functions of No. 3 regarding the removal of wheels are not applicable, and Nos. 4 and 5 place their ammunition boxes between the trails in rear of the transom. No. 2 secures the ammunition box carried by No. 1 and takes his post in rear of the trails.

(5) The squad being in squad column and the gun carried *by hand,* to form for action *on wheels,* the command is: 1. ***On wheels,*** 2. ***ACTION.***

(*a*) If marching, the squad halts.

(*b*) Nos. 3, 4, and 5 assemble the trails and wheels except that No. 3 does not lock the axle lock. Nos. 4 and 5 place their ammunition boxes between the trails in rear of the transom.

(*c*) Nos. 1 and 2 replace the barrel and recoil cylinder as described in (3) (*e*) above, except that No. 2 secures the box carried by No. 1 and then takes post in rear of the trails.

(*d*) The movement is completed as described in (3), (*f*) and (*g*) above.

m. Out of action. (1) The squad being either in position of *prepare for action* or *on wheels action,* to go *out of action,* the command is: ***OUT OF ACTION.***

(*a*) The shoulder guard and sight are secured.

(*b*) No. 1 closes the breech, uncocks the gun, and puts the trigger thumb piece in the carrying position.

(*c*) No. 4 locks the axle lock and releases the traversing screw plunger while No. 5 closes the trails, fastens the trail strap, and passes the sponge staff through the lunette swivels.

(*d*) The squad forms in squad column, unless otherwise directed by the sergeant.

(2) The squad being in position of *on tripod action,* to go *out of action,* with the gun mounted on wheels, the command is: 1. ***On wheels,*** 2. ***OUT OF ACTION.***

(*a*) The shoulder guard and sight are secured.

(*b*) Nos. 1 and 2 remove the barrel and recoil cylinder to the left.

(*c*) Nos. 4 and 5 secure the trails as described in (1) (*c*) above, except that No. 4 does not lock the axle lock.

(*d*) Nos. 3 and 4 assemble the trails and wheels.

(*e*) Nos. 1 and 2 mount the barrel and recoil cylinder on the trunnion bearings.

(*f*) The squad forms in squad column unless otherwise directed by the sergeant.

(3) The squad being in position of *on tripod action,* to go *out of action* with the gun carried by hand the command is: 1. ***By hand,*** 2. ***OUT OF ACTION.***

(*a*) Nos. 1 and 2 dispose of 4 boxes of ammunition as described in paragraph 234*i* (4).

(*b*) The shoulder guard and sight are secured.

(*c*) Nos. 1 and 2 remove the barrel and recoil cylinder.

(*d*) No. 4 straddles the trails and releases the traversing screw plunger while No. 5 closes the trails and fastens the trail strap. No. 4, continuing to straddle the trails, raises the pintle end slightly and grasps the trails between his legs. He then secures the front leg in the front leg shackle.

(*e*) The squad forms in squad column.

n. Firing. (1) *Fire order.* The original fire order (which contains the data for laying the gun for the first round) will contain the following data and will be given in the sequence shown:

(*a*) Original fire order for direct laying:

	Example:
(i) Type of shell to be used.	***High explosive.***
(ii) Deflection.	***Right 10.***
(iii) Range.	***Nine hundred.***
(iv) Aiming point.	***To your front, pine tree, base of tree.***
(v) Number of rounds to be fired.	***One round.***

(*b*) Original fire order for indirect laying:

	Example:
(i) Type of shell to be used.	***High explosive.***
(ii) Deflection.	***Zero.***
(iii) Angle of site.	***Zero.***
(iv) Range.	***Seven fifty.***
(v) Aiming point.	***Stake.***
(vi) Number of rounds to be fired.	***One round.***

(*c*) The deflection and angle of site will always be announced, even if they are zero. Fire adjustment orders contain only the data which are to be changed and the number of rounds to be fired.

Example:

Correction for deflection and range:

Right 2.
Twelve hundred.
One round.

Correction for range only:

Thirteen hundred.
One round.

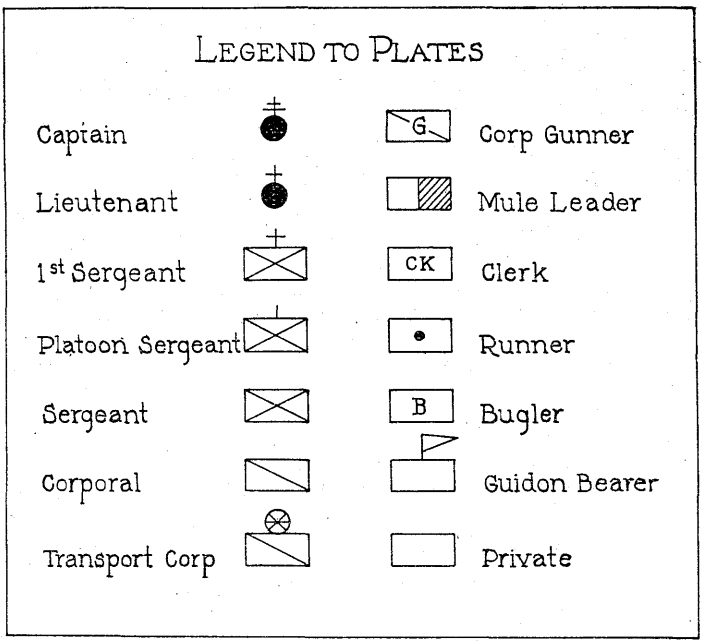


FIG. 34.—Legend to figures.

After fire has been adjusted, if 5 rounds are to be fired for effect, the command is: ***FIVE ROUNDS.***

(2) *Duties during firing.* (*a*) The sergeant obtains firing data, observes, adjusts, directs, and controls the fire.

(*b*) The gunner takes position along the left trail and lays the gun in accordance with firing data given. When the command ***(So many) rounds*** is received, the gunner gives the command ***FIRE*** for each round as soon as the gun is laid. In case several rounds are to be fired with the same data, as in fire for effect, the gunner re-lays the gun after each round. Firing may be simulated with dummy rounds.

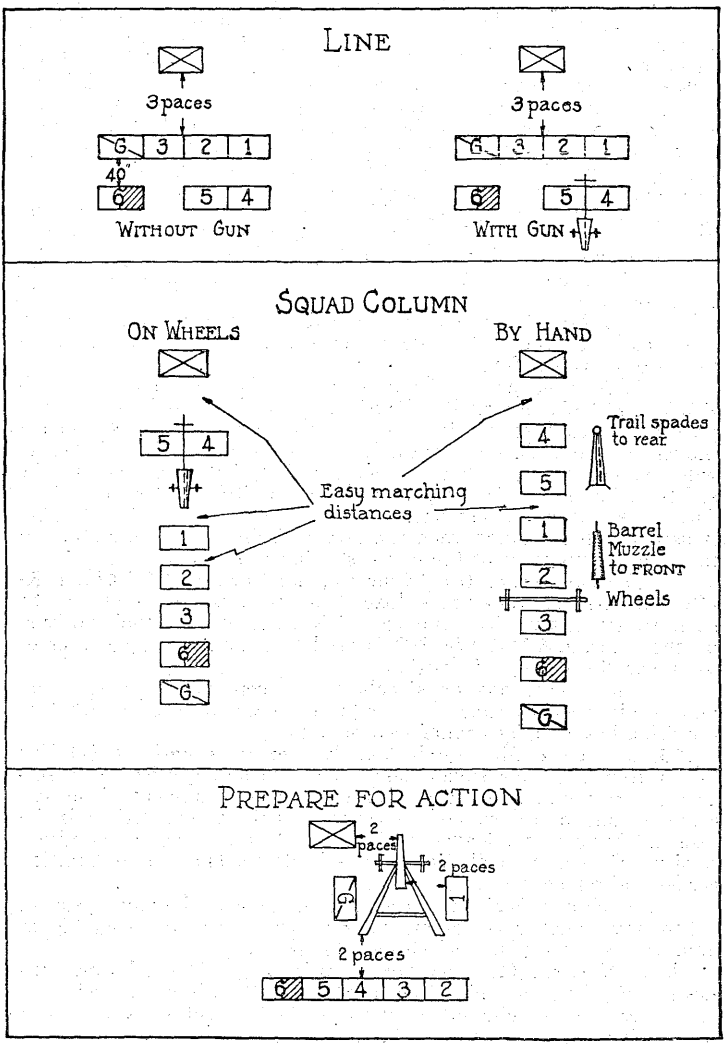


FIG. 35.—37-mm. gun squad.

(*c*) When indirect laying is used, as soon as the gun is put into position and the angle of site is announced by the sergeant, the gunner determines the *minimum range*.

(*d*) No. 1 takes position on the right trail and at the command ***(So many) rounds,*** loads the gun. At the command ***FIRE,*** given by the gunner, No. 1 immediately fires the gun by pressing down on the trigger thumb piece with the thumb of his right hand. As soon as the gun returns to battery, No. 1 opens the breech with an upward jerk on the breech lever. During drill with dummy rounds the recoil and return to battery are simulated. When more than one round is ordered, No. 1 keeps count of the rounds fired by calling out, "*First round, second round, third round, fourth round, fifth, LAST ROUND.*" When the number of rounds ordered has been fired the breech is left open and No. 1 does not reload the gun until the next series of rounds to be fired is ordered.

(*e*) Nos. 2, 3, 4, 5, and 6 (mule leader) maintain the ammunition supply.

(*f*) Movements of all members of the squad during simulated combat firing are made under simulated combat conditions unless otherwise ordered.

(3) *Suspend firing.* The sergeant signals or commands: ***SUSPEND FIRING.*** Firing stops, the gun is loaded and is placed in a position of readiness for the instant resumption of fire. No further movements in connection with the execution of the last fire order will be carried out, with the exception that the gunner checks the sight setting and relays the gun according to the last fire data. The posts of the personnel remain unchanged. ***SUSPEND FIRING*** is used for short pauses when the target disappears or moves out of range, for adjustment of fire or for shifting to a new target.

(4) *Cease firing.* (*a*) At the command or signal ***CEASE FIRING,*** firing stops, the gun, if loaded, is unloaded. All dials on the sight are set at zero. The gunner and No. 1 may leave their position on the trails. ***CEASE FIRING*** is used to announce long pauses or to prepare for change of position.

(*b*) Commands or signals for suspending or ceasing fire may be given at any time after the fire order has been given, whether the firing has actually commenced or not.

235. Mortar drill, 3-inch trench mortar squad.—*a.* (1) The 3-inch trench mortar squad, less transportation, consists of 1 sergeant, 1 corporal, 5 privates, and the squad equipment. The sergeant commands the squad, the corporal is the gunner, No. 1 is the assistant gunner and loader, and Nos. 2, 3, and 4 are ammunition carriers. During gun drill No. 5 (mule leader) acts as an ammunition carrier and replacement.

(2) Each man is given a permanent number in the mortar squad. When any member is absent, or becomes a casualty, each higher number takes the place of the next lower number.

b. Equipment. (1) *Equipment required.* (*a*) The following articles are required for 3-inch trench mortar drill: Mount, barrel, base plate, cleaning rod, clinometer, short-handled shovel, gunner's pouch (containing tommy bar, combination wrench, extra base cap and firing pin), 8 rounds of dummy ammunition, 4 sandbags, 2 shell carriers, 2 aiming stakes, 1 pair field glasses, 1 compass, and 2 sets fire-control tables.

(*b*) Equipment is carried by the individual members of the mortar squad as follows:

Sergeant.—Field glass, compass, and fire-control tables.

Gunner.—Clinometer, fire-control tables, 4 rounds of dummy ammunition in carrier, cleaning rod, and 2 aiming stakes.

No. 1.—The mount.

No. 2.—The barrel and gunner's pouch.

No. 3.—The base plate, short-handled shovel, and 4 sandbags.

No. 4.—Four rounds of dummy ammunition in carrier.

No. 5.—If present, carries the gunner's ammunition.

(2) *Grounding equipment.* At the original assembly with equipment and at all halts, except at *in place, halt,* loads are grounded without command as follows:

(*a*) No. 1 places the mount in front of him, legs to the right with cross stays up.

(*b*) No. 2 places the barrel in front of him, base cap of the barrel to the right with traversing screw up.

(*c*) No. 3 places his load in front of him, bottom of base plate up, rope handle to the right, the handle of the shovel being inserted through the rope handle of the base plate, the shovel lying on top of the base plate, face up, handle to the right. The sandbags, neatly folded, are placed under the handle of the shovel and near the blade.

(*d*) No. 4 places his ammunition in front of him.

(*e*) The gunner places the cleaning rod and aiming stakes in front of him, handle of cleaning rod and points of aiming stakes to his right, and places his ammunition in front of the cleaning rod and aiming stakes.

(*f*) All equipment will be on line, each article immediately in front of the man who carries it.

(3) *Taking equipment.* At all preparatory commands for movement, loads are taken as follows:

(*a*) Nos. 1, 2, and 3 place their loads on their left shoulders. The base cap of barrel, the legs of mount, the handle of cleaning rod, the handle of shovel, and the points of aiming stakes are all toward the front. The weight of the base plate is supported on the shovel handle.

(*b*) The gunner (or No. 5 if No. 5 is present) and No. 4 put on the ammunition jackets.

c. Movements. When formed for mortar drill, the 3-inch trench mortar squad executes the *halt, steps* (except *side steps*) and *resumes attention, obliques, resumes the direct march, obtains and preserves the alignment,* and *turns on the moving pivot* as for rifle units.

d. To form the mortar squad. (1) The sergeant places himself 3 paces in front of where the center of the squad is to be and commands: ***FALL IN.***

(2) The squad forms in 2 ranks with 4 men in the front rank and 2 men in the rear rank as prescribed in Fig. 36.

(3) The sergeant then commands: ***NUMBER OFF.*** At this command, all except the right file execute ***Eyes right,*** and, beginning on the right, number off successively from right to left as follows: 1, 2, 3, gunner (front rank), 4, 5 (rear rank). Each man turns his head and eyes to the front as he numbers off.

(4) Pistols, if carried, are then inspected at the command of the sergeant.

(5) When the squad is part of a larger unit the sergeant takes post as right guide of the platoon.

e. To secure equipment. (1) Normally, equipment for mortar drill is secured before the squad is formed. At any time after the

squad has been formed, to secure equipment, the command is: ***SECURE EQUIPMENT FOR MORTAR DRILL.*** At this command the men fall out and each secures the proper equipment.

(2) After the equipment is secured the squad reassembles without command.

f. To change numbers and duties in the squad. Executed in the same manner as prescribed in paragraph 234*f*.

g. Squad column. The squad being in any formation, to form squad column, the command is: 1. ***Squad column,*** 2. ***MARCH.*** At the command ***MARCH,*** the members of the squad follow the sergeant at easy marching distance in the following order:

No. 1.
No. 2.
No. 3.
No. 4.
No. 5.
Gunner.

h. The assembly. The squad being in squad column, to assemble the squad, the command is: 1. ***Assemble,*** 2. ***MARCH.*** If marching, the sergeant halts. All members of the squad move at a run toward the sergeant and form in their proper places.

i. Prepare for action. The squad being in any formation, to assemble the mortar preparatory to putting it in position to fire, the command is: ***PREPARE FOR ACTION.***

(1) If marching, the squad halts.

(2) No. 3 grounds his load in front of him.

(3) Nos. 1 and 2 assemble the mortar (except that the base cap is not placed on the base plate) and place it, muzzle to the front, in an upright position, base cap 2 paces in front of and one pace to the left of No. 3.

(4) The gunner hands the cleaning rod to No. 1 and places his ammunition on the ground 2 paces to the left of the base plate.

(5) No. 1 removes the muzzle cap, sponges out the barrel and places the cleaning rod, handle to the rear, on the cross stays while No. 2 tests the elevating and traversing mechanism by turning each handle and places both screws at center.

(6) Nos. 4 and 5, respectively, ground their loads to the left of and on line with the load of No. 3, so that these loads will be directly in front of the number to whom the particular load pertains when the squad has taken post as prescribed below.

(7) No. 1 then braces his right leg against the rear side of the mount and lifts the rear of the barrel while No. 2 removes the base cap and examines the parts to see that:

(*a*) All parts are clean.

(*b*) The firing pin is screwed firmly into the base cap and is not bent.

(*c*) The bore of the barrel is clean and not too oily.

(8) No. 2 then screws the base cap tightly on the barrel.

(9) No. 1 lowers the rear end of the barrel to the ground and replaces the muzzle cap.

(10) Any deficiency noted by members of the squad is reported to the gunner.

(11) The members of the squad then take post as follows (see Fig. 36):

(*a*) *Sergeant.* Two paces to the left of and on line with the muzzle, facing to the front.

(*b*) *Gunner.* Two paces to the left of, on line with the base cap, and facing the mortar.

(*c*) *No. 1.* Two paces to the right of, on line with, and facing the muzzle.

(*d*) *No. 2.* On the left of No. 1 facing the mortar.

(*e*) *Nos. 3, 4, and 5 (mule leader).* From right to left 2 paces in rear of the base cap, facing to the front.

(12) As soon as the squad is posted, the gunner reports, "Mortar correct" (or the deficiencies noted).

j. Action. The squad being in any formation, to prepare the mortar to fire upon a target, the command is: ***ACTION.***

(1) The sergeant indicates the position for the mortar and obtains firing data and any other information necessary. He transmits the firing data to the squad and takes a position from which he can observe, direct, and control the fire.

(2) The squad executes ***Prepare for action*** under the supervision of the gunner.

(3) As soon as he receives the firing data, the gunner, assisted by No. 3, sets out aiming stakes if required. The gunner then establishes the location and direction of the base-plate pit in the following manner: Resting the base plate upon the ground on one of its longer edges, he aligns its upper edge toward the target along the line established by the stakes or other aiming point, and marks on the ground the line determined by the lower edge. The base plate is then placed flat on the ground, bottom-side up, with the shorter center line of the plate in coincidence with the line on the ground. No. 2 stands on the base plate to hold it firmly in position while No. 1 outlines its 4 edges on the ground with the shovel. The base-plate pit is then dug by No. 1 within the lines thus made, except that the front edge of the pit is dug as far forward as is necessary to shape the pit properly. When the pit is dug, and properly revetted when necessary, the base plate is placed in the pit by No. 2.

(4) The mortar is then placed in position by No. 1 and No 2.

(5) No. 1 places himself in front of the mortar, grasps both legs of the mount, and moves the legs backward or forward as directed by the gunner until the approximate elevation that is to be used is obtained. The gunner then moves to the rear of the mortar and by sighting along the aiming line of the mortar and the stakes, directs No. 1 to move the legs to the right or left until the approximate direction is obtained.

(6) No. 2 then places sandbags on the legs, and No. 1 as directed by the gunner, gives the mortar the exact direction by means of the traversing handle. The gunner, using the clinometer, then adjusts the mortar to the exact elevation by means of the elevating handle.

(7) No. 3, assisted by No. 2 and No. 4, prepares ammunition for firing.

(8) Members of the squad then take posts as follows:

(*a*) Gunner on the left of the mortar near the muzzle where he can make corrections in elevation and direction.

(*b*) No. 1 on the right of the mortar near the muzzle in a position to load.

(*c*) No. 2 on the left of No. 1.

(*d*) No. 3 in a position where he can supply ammunition to No. 2.

(*e*) No. 4 in a position to assist No. 3.

(*f*) No. 5 (mule leader) places himself in a position to assist No. 3.

k. Out of action. The squad being either in position of *prepare for action* or *action,* to go *out of action,* the command is: ***OUT OF ACTION.***

(1) No. 1, assisted by No. 2, dismounts the mortar.

(2) All members take their equipment and the squad forms in squad column unless otherwise directed by the sergeant.

l. Firing. (1) *Fire orders.* The original fire order (which contains the data for laying the gun for the first round) will contain the data shown below and will be given in the sequence shown.

(*a*) Original fire order:

(i) Type of shell to be used.
(ii) Range.
(iii) Aiming point.
(iv) Number of rounds to be fired.

The command ***(So many) rounds*** indicates that the mortar is to be laid at once and to be fired when so laid.

(*b*) Fire-adjustment orders contain only the data which are to be changed and the number of rounds to be fired.

Example:

Left one turn.
One round.

(2) *Duties during firing.* (*a*) The sergeant obtains firing data and observes, adjusts, directs, and controls the fire.

(*b*) The gunner takes post on the left of the muzzle and lays the mortar in accordance with the firing data given; he also calls out the number of the rings to be used on the shell. When the command ***(So many) rounds*** is received, the gunner gives the command ***FIRE*** for each round as soon as the mortar is laid. In case several rounds are to be fired with the same data, as in fire for effect, the gunner relays the mortar after each round.

(*c*) No. 1, in position on the right of the muzzle, facing it, with his right foot near the lower part of the right leg of the mount, receives the prepared shell from No. 2. He holds the shell in both hands, grasping the fuze so that his right hand, palm up, covers the end of the safety fork, and the left hand, palm down, grasps the casing of the shell near the base. No. 2 withdraws the safety pin while the shell is held by No. 1. No. 1 then inserts the shell, with the fuze end up and the safety fork down, part way into the muzzle. He retains his grasp with both hands. At the gunner's command ***FIRE,*** No. 1, releasing the shell, allows it to slide down the barrel, and instantly removes his hands. After each 5 rounds fired, No. 1 swabs out the barrel.

(*d*) No. 2 from position on the left of No. 1 makes a rapid inspection to insure that the shell is properly prepared for firing, hands the prepared shell to No. 1, and then withdraws the safety pin.

(*e*) No. 3, assisted by Nos. 2, 4, and 5 (mule leader), cleans the shell, paying particular attention to the head and base. He inspects the cartridge container to see that it is not bent and that the holes in the sides are free from oil or other substance. He then inserts the cartridge and puts on the number of rings ordered. (These duties may be performed by the ammunition squad.)

(3) *Misfires.* When a misfire occurs, No. 1 places his right leg behind the right leg of the mount, bracing the latter, and places his right hand, palm up, under the muzzle. No. 2 then lifts the base

of the barrel until the shell slides slowly toward the muzzle. As soon as the shell has started forward, No. 1 places one or more fingers of his right hand over the muzzle and stops the shell when the tip of the fuze reaches the muzzle. He then ascertains the position of the safety fork and grasps the fuze so that the safety fork is held in place by the palm or fingers of his right hand. Keeping the palm or fingers of the right hand over the safety fork, he *unscrews the casing of the shell from the fuze* with his left hand. He then withdraws the shell from the barrel and passes the fuze and shell to No. 3 who replaces the safety pin and inspects the shell to determine the cause of the misfire. No. 2 unscrews the base cap and inspects it. The inspection being completed and the necessary repairs made, the base cap is replaced, the mortar put into position, and firing continued. If the inspection of the shell by No. 3 discloses a defect that he can promptly correct, that correction is made and the shell is again used. Otherwise the shell is discarded.

(4) *Suspend firing.* (*a*) The sergeant blows a long blast of the whistle and repeats it if necessary or commands: ***SUSPEND FIRING.*** Firing stops, the barrel is swabbed out, elevation and direction are checked, and the mortar is relayed in accordance with the last firing data received. The posts of the personnel remain unchanged. ***SUSPEND FIRING*** is used for short pauses when the target disappears or moves out of range, for adjustment of fire, or for shifting fire to a new target.

(*b*) The whistle signal may be used as a preliminary to *cease firing.*

(5) *Cease firing.* (*a*) At the command or signal ***CEASE FIRING,*** firing stops, the barrel is swabbed out, and all equipment is inspected. ***CEASE FIRING*** is used to announce long pauses or to prepare for change of position.

(*b*) Commands or signals for suspending or ceasing fire may be given at any time after the fire order has been given, whether the firing has actually commenced or not. Any round from which the safety pin has been removed will be fired.

236. Ammunition drill, ammunition squad.—*a. Organization of the squad.* (1) The ammunition squad, less transportation, consists of 1 corporal, 7 privates, and the squad equipment. The corporal commands the squad. Nos. 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, and 6 are ammunition carriers and perform certain duties in the preparation of 3-inch trench mortar ammunition for firing as set forth below. During ammunition drill No. 7 (mule leader) acts as an ammunition carrier and replacement.

(2) Each man is given a permanent number in the ammunition squad. When any number is absent or becomes a casualty each higher number takes the place of the next lower number.

b. Equipment. (1) *Equipment required.* (*a*) The following equipment is required for ammunition drill: Four boxes of 37-mm. gun ammunition, twenty 3-inch trench mortar dummy shells, and a sufficient number of carriers and carrying slings for the mortar and 37-mm. gun ammunition. Such additional ammunition is carried as the corporal directs.

(*b*) A load for 1 man is 2 boxes of 37-mm. gun ammunition or 4 rounds of 3-inch trench mortar ammunition. The mortar ammunition is carried in ammunition jackets or other authorized carriers. If no jackets or other carriers are issued, mortar ammunition is carried in burlap sacks, 2 shells in a sack.

(*c*) Equipment is carried by individual members of the ammunition squad as follows: Nos. 1, 2, 3, 4, and 5 each carry 4 rounds of 3-inch trench mortar dummy ammunition in an ammunition jacket or carrier. Nos. 6 and 7 each carry 2 boxes of 37-mm. gun ammunition by means of a carrying sling.

(2) *Grounding equipment.* At the original assembly with equipment and at all halts, except at *in place, halt,* loads are grounded without command, the individual members placing their ammunition in the carriers on the ground in front of them and on line with and touching their toes.

(3) *Taking equipment.* At all preparatory commands for movement loads are taken.

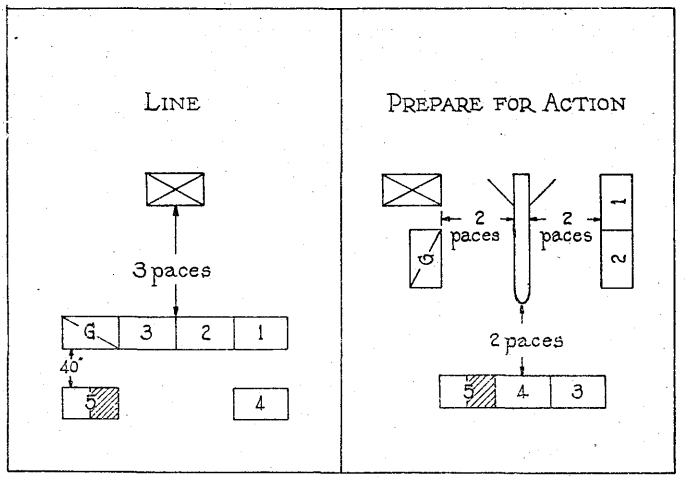


FIG. 36.—3-inch trench mortar squad.

c. Movements. When formed for ammunition drill, the ammunition squad executes the *halt, steps* (except *side steps*), *marchings* (except *to the rear* and *by the flank*), *rests,* and *resumes attention, obliques, resumes the direct march, obtains* and *preserves the alignment,* and *turns on the moving* and *fixed pivots* as prescribed for the rifle squad.

d. To form the ammunition squad. (1) The corporal places himself 3 paces in front of where the center of the squad is to be and commands: ***FALL IN.***

(2) The squad forms in 2 ranks with 4 men in the front rank and 3 men in the rear rank.

(3) The corporal then commands: ***NUMBER OFF.*** At this command, all except the right file execute ***Eyes right,*** and, beginning on the right, number off successively from right to left as follows: 1, 2, 3, 4 (front rank), 5, 6, 7 (rear rank). Each man turns his head and eyes to the front as he numbers off.

(4) Pistols, if carried, are then inspected at the command of the corporal.

(5) When the squad is part of a larger unit the corporal takes the post of No. 4. The rear rank forms in order from right to left: No. 5, No. 4, No. 6, and No. 7.

e. To secure equipment. (1) Normally, equipment for ammunition drill is secured before the squad is formed. At any time after the squad has been formed, the squad being in any formation, to secure equipment the command is: ***SECURE EQUIPMENT FOR AMMUNITION DRILL.*** At this command the men fall out and each secures the equipment prescribed in paragraph 236*b*.

(2) After the equipment is secured the squad reassembles without command in the formation prescribed in paragraph 236*d* (2).

f. To change numbers and duties in the squad. Executed in the same manner as prescribed in paragraph 234*f* (p. 92), except that there is no gunner in the ammunition squad.

g. Squad column. The squad being in any formation, to form squad column, the command is: 1. ***Squad column,*** 2. ***MARCH.*** At the command ***MARCH,*** the members of the squad follow the corporal at easy marching distance in the following order:

No. 1.
No. 2.
No. 3.
No. 4.
No. 5.
No. 6.
No. 7.

h. The assembly. From any formation to assemble the squad, the command is: 1 ***Assemble,*** 2. ***MARCH.***

If marching, the corporal halts. All members of the squad move at a run toward the corporal and form in their proper places.

i. Action. The squad being in any formation, and the platoon munitions distributing point having been selected, to prepare mortar ammunition for firing the command is: ***ACTION.***

(1) If marching, the squad halts and forms in line from right to left in the order No. 1, No. 2, No. 3, No. 4, No. 5, No. 6, No. 7 (mule leader). The right of the squad rests on the ammunition pile. The corporal remains in front of his squad in position to observe and direct their actions.

(2) The corporal announces the number of rounds of mortar ammunition to be prepared.

(3) Ammunition is prepared as follows:

Nos. 1 and 2 open boxes and distribute component parts of the shells to proper squad members.

No. 3 cleans the shells.

No. 4 unscrews head-hole plugs and inserts boosters.

No. 5 screws on fuzes.

No. 6 inserts the cartridges, and unless otherwise directed by the corporal, attaches 3 powder rings, and stacks the ammunition in small low piles. These piles, containing not more than 20 rounds, are separated by at least 10 yards.

No. 7 (mule leader) assists the other members as directed by the corporal.

(4) As soon as the ammunition is prepared and piled all members of the squad take the prone position near the ammunition point.

(5) When ammunition is made ready for use at some time in the future, the ammunition is prepared as described above, except

that the cartridges are not inserted nor the cartridge rings attached. Shell beds are prepared for the separated piles of ammunition as follows:

. A continuous embankment not less than 1 foot high and 2 feet thick is thrown up so that the stacked ammunition will be inclosed. Arrangements are made for drainage of the shell bed.

i. Out of action. The squad being in the position of action, to go out of action, the command is: ***OUT OF ACTION.*** All unassembled components of 3-inch trench mortar shells are repacked in their containers. Surplus prepared ammunition is disposed of as prescribed by the corporal. All members of the squad take their proper loads and the squad forms in squad column unless otherwise directed by the corporal.

237. Transportation, the squad.—*a. Duties of the mule leader.* (1) The chief duties of the mule leader are:

(*a*) Leading the mule during drill, combat, and on the march.

(*b*) Training and care of the mule.

(*c*) Care and adjustment of the harness.

(*d*) Harnessing and unharnessing.

(*e*) Hitching and unhitching.

(*f*) Care of the cart.

(2) As a general rule, while the mule leaders are harnessing and hitching, the remainder of the squad will be loading the carts for the drill or march.

(3) The mule leader must be thoroughly trained in his duties, because the greatest value cannot be obtained from the weapons of the howitzer company unless the mule leader can maneuver his cart boldly and skillfully in action. The carts of the howitzer company should work close to the enemy in order to effect, by their proper handling, a great saving of physical exertion on the part of the personnel of howitzer company squads.

b. To lead the mule. When hitched, the mule is led by means of the reins or halter tie rope. The mule leader holding the reins near the bit with his right hand and the loose end of the reins in his left hand takes position on the near side of the mule. At drills and ceremonies the mule is led with the reins; on the march the halter tie rope may be used. The mule is led with a loose rein and urged on from the rear, if necessary, by an assistant. The mule leader never faces or threatens the mule when leading him.

c. To gather the mule. The mule leader raises his right hand until it touches the mule's lower jaw and at the same time exerts a slight pressure with the reins in the direction in which the movement is to be made. The object of gathering the mule is to attract his attention and prepare him for the movement. At all preparatory commands involving a movement of the carts, the mule is gathered in time to cause the movement to begin at the command of execution.

d. To change direction. In all changes of direction the mule is led outward and away from the pivot in order to increase the radius of turning. In a turn to the right, the mule while actually led in the turn, may be better controlled if the leader places his right shoulder against the mule and guides him in the turn.

e. To load the carts. (1) At the command ***LOAD CARTS,*** the squad, under the supervision of the squad leader, loads the squad and other equipment on the carts in such manner that the load is evenly balanced and properly secured to the cart.

(2) Pending the issue of howitzer company carts of standard design, no definite procedure in loading the carts can be prescribed. The method of loading machine-gun carts may be used as a guide.

238. Cart drill, the squad.—*a. General rules.* (1) The term squad as used in cart drill refers to the squad with its transportation. Cart drill, is in general, the same for all 3 squads. Those movements executed differently by the various squads are explained separately for each squad.

(2) The squad executes *Eyes right* or *left,* the *halt, facings, steps,* and *marchings* except *back steps, side steps, to the rear,* and *by the flank;* it *rests* and *resumes attention* except that mule leaders do not execute *parade rest* and *stand at ease* but remain at *attention* and execute *at ease,* respectively, instead. The squad is aligned and the alignment is preserved in accordance with the rules prescribed

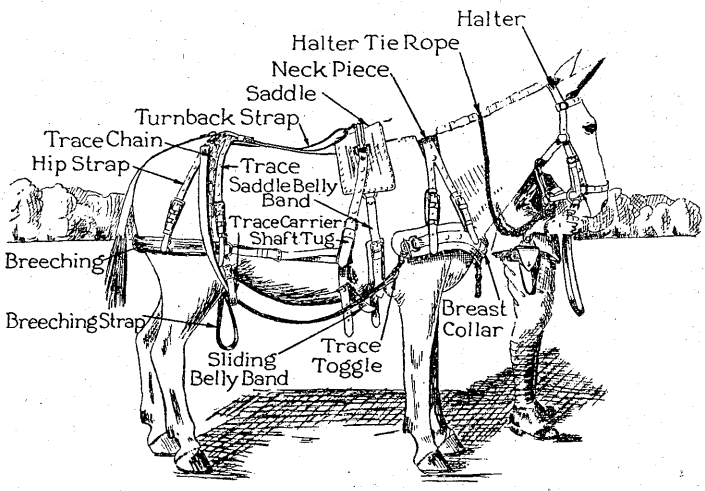


FIG. 37.—Harnessed mule.

for the rifle squad. A working knowledge of the drill of the rifle squad without arms is necessary before cart drill is taken up.

(3) The squad does not turn on a fixed pivot in any movement in which the carts follow the squad in trace.

(4) In all changes of direction, except movements by the flank, the mule leader maintains his relative position.

(5) The gait of the mule is increased or decreased to conform to the movement of the squad in ranks. No. 4 of the 3-inch trench mortar squad, No. 6 of the ammunition squad, and No. 5 of the 37-mm. gun squad, march on the right and opposite the hips of the mule in their respective squads, and assist the mule leader.

(6) For the purpose of formations or drills the runners from platoon headquarters may be assigned to the 3-inch trench mortar and 37-mm. gun squads as follows:

(*a*) Two runners to the 3-inch trench mortar squad to cover Nos. 1 and 2 when the mule leader, assistant mule leader, and transportation are immediately in rear of the front rank. In

those formations or movements requiring the separation of the mule leader, assistant mule leader, and transportation from the rest of the squad, the runners cover No. 1 and the gunner, respectively.

(*b*) One runner to the 37-mm. gun squad to cover No. 2 when the mule leader, assistant mule leader, and transportation are immediately in rear of the front rank. In those formations or movements requiring the separation of the mule leader, assistant mule leader, and transportation from the rest of the squad, the runner covers the gunner.

b. To form the squad. (1) The squad is formed (see Figure 38), as prescribed in paragraphs 234*d* (p. 92), 235*d* (p. 101), and 236*d* (p. 106), as modified by paragraph 238*a* (p. 109), in the case of the 37-mm. gun squad, 3-inch trench mortar squad, and ammunition squad, respectively, with the following exception: In numbering off mule leaders and assistants do not execute ***Eyes right*** and ***Front.***

(2) In case the squad is depleted in strength the squad numbers are abolished successively from 5 to 4 in the case of the 3-inch trench mortar squad, from 7 to 5 in the case of the ammunition squad, and from 6 to 4 in the case of the 37-mm. gun squad. The highest numbered man remaining is the mule leader. When the squad is depleted, posts occupied by No. 4 in the case of the 3-inch trench mortar squad, Nos. 6 and 5 in the case of the ammunition squad, and Nos. 5 and 4 in the case of the 37-mm. gun squad, are vacated in that sequence in each squad.

c. The oblique march. (1) The squad being in any formation, the command to oblique is: 1. ***Right (left) oblique,*** 2. ***MARCH.*** At the command ***MARCH*** the squad executes the movement in the same manner as the rifle squad. The mule leader leads the mule in a direction 45° to the right of the original front and preserves his position relative to the squads. The command ***HALT*** is not given during the oblique march.

(2) To resume the original direction the command is: 1. ***Forward,*** 2. ***MARCH.*** At the command ***MARCH*** the men half face to the left in marching and then move straight to the front. The mule leader executes a turn of 45° to the left and leads the mule straight to the front.

d. To turn on a moving pivot. (1) The squad being in line, to turn on a moving pivot the command is: 1. ***Right (left) turn,*** 2. ***MARCH.*** The movement is executed as prescribed for the rifle squad. The mule is led to conform to the movement of the squad.

(2) *Right (left) half turn* is executed in a similar manner.

e. To march to the flank. (1) The squad being in line, to march to the flank, the command is: 1. ***Squad right (left), cart right (left),*** 2. ***MARCH.*** The squad, less the mule leader and assistant mule leader, executes ***Squad right*** as prescribed for the rifle squad. The mule leader simultaneously leads to the right, independently of the remainder of the squad. The mule leader, after the movement has been executed, guides on the front rank of the squad.

(2) To resume the original direction, the command is: 1. ***Squad left (right), cart left (right),*** 2. ***MARCH.*** At the command ***MARCH,*** the squad, less the mule leader and assistant mule leader, executes ***Squad left.*** The mule leader simultaneously leads to the left and resumes his normal position in the formation.

f. To turn about and march. Being in line, to turn about and march, the command is: 1. ***Right (left) about turn,*** 2. ***MARCH.*** The squad executes right turn. Upon completion of this movement the squad executes a second right turn. The mules are led to conform to the movement of the squad.

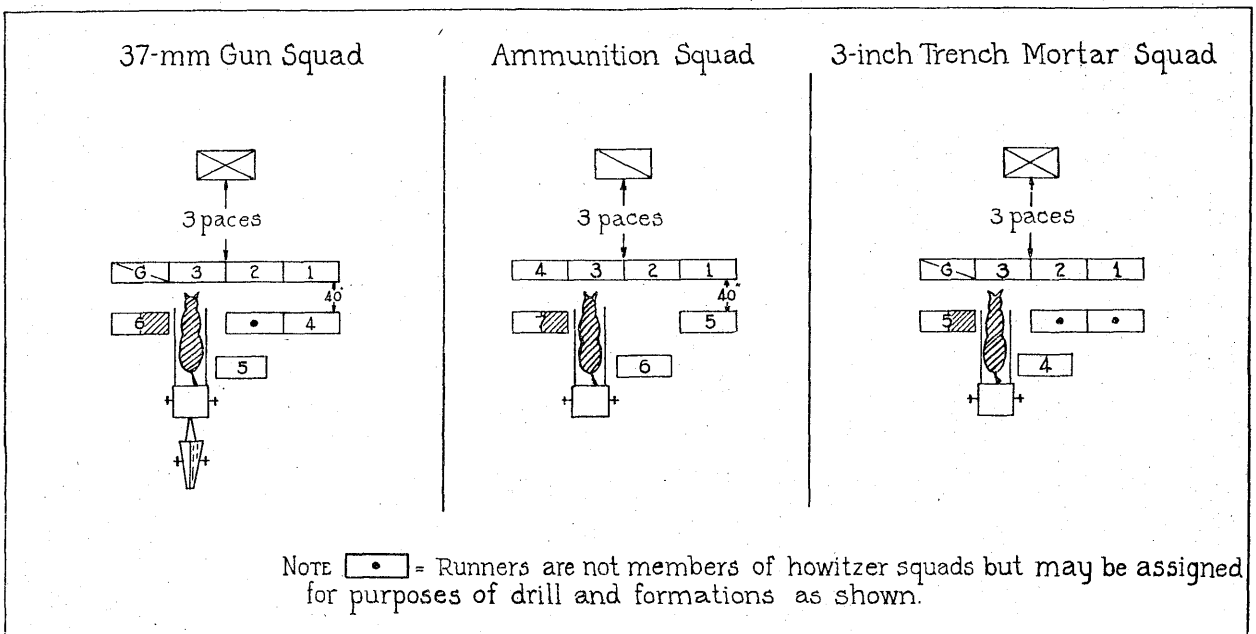


Fig. 38.—Howitzer squads with carts.

g. Off carts. To remove the gun equipment and ammunition from the cart the command is: ***OFF CARTS.***

(1) *The 37-mm. gun squad.* (*a*) If marching, the squad halts.

(*b*) Nos. 4 and 5 run to the rear of the cart, No. 4 on the right of the trail, No. 5 on the left. No. 4 loosens the trail strap. No. 5 removes the singletree rings of the trail from the singletree on the rear of the cart, lowers the trails to the ground, secures the sponge staff from its clip and inserts it through the lunette swivels. No. 4 again fastens the trail strap.

(*c*) Nos. 1 and 2 each secure 2 boxes of ammunition from the cart.

(*d*) The squad, except the mule leader, forms as prescribed in paragraph 234*d* (p. 92).

(2) *The 3-inch trench mortar squad.* (a) If marching, the squad halts.

(*b*) Members of the squad secure their proper loads from the cart.

(*c*) The squad, except the mule leader, forms as prescribed in paragraph 235*d* (p. 101).

(3) *The ammunition squad.* (*a*) If marching, the squad halts.

(*b*) Members of the squad, except the mule leader, secure their proper loads from the cart.

(*c*) The squad, except the mule leader, forms as prescribed in paragraph 236*d* (p. 106).

(4) Any additional articles of equipment which may be ordered for the accomplishment of the particular mission are secured and carried by the squad members in accordance with a prearranged plan.

(5) Unless otherwise directed by the squad leader the transportation remains in position.

h. On carts. To replace the gun equipment and ammunition on the cart the command is: ***ON CARTS.***

(1) If marching, the squad halts.

(2) All members of the squad replace their loads on the cart and the squad reforms.

239. Cart drill, the platoon.—*a. Organization.* (1) The howitzer platoon consists of a platoon headquarters, a 3-inch trench mortar squad, an ammunition squad, and a 37-mm. gun squad.

(2) The platoon headquarters comprises 1 lieutenant (platoon leader), 1 platoon sergeant (second in command), 1 corporal (transport), and 3 privates (runners).

(3) In each platoon men are assigned to squad without reference to height, in order that each squad may have its proper proportion of large men. Men are assigned to duties which they are best fitted to perform. The integrity of squads is maintained. If any squad contains fewer than 5 men, excluding the squad leader, it is temporarily increased to that number for cart drill by transfers from other squads or from the runners of platoon headquarters. When the strength of the platoon is so reduced that there are less than 5 men, excluding squad leaders, in each squad the ammunition squad is broken up and the men temporarily assigned to other squads for cart drill. The unit thus formed retains the designation of the platoon.

(4) For the purpose of formations or drills, runners may be used to fill blank files.

(5) *Individual duties.* (*a*) The platoon sergeant is second in command of the platoon. He forms the platoon and receives the

reports of the squad leaders at all formations. When the platoon is in line the platoon sergeant is posted to the right rear of the line of carts, opposite the wheels of the 37-mm. gun and covering the right guide of the platoon. When the platoon is in column of squads or march column, he marches as shown in Figures 40 and 41. From his post he supervises the drill and assists the platoon leader in control. He is responsible that platoon equipment carried on the carts is complete and properly loaded.

(*b*) The sergeants of the 3-inch trench mortar and 37-mm. gun squads are the right and left guides of the platoon, respectively. They are responsible for the proper direction and step of the platoon. When squads drill independently or at the command ***OFF CARTS,*** squad leaders take command of their respective squads. Squad leaders are responsible that squad equipment carried on the carts is complete and properly loaded.

(*c*) *Transport corporal.* When the platoon is in line the transport corporal is posted to the left of the wheels of the 37-mm. gun, covering the left guide of the platoon. When the platoon is in column of squads or march column he marches as shown in Figures 40 and 41. From his post he supervises the movements of the carts and assists the platoon leader in control.

(*d*) No. 4 of the ammunition squad covers No. 2 when the corporal is in ranks, and the mule leader, assistant mule leader, and transportation are immediately in rear of the front rank. For those formations or movements requiring the separation of the mule leader, assistant mule leader, and transportation from the rest of the squad, No. 4 covers the corporal.

(6) The platoons are numbered consecutively from right to left within the company. The squads are designated as the 3-inch trench mortar squad, the ammunition squad, and the 37-mm. gun squad, respectively. These platoon and squad designations do not change. For convenience in giving commands and for reference, the terms *right, center,* and *left,* when in line, and *leading, center,* and *rear,* when in column, are applied to the actual *right, center, left, leading,* or *rear* element in whatever direction the platoon may be facing.

b. Formations. (1) The formations of the platoon are: Line, march column, and column of squads, twos or files. The principal cart drill formations are: Line, march column, and column of squads.

(2) *Definitions.* (*a*) *Line.* That formation of the platoon, with transportation, in which the squads are abreast and without interval between squads.

(*b*) *Column of squads.* That formation of the platoon in which the squads, each with its own transportation immediately in rear, are arranged one behind the other at 1 pace distance. (See Figure 40.)

(*c*) *March column.* That formation of the platoon with transportation, in which the squads in ranks are formed as a column of squads in close-order drill, the carts following the last squad in ranks. The leading mule leader marches 1 pace in rear of the rear guide and in prolongation of the line formed by the left file of the platoon. The other mule leaders cover the leading mule leader at 1 pace distance. (See Figure 41.)

c. General rules for cart drill. (1) The movements which are executed by the howitzer platoon in cart drill correspond generally to similar movements of the rifle platoon. The most important differences are:

(*a*) The platoon in line does not execute the turn on the fixed pivot.

(*b*) Certain other modifications which are necessary, due to the presence of the animals and carts, are given in the description of the various movements.

(2) The platoon executes the movements explained in Chapter 3, as enumerated, with the exceptions in paragraph 238*a* (1) (p. 109). In proper cases ***platoon*** is substituted for ***squad*** in commands. The platoon marches *at ease* and *route step* and *increases* and *diminishes the front of a column* in accordance with the rules prescribed for the rifle platoon. It *obliques, resumes the direct march* and executes *squads right, carts right, off carts* and *on carts* as explained in the preceding paragraph.

(3) The platoon is aligned and the alignment is preserved in accordance with the rules prescribed for the rifle platoon. When mounted, the platoon leader facing the point of rest dresses his

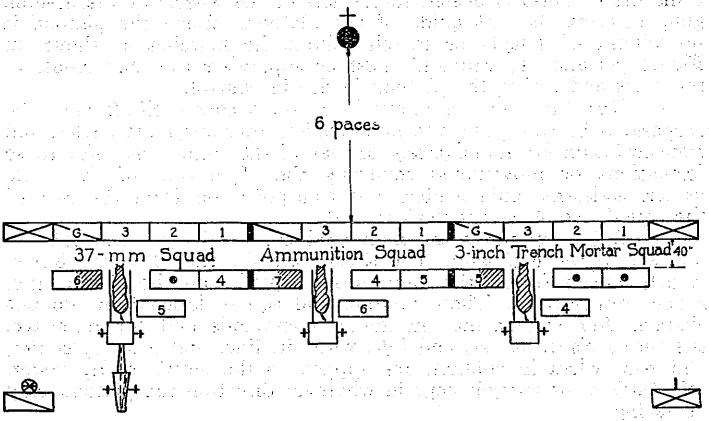


FIG. 39.—Line with carts.

platoon. When the platoon is in march column or column of squads, the platoon leader verifies the alignment of the leading squad and then aligns the column from the front. In dressing, small errors in interval between subdivisions will not be corrected owing to the difficulty of moving the carts short distances to the flank.

(4) If any command requires successive execution by subdivisions, the subdivisions halt, if necessary, to give room for execution.

(5) Mule leaders do not mark time.

(6) Any movement may be executed in double time.

(7) In successive movements executed in double time, the leading or base element marches in quick time except in movements from line into column of squads or march column. The other units march in double time to their places in the formation ordered and then conform to the leading or base unit. If marching in double time, the command ***Double time*** is omitted. The leading or base element marches in quick time; the other units continue in double time to their new places in the formation and then conform to the gait of the leading or base unit.

(8) A mounted individual always executes the *about* to the left. In moving from one position to another in the formation he habitually rides at the trot.

(9) In all movements by which line is formed to the front, on right or left, or to a flank, the interval may be changed by adding to the preparatory command ***So many paces.*** Example: 1. ***Right front into line, 5 paces,*** 2. ***MARCH.***

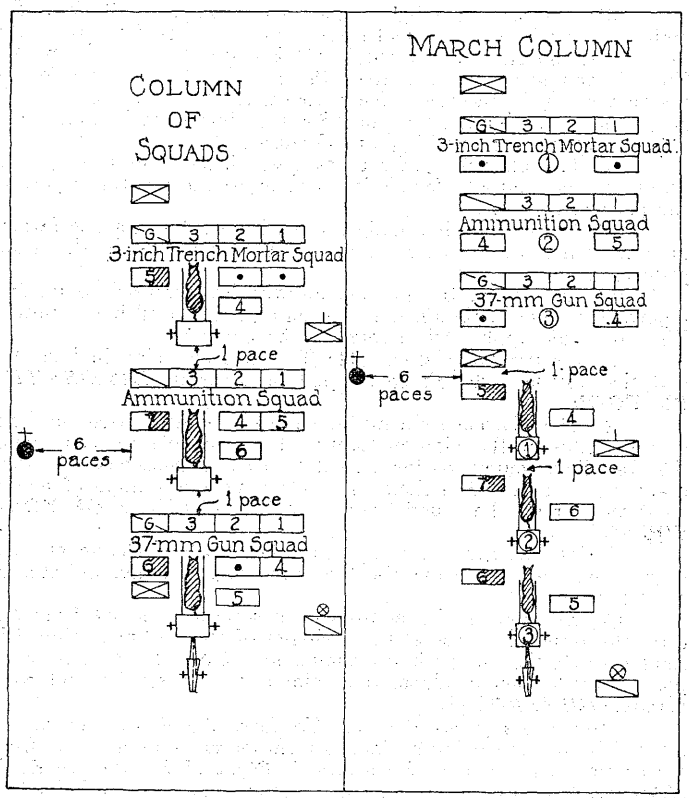


FIG. 40. FIG. 41.

Howitzer platoon formations: Column of squads; march column.

(10) Movements to a flank at the command ***Squads right (left), carts right (left)*** cannot be executed simultaneously when the platoon is in line. However, the movement may be executed successively. When executed successively and when the unit again changes direction and forms line, squads successively close up in order to come into line in the original formation.

d. To form the platoon. (1) To form the platoon in line, the platoon sergeant takes post 6 paces in front of and facing the

position the center of the platoon is to occupy and commands: 1. ***First (second** or **third) platoon,** 2. **FALL IN.***

(2) The sergeant of the 3-inch trench mortar squad places himself facing to the front so that the center of the platoon will be opposite to and 6 paces from the platoon sergeant. The platoon forms in line, 3-inch trench mortar squad on the right, ammunition squad in the center, and 37-mm. gun squad on the left. Members of the platoon headquarters may take position as shown in Figure 39.

(3) The platoon sergeant then commands: ***REPORT.*** Remaining in position, the squad leaders, in succession from the right, salute and report, "All present," or "Private(s) ..... absent." The platoon sergeant then gives the prescribed command for inspection arms, if necessary, faces about, salutes and reports "Sir, all present or accounted for," or "Sir, (so many) men absent," and without command takes his post. (Figure 39.)

(4) The platoon leader takes post 12 paces in front of the center of the platoon, facing it, in time to receive the report of the platoon sergeant.

(5) The platoon is usually formed in line, but may be formed in any other desired formation in accordance with the same principles.

(6) In forming the platoon all who are required to make a report, salute and maintain the position of salute until it is returned. The same rule applies when forming the company.

e. To dismiss the platoon. (1) The platoon being in line at a halt, the platoon leader directs the platoon sergeant: ***DISMISS THE PLATOON.***

(2) The platoon sergeant moves to a point 3 paces in front of the center of the platoon, salutes, faces the platoon, and gives the prescribed commands for inspecting arms, if necessary. He then gives the necessary directions as to cleaning and storage of equipment and directs the squad leaders: ***TAKE CHARGE OF YOUR SQUADS.***

(3) At this command the squad leaders take charge of their respective squads and supervise the unloading, cleaning, and storage of equipment.

(4) As soon as the equipment has been removed from the carts the transport corporal takes charge of the transportation. He conducts it to the cart park and commands: ***UNHITCH.*** The transport corporal then conducts the animals to the stables and commands: ***UNHARNESS.***

f. Movements from line. (1) *To form march column to the front.* The platoon being in line, to form march column to the front the command is: 1. ***March column,** 2. **Right (left) by squads,** 3. **MARCH.*** The squads, less the mule leaders, assistant mule leaders, and transportation, execute ***Right by squads*** as prescribed in Section II. The carts follow the last squad in ranks successively from the right at a distance of one pace.

(2) *To form march column to a flank.* The platoon being in line, to form march column to a flank the command is: 1. ***March column,** 2. **Squads right (left),** 3. **MARCH.*** The squads, less the mule leaders, assistant mule leaders, and transportation, execute ***Squads right.*** The carts of each squad turn successively to the right and follow the last squad in ranks at a distance of one pace.

(3) *To form column of squads to the front.* The platoon being in line, to form column of squads to the front, the command is: 1. ***Column of squads,** 2. **Right (left) squad forward,** 3.

MARCH. At the command ***MARCH*** the right squad moves straight to the front. The remaining squads stand fast if at a halt, or if marching, halt. As soon as uncovered, the remaining squads, at the command of their leaders, successively take up the march and follow in column.

(4) *To form column of squads to a flank.* The platoon being in line, to form column of squads to a flank, the command is: 1. ***Column of squads,*** 2. ***Right (left) squad right (left) turn,*** 3. ***MARCH.*** At the command ***MARCH*** the right squad executes ***Right turn.*** Each of the remaining squads stands fast if at a halt, or if marching, halts. Each executes ***Right turn*** at the command of its leader in time to follow the squad on its right at the proper distance.

g. Movements from column of squads. (1) *To form line to a flank.* The movement being in column of squads, to form line to a flank, the command is: 1. ***Line to the right (left),*** 2. ***MARCH,*** 3. ***Platoon,*** 4. ***HALT,*** 5. ***FRONT.*** At the command ***MARCH*** the leading squad executes ***Right turn.*** The rear squads execute ***Right turn*** as soon as they are opposite their places at the right of preceding squad and take positions without interval. The command ***HALT*** is given when the leading squad has advanced the desired distance. Its leader then commands: 1. ***Left,*** 2. ***DRESS.*** Each squad in rear is halted abreast of the leading squad at the command of its leader, who then commands: 1. ***Left,*** 2. ***DRESS.*** All dress on the first squad on line.

(2) *To form line to the front.* The platoon being in column of squads, to form line to the front, the command is: 1. ***Right (left) front into line,*** 2. ***MARCH,*** 3. ***Platoon,*** 4. ***HALT,*** 5. ***FRONT.*** Executed as prescribed for the rifle platoon (p. 52).

(3) *To form line on right* or *left.* The platoon being in column of squads, to form line on right or left, the command is: 1. ***On right (left) into line,*** 2. ***MARCH,*** 3. ***Platoon,*** 4. ***HALT,*** 5. ***FRONT.*** Executed as prescribed for the rifle platoon. The squads come on the line without interval.

h. Movements from march column. (1) *Movement of carts in forming line from march column.* The carts are moved to their normal positions in rear of their respective squads and conform to the movements of the squads. If the command ***HALT*** is given in forming line before the squads, less the mule leaders, assistant mule leaders, and transportation, have advanced a distance equal to the length of the squad with carts, the mule leaders incline toward the rear of the new formation sufficiently to permit them to bring the carts directly in rear of their squads. The command: 1. ***Carts double time,*** 2. ***MARCH,*** may be given to hasten the completion of any movement from march column.

(2) *To form line to a flank.* The platoon being in march column, to form line to a flank, the command is: 1. ***Squads right (left),*** 2. ***MARCH.*** At the command ***MARCH*** the squads execute ***Squads right*** as prescribed for the rifle platoon (pp. 45 and 53). Carts are moved as prescribed in (1) above.

(3) *To form line to the front.* The platoon being in march column, to form line to the front, the command is: 1. ***Right (left) front into line,*** 2. ***MARCH,*** 3. ***Platoon,*** 4. ***HALT,*** 5. ***FRONT.*** The squads in ranks execute ***Right front into line*** as prescribed for the rifle platoon. The carts are moved as described in (1) above.

(4) *To form line on right or left.* The platoon being in march column, to form line on right or left, the command is: 1. ***On right***

(left) into line,* 2. *MARCH,* 3. *Platoon,* 4. *HALT,* 5. *FRONT. The squads, less mule leaders, assistant mule leaders, and transportation, execute ***On right into line*** as prescribed for the rifle platoon (p. 53). The carts are moved as described in (1) above.

i. To change direction. (1) Change of direction is made by the same commands and in a manner similar to that prescribed for the rifle platoon.

(2) When the platoon is in line, change of direction is made by the same commands and in a manner similar to that prescribed for the rifle platoon in line.

j. To increase or diminish intervals. The platoon being in line, or in line with intervals, to increase or diminish the interval between subdivisions, the command is: 1. ***Extend (close) on right (left) squad (so many paces),*** 2. ***MARCH,*** 3. ***Platoon,*** 4. ***HALT.*** If at a halt (the right (left)) squad marches forward at the command ***MARCH.*** If marching, it continues to march, halting at the command of the platoon leader when it has advanced the desired distance. Other squads march by the most convenient route until opposite their new places at the prescribed interval, when they resume marching to the front and halt on the new line at the command of their leaders.

k. To form and to break up march column. (1) *To form march column.* The platoon being at a halt in any formation except line, the command is: ***FORM MARCH COLUMN.*** The leading guide is posted at the point designated for the head of the column. The squad leaders lead their squads toward the guide and form column of squads without carts. The mule leaders lead the mules toward the rear of the last squad in ranks and form in proper order.

(2) *To break up march column.* The platoon being in march column, to break up march column the command is: ***FORM COLUMN OF SQUADS.*** The leading guide is posted at the point designated for the head of the column. Squad leaders conduct their squads so as to form column of squads. Carts conform by gaining or losing the necessary distance.

l. To form in route order. (1) March column is the habitual formation for route marches, but route order is applicable to any marching formation.

(2) To form in route order, the command is: ***FORM IN ROUTE ORDER.***

(*a*) File closers occupy blank files in the squads, or, if sufficient space is not available, form a squad or squads at the head of the column.

(*b*) The platoon leader marches at the head of the platoon or goes wherever his presence is needed.

(*c*) The platoon sergeant marches at the head or rear of the column and from his post supervises the march of the platoon and assists the platoon leader in control.

(*d*) The transport corporal marches in rear of the last vehicle in the formation and from his post supervises the march of the transportation and assists the platoon leader in control.

(*e*) When marching in route order squads and carts cover and preserve distance. Under favorable marching conditions platoons may be required to maintain cadence. When necessary 2 or more men may be detailed to march behind each cart to assist the carts over rough places.

240. Cart drill, the company.—*a. Organization.* (1) The howitzer company comprises three platoons and a company headquarters and train.

(2) The company is only occasionally drilled as a unit.

b. Formations. (1) The formations of the company are line, line of platoons, column of platoons, column of squads, march column, and march column by platoons.

(2) The company headquarters is not ordinarily formed as a unit for cart drill or ceremonies. Unless otherwise directed, the members are distributed among platoons in such a way as not to interfere with the permanent squad organization of the platoons. For inspections the company headquarters may be formed and inspected as a separate platoon. The company headquarters is formed and commanded by the senior noncommissioned officer or private present.

(3) *Definitions.* (*a*) *Column of squads.* That formation of the company in which the platoons are placed one behind the other, each platoon in column of squads. The distance between platoons in column of squads is 9 paces.

(*b*) *March column.* That formation of the company in which the squads in ranks are formed as a column of squads in close-order drill, the carts following the last squad in ranks at 1-pace distance and in the order corresponding to the squads. This formation is used only for route marching. In *march column by platoons* the platoons are arranged one behind the other, each platoon being in march column. The distance between platoons in march column by platoons is 9 paces.

(*c*) *Line.* That formation of the company in which the platoons, each in line, are abreast, with an interval of 9 paces between platoons.

(*d*) *Line of platoons.* That formation of the company in which the platoons are in column of squads or march column, the leading elements of the platoons abreast. The normal interval between platoons of the company in line of platoons is platoon front (platoon in line) plus 5 paces.

(*e*) *Column of platoons.* That formation of the company in which the platoons, each in line, are placed one behind the other at 10 paces.

c. General rules for cart drill. (1) Platoon leaders repeat such preparatory commands as are to be executed immediately by their platoons, such as ***Forward*** and ***Squads right,*** and the men execute the movement ordered by the company commander (if applying to their platoon) at the command of execution such as ***MARCH*** or ***HALT.*** In movements executed in route step and at ease the platoon leaders repeat the command of execution if necessary. Platoon leaders do not repeat the company commander's commands which are not essential to the execution of a movement by their platoon. Thus, at the company commander's command, ***March column by platoons, leading platoon right by squads,*** the platoon leader of the leading platoon repeats only ***March column right by squads.*** In giving commands or cautions, platoon leaders may prefix the number of their platoons, as: ***First platoon, HALT;*** or ***Second platoon, squads right.***

(2) The company executes the movements explained in Chapter 3 as enumerated, with the exceptions in paragraph 238*a* (2) (p. 109). In proper cases, the word ***company*** is substituted for ***squad*** in the command. The company executes the *assembly,* marches *at*

ease and in *route step,* and diminishes the front of the company in column of squads, march column, or march column by platoons, and the reverse, in accordance with the rules prescribed for the rifle company. It *obliques* and *resumes the direct march,* and executes *squads right, carts right, off carts, on carts,* as explained in para-

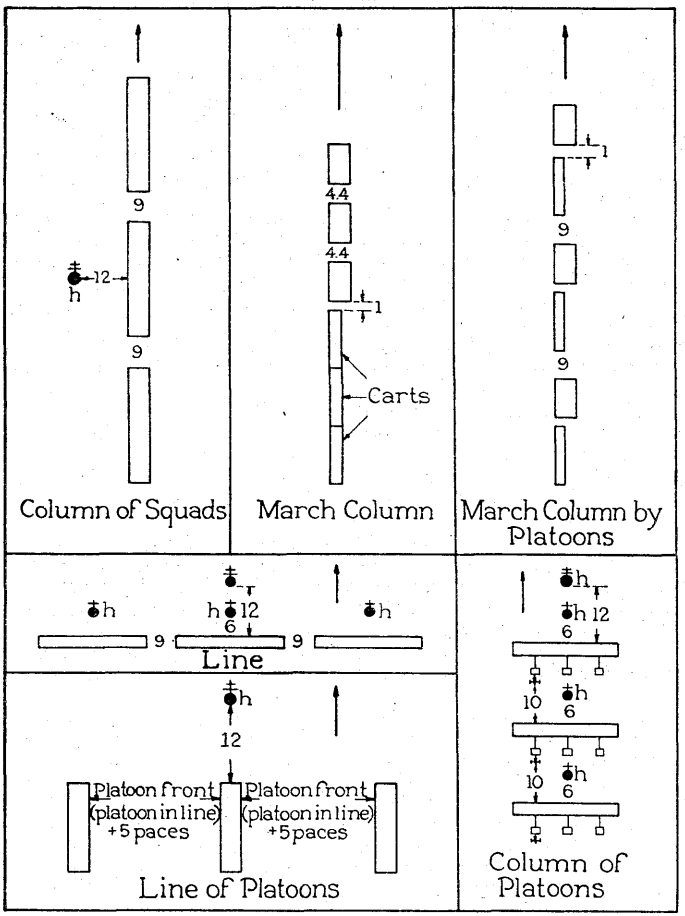


FIG. 42.—Formations of the howitzer company.

graph 238. It executes *squads right* (*left*) *turn,* as explained in paragraph 239 (p. 112). The alignment and column are rectified and the company given a new alignment in accordance with the principles prescribed for the rifle company. The rules and principles governing drills of the platoon govern the drill of the company whenever applicable.

(3) When the formation admits of the simultaneous execution of movements by platoons, the company commander may cause such a movement to be executed by prefixing, when necessary, the word ***platoons*** to the command prescribed therein, such as: 1. ***Platoons, right front into line,*** 2. ***MARCH.*** To complete such simultaneous execution, the commands ***HALT*** or ***MARCH,*** if prescribed, are given by the company commander. The command ***FRONT,*** when prescribed, is given by the platoon leaders.

(4) In movements executed successively by subdivisions, the base unit executes the movement at the command of execution of the company commander. Leaders of other subdivisions command: ***HALT, Continue the march,*** or ***Stand fast,*** as may be required, followed at the proper time by the commands necessary to the completion of the execution of the movement by their element. In successive movements into line, the subdivisions are dressed on the new line by subdivision leaders.

(5) *The guidon.* The guidon is carried by a mounted enlisted man, usually a bugler. The normal post of the guidon is one pace in rear and 3 paces to the right of the company commander and unless otherwise directed it conforms to his position and movements. When the company forms without transportation or when the guidon bearer is dismounted, the guidon is carried as prescribed for the rifle company (Chap. 6, p. 36).

d. To form the company. (1) The company without transportation is formed as prescribed for the rifle company (p. 58).

(2) The company with transportation is formed as follows:

(*a*) The company commander designates the time, formation, and order of assembly. He causes the guidon to be posted at the point of rest where the base unit is to form.

(*b*) Platoon leaders conduct their platoons to the point of assembly of the company. The company headquarters may be formed as a detachment and conducted at the proper time to the point of assembly of the company and take post as shown in Figure 42. The company commander takes his post and commands: ***REPORT.*** Platoon leaders and the leader of the headquarters detachment successively salute and report "Sir, all present or accounted for," or "Sir, ... men absent."

(3) *To form the company for cart drill.* The company having been formed, to form the company for cart drill, the command is: ***FORM FOR CART DRILL.*** At this command, the headquarters detachment is broken up and the personnel assigned to platoons for cart drill.

e. To dismiss the company. (1) The company without transportation is dismissed as prescribed for the rifle company (p. 59).

(2) When the transportation is present the company commander commands: ***DISMISS YOUR PLATOONS.*** Platoon leaders salute and conduct their platoons to the cart park or stables, where platoons are dismissed. The headquarters detachment is dismissed by its leader.

f. Movements from line. (1) *To form column of platoons to a flank.* The company being in line, to form column of platoons to a flank, the command is: 1. ***Platoons right (left) turn,*** 2. ***MARCH.*** The movement is executed by platoons simultaneously.

(2) *To form march column by platoons to the front.* The company being in line, to form march column by platoons to the front, the command is: 1. ***March column by platoons, right (left) platoon right (left) by squads,*** 2. ***MARCH.*** Executed by the

right platoon at the command ***MARCH.*** If the company is marching, the leaders of the center and left platoons halt their platoons. If the company is at a halt, they caution ***Stand fast.*** They command, 1. ***March column, squads right,*** 2. ***MARCH,*** followed by 1. ***Column left,*** 2. ***MARCH,*** in time to follow the preceding platoon at a distance of 9 paces.

(3) *To form march column by platoons to a flank.* The company being in line, to form march column by platoons to a flank, the command is: 1. ***March column by platoons, right (left) platoon squads right (left),*** 2. ***MARCH.*** The movement is executed by platoons successively. If the company is marching, the leaders of the center and left platoons halt their platoons. If the company is at a halt, they caution ***Stand fast.*** The center and left platoons execute the movement at the commands of the platoon leaders in time to follow the preceding platoon at a distance of 9 paces.

g. Movements from column of platoons. (1) *To form line to a flank.* The company being in column of platoons, to form line to a flank, the command is: 1. ***Platoons right (left) turn,*** 2. ***MARCH.*** The movement is executed by platoons simultaneously.

(2) *To form line to the front.* The company being in column of platoons, to form line to the front, the command is: 1. ***Right (left) front into line,*** 2. ***MARCH.*** If marching, the leading platoon halts at the command ***MARCH.*** The platoon leader dresses his platoon to the left. If at a halt, at the command ***Right front into line,*** the leader of the leading platoon commands: ***Stand fast*** and the leaders of the platoons in rear command: ***March column, squads right.*** At the command ***MARCH*** the former dresses his platoon to the left and the latter at the proper time give the command: 1. ***Squads left,*** 2. ***MARCH.*** On arriving one pace in rear of the line established by the leading platoon they halt their platoons and dress them to the left.

(3) *To form march column by platoons to the front.* The company being in column of platoons, to form march column by platoons to the front, the command is: 1. ***March column by platoons, leading platoon right (left) by squads,*** 2. ***MARCH.*** The leading platoon executes ***March column, right by squads*** at the command ***MARCH.*** If the company is marching, the leaders of the rear platoons halt their platoons. If the company is at a halt, they caution ***Stand fast.*** The command: 1. ***March column, right by squads,*** 2. ***MARCH,*** is then given in time to follow the preceding platoon at a distance of 9 paces.

(4) *To form march column by platoons to a flank.* The company being in column of platoons, to form march column by platoons to the flank, the command is: 1. ***March column by platoons, leading platoon squads right (left),*** 2. ***MARCH.*** The movement is executed by the leading platoon at the command ***MARCH.*** If the company is marching the leaders of the rear platoons halt their platoons. If the company is at a halt, the leaders of the rear platoons caution ***Stand fast.*** The command: 1. ***March column, right by squads,*** 2. ***MARCH,*** is then given in time to enable the platoon to reach the ground where the preceding platoon executed squads right, and to follow in march column at a distance of 9 paces.

h. Movements from column of squads. (1) *To form line to the front.* The company being in column of squads to form line to the front, the command is: 1. ***Line to the left (right) front,*** 2. ***Leading platoon left (right) front into line,*** 3. ***MARCH,*** 4. ***Company,*** 5. ***HALT.*** At the command ***Line to the left front,***

the leaders of the rear platoons command: ***Column left.*** At the command ***MARCH,*** the leading platoon executes ***Left front into line.*** The leaders of the rear platoons conduct their platoons to the left until the proper intervals have been obtained when they change direction to the right and command: I. ***Left front into line,*** 2. ***MARCH.*** The platoons are halted and dressed on the line established by the leading platoon.

(2) *To form line to the flank.* The company being in column of squads to form line to the flank, the command is: 1. ***Line to the right (left),*** 2. ***Leading platoon, line to the right (left),*** 3. ***MARCH,*** 4. ***Company,*** 5. ***HALT.*** If at a halt, at the command ***Line to the right (left),*** the leaders of the rear platoon command: ***Forward;*** if marching they caution: ***Continue the march.*** At the command ***MARCH,*** the leading platoon forms line to the right. The rear platoons march forward until the proper interval is obtained when they execute ***Line to the right,*** halt, and dress on the line established by the leading platoon.

(3) *To form line on right or left.* The company being in column of squads to form line on right or left, the command is: 1. ***Line on right (left),*** 2. ***Leading platoon on right (left) into line,*** 3. ***MARCH,*** 4. ***Company,*** 5. ***HALT.*** If the company is marching, at the command ***Line on right,*** the leaders of the rear platoons caution: ***Continue the march.*** If the company is at a halt they command: ***Forward.*** At the command ***MARCH,*** the leading platoon executes ***On right into line.*** The rear platoons move forward until the proper interval is obtained when they execute ***On right into line*** at the command of the platoon leaders, halt and dress on the line established by the leading platoon.

i. Movements from march column by platoons. (1) *To form column of platoons to the front.* The company being in march column by platoons to form column of platoons to the front, the command is: 1. ***Column of platoons,*** 2. ***Platoons left front into line,*** 3. ***MARCH,*** 4. ***Company,*** 5. ***HALT.*** The movement is executed simultaneously by platoons. When the command ***HALT*** is given by the company commander, the rear platoons continue to march until they are halted by their leaders at a distance of 10 paces from the preceding platoon.

(2) *To form column of platoons to a flank.* The company being in march column by platoons, to form column of platoons to a flank, the command is: 1. ***Column of platoons,*** 2. ***Leading platoon squads right (left),*** 3. ***MARCH,*** 4. ***Company,*** 5. ***HALT.*** The movement is executed by the leading platoon at the command ***MARCH.*** The leaders of the rear platoons, if the company commander's command ***MARCH*** is not immediately followed by ***Company,*** caution their platoons, ***Continue the march*** and execute ***Squads right*** on the same ground as the leading platoon. When the command ***Company*** is given, they caution their platoons ***Continue the march*** and halt them 10 paces from the preceding platoon. If the company commander's command ***MARCH*** is immediately followed by ***Company,*** the leaders of the rear platoons immediately command: 1. ***Column half left,*** 2. ***MARCH,*** followed by 1. ***Column half right,*** 2. ***MARCH,*** 3. ***Squads right,*** 4. ***MARCH,*** 5. ***Platoon,*** 6. ***HALT.*** The last command is given when the platoons have gained a distance of 10 paces from the preceding platoon and have arrived in rear of it.

(3) *To form line to a flank.* The company being in march column by platoons, to form line to a flank, the command is:

1. ***Line to the right (left),*** 2. ***Leading platoon squads right (left),*** 3. ***MARCH,*** 4. ***Company,*** 5. ***HALT.*** The movement is executed by the leading platoon at the command ***MARCH.*** The rear platoons march straight to the front and execute ***Squads right (left)*** at the command of their platoon leaders in time to arrive on line with 9 paces interval from the right flank of the preceding platoon.

(4) *To form line to the front.* The company being in march column by platoons, to form line to the front the command is: 1. ***Line to the left (right) front,*** 2. ***Leading platoon, left (right) front into line,*** 3. ***MARCH,*** 4. ***Company,*** 5. ***HALT.*** At the command ***Line to the left front,*** the leaders of the rear platoons command: ***Column left.*** At the command ***MARCH,*** the leading platoon executes ***Left front into line,*** halts at the command ***HALT*** and dresses to the right. The leaders of the rear platoons conduct their platoons to the left until the proper interval has been obtained, when they change direction to the right and command: 1. ***Left front into line,*** 2. ***MARCH.*** The platoons are halted and dressed on the line established by the leading platoon.

(5) *To form line on right or left.* The company being in march column by platoons, to form line on right or left, the command is: 1. ***Line on right (left),*** 2. ***Leading platoon on right (left) into line,*** 3. ***MARCH,*** 4. ***Company,*** 5. ***HALT.*** The movement is executed as described in paragraph 240*h* (3), except that platoons execute on right into line as described in paragraph 239*h* (4) (p. 117).

j. To change direction. Change of direction is made by the same command and in a manner similar to that prescribed for the rifle company (p. 52).

k. To increase or diminish intervals or distances. (1) The company being in line, or line or platoons, to increase or diminish the interval between platoons, the command is: 1. ***Extend (close) on right (left) platoon, so many paces,*** 2. ***MARCH,*** 3. ***Company,*** 4. ***HALT.*** At the command ***MARCH,*** if at a halt, the right platoon moves forward; if marching, it continues the march. It halts at the command ***HALT.*** At the command ***Extend on right platoon,*** the leaders of the other platoons, if the platoons are in line command: ***Left oblique;*** if the platoons are in column of squads or march column, they command: ***Column half left.*** The platoons march until opposite their new places at the prescribed interval when they change direction at the commands of the platoon leaders and are halted on the line established by the right platoon.

(2) Intervals may be increased or diminished by first closing or extending the platoons as described above and then closing or extending the squads within the platoons.

(3) (*a*) The company being in column of platoons or column of platoons at increased distances, to diminish the distance between platoons, the command is: 1. ***Close on leading platoon, (so many) paces,*** 2. ***MARCH.*** If at a halt, the leading platoon stands fast; if marching, it halts at the command ***MARCH.*** If at a halt, at the command ***Close on leading platoon, (so many) paces,*** the leaders of the center and rear platoons command ***Forward.*** If marching they caution ***Continue the march.*** The center and rear platoons are marched forward and halted by their platoon leaders at the designated distance from the preceding platoon.

(*b*) The company being in column of platoons, to increase the distance between platoons, the command is: 1. ***Extend on rear***

platoon, (so many) paces, 2. ***MARCH.*** If at a halt the rear platoon stands fast; if marching, it halts at the command ***MARCH.*** If at a halt, at the command ***Extend on rear platoon, (so many) paces,*** the platoon leaders of the leading and center platoons command ***Forward.*** If marching they command, ***Continue the march.*** The leading and center platoons are marched and halted by their platoon leaders at the designated distance from the platoon in rear.

l. To form in route order. (1) March column and march column by platoons are the habitual formations for route marches, but route order is applicable to any marching formation.

(2) To form in route order the command is: ***FORM IN ROUTE ORDER.***

(*a*) The company headquarters forms and marches at the head of the company.

(*b*) The company commander marches at the head of the company, but goes wherever his presence is needed.

(*c*) A mounted officer habitually marches in rear of the last element of the company and assists the company commander in preserving march discipline and in the control of the company.

(*d*) When marching in route order, subdivisions of the company cover and preserve distance. Under favorable marching conditions the company may be required to maintain cadence.

SECTION X

THE MACHINE-GUN SQUAD, PLATOON AND COMPANY

241. Introduction.—*a.* Drill, the machine-gun squad, platoon and company, consists of (1) close-order drill, (2) gun and battery drills, and (3) transportation and cart drills.

(1) *Close-order drill.* (*a*) Individual instruction in basic subjects such as the position of the soldier, facings, salutes, steps, and marchings, is carried out as prescribed for rifle units.

(*b*) Machine-gun units execute close-order drills as prescribed for corresponding rifle units with the exception of the manual of arms. For the execution of close-order drill, squads are organized to conform to the organization of rifle squads. Extra numbers are placed in the file closers or blank files, or new squads are organized as may become necessary. The members of the company headquarters and the company train are assigned to squads for close-order drill.

(*c*) At formations of the company and for drill and ceremonies, the rifle is carried slung over the right shoulder, butt down, barrel to the rear. Men armed with the rifle do not execute any movements of the manual of arms except *inspection arms.* Rifles are unslung only at the commands ***Inspection arms, Rest, Fall out,*** or when especially directed.

(*d*) Close-order drill is executed as a continuous part of garrison training for the purpose of developing discipline and the orderly movements of units in close order formations. In the field, when practicable, close-order drills are given to maintain smartness and precision.

(2) *Gun and battery drills.* (*a*) In drill with the gun, two objects must be kept in mind:

(i) To develop accuracy and speed in handling the gun.

(ii) To develop discipline, which is the most essential part of the soldier's training.

(*b*) The gun squad must be trained as a unit so that its individual members work together smoothly, quickly, and effectively. When the squad becomes proficient in the various gun drills, and when teamwork has been developed, instruction is given at night, or with the men blindfolded, to accustom them to handling the gun by touch rather than by sight. The best men are selected as gunners and Nos. 2 and 3. Every man in the squad is thoroughly trained in the duties of every other man in order that the service of the gun will not be affected by casualties.

(*c*) To secure the objects set forth in subparagraph (*a*), all movements are executed at attention unless otherwise ordered. Men not participating in the movement execute *stand at ease* or *at ease* as ordered by the instructor.

(3) *Transportation and cart drills.* (*a*) The animals and carts being an integral part of the machine-gun squad, all men in the squad are trained in harnessing, hitching, loading the carts, and leading the mule. Mule leaders are selected from those men who demonstrate special ability in the care and handling of animals. Once selected, mule leaders should be held responsible for the care and handling of the transportation under their charge.

(*b*) Cart drill consists of drill by the squad, platoon, and company, with the appropriate transportation. The objects of cart drill are:

(i) To instruct the men to drill, maneuver, and march with the carts.

(ii) To secure uniform methods of executing the various movements.

(iii) To instruct the men in the proper methods of handling the animals.

(iv) In addition to the above drills special training must be given all members of the company in care and handling of animals. Time for this training will be incorporated in the training schedule of the organization and will be used to instruct the men in feeding, watering, grooming, care of feet, harness adjustment, and remedies for minor injuries. Higher commanders will so arrange the scheduled hours of instruction that sufficient time for care of animals and equipment is provided.

b. General rules for drills and formations. (1) The drills and formations of the machine-gun squad, platoon, and company are governed by the same rules which govern the drill of the rifle squad, platoon, and company wherever such rules are applicable.

(2) Certain exceptions to the above, made necessary by the presence of the guns or carts, are specified in the sections governing gun, battery, and cart drills.

242. Elementary gun drill, the squad.—*a. Object and scope.* (1) The primary purpose of elementary gun drill is to teach the duties of Nos. 1, 2, and 3 in mounting and dismounting, loading and unloading the gun.

(2) The most important consideration is the development of accuracy. When accuracy has been obtained, emphasis is then placed on the development of speed.

b. Organization of the squad. (1) The gun squad, less transportation, consists of 1 corporal and 10 privates with the squad gun equipment. The corporal commands the squad, No. 1 is the gunner, No. 2 the loader and assistant gunner, and Nos. 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, and 8 are ammunition and water carriers. Nos. 9 and 10 (mule leaders) act as ammunition carriers and replacements during gun drill.

(2) Each man is given a permanent number in the gun squad. When any number is absent, or becomes a casualty, each higher number takes the place of the next lower number.

c. General rules. (1) *Equipment required.* The following articles of equipment are required for elementary gun drill: Tripod and gunner's pouch, gun with cover or portable gun rest, ammunition box, ammunition belt containing a few dummy cartridges, water box, and any convenient target such as the manipulation target or a stake with an aiming point on it.

(2) *Movements.* (*a*) When formed for elementary gun drill, the squad executes the *halt, steps* (except *side* steps) and *marchings* (except *to the rear* and *by the flank*), *rests* and *resumes attention,* and, when in close order formation, *obliques, resumes the direct march, obtains* and *preserves the alignment,* and *turns on the moving pivot,* as prescribed for rifle units.

(*b*) In elementary gun drill movements will be limited to those necessary to put the squad in the proper place for the execution of gun drill.

d. To form the gun squad. (1) the corporal places himself 3 paces in front of where the center of the squad is to be and commands: ***FALL IN.*** The squad forms in two ranks of 4 men each.

(2) When the squad is a part of a larger unit, the corporal forms in the line of file closers in rear of the right file.

(3) The corporal then commands: ***NUMBER OFF.*** At this command, all except the right file execute *eyes right* and, beginning on the right, call off successively from right to left as follows: 1, 2, 3, 4 (front rank), 5, 6, 7, 8 (rear rank), 9, 10 (file closers). Each man turns his head and eyes to the front as he calls off.

e. To secure equipment. Normally, equipment for gun drill is secured before the squad is formed. At any time after the squad has been formed, the squad being in any formation, to secure equipment, the command is: ***SECURE EQUIPMENT FOR ELEMENTARY DRILL.*** At this command, the men fall out and each secures equipment as follows:

No. 1. Tripod and gunner's pouch.

No. 2. Gun with gun cover or portable gun rest.

No. 3. Ammunition box, ammunition belt with dummy cartridges and water box.

No. 4. Target.

After the equipment is secured the squad assembles without command in the original formation.

f. To lay out equipment. (1) The squad being in any formation the command is: ***LAY OUT EQUIPMENT FOR ELEMENTARY DRILL.*** At this command, the equipment is laid out as follows: (See Fig. 43.)

(*a*) Tripod with trail to the rear at the position designated by the instructor.

(*b*) Gun, with muzzle to the front, resting on gun cover or portable rest, 3 paces to the left of and on line with the tripod.

(*c*) Ammunition box 3 paces in rear of the center of the interval between the gun and tripod, the water box on the left of and on line with the ammunition box. Lid of the water box and latch of the ammunition box to the front.

(*d*) Target at any convenient distance in front of the tripod as designated by the instructor.

(2) As soon as the equipment is laid out, the squad reforms on No. 1 who takes position 8 paces in rear of the tripod.

(3) After the squad reforms the instructor cautions the squad that No. 1 is to repeat all commands, and No. 2 to transmit all signals.

g. To post the gun squad. (1) The squad being formed after laying out equipment for elementary gun drill, the command is: ***POSTS.*** At this command Nos. 1, 2, and 3 move at a run and take prone positions, facing their equipment, as follows:

No. 1 on the left of the tripod.
No. 2 on the left of the gun.
No. 3 on the left of the ammunition and water boxes.
Nos. 4 to 10 stand fast unless otherwise directed.

They may be called up to a convenient position near the gun to observe the drill.

(2) The gun being mounted and the members having left the gun, at the command ***POSTS,*** all members take their proper positions as prescribed in paragraph 242*m*.

h. To stand clear of the gun or the gun equipment. The equipment being laid out or the gun being mounted, the command is: ***STAND CLEAR.*** At this command all numbers at the gun equipment spring to their feet and step back 3 paces without disturbing the equipment and remain at attention.

i. To change numbers and duties in the squad. (1) The squad being in any formation, the command is: ***FALL OUT ONE (TWO, THREE*** or any number in the squad). At this command, No. 1 takes the position of the last number of the squad. No. 2 calls out: ***ONE,*** and moves to the position of No. 1. No. 3 calls out: ***TWO,*** and moves to the position of No. 2, and so on throughout the squad, each man moving up one number. When a number other than No. 1 is directed to fall out, he takes the position of the last number of the squad. The numbers following the designated number call out their new numbers and move to their new positions. The men preceding the designated number do not change their positions.

(2) This rotation in elementary gun drill is made in order to train all members of the squad in the duties of Nos. 1, 2, and 3, and to simulate casualties. During the earlier stages of elementary gun drill this command is given only after a movement or command has been completely executed. After each member of the squad is familiar with the duties of Nos. 1, 2, and 3 the command may be given before the completion of a movement. In such cases, each man at once stays the execution of his duties and takes up the duties of his new number.

j. To examine the gun equipment. (1) The equipment being laid out the command is: ***EXAMINE EQUIPMENT.*** At this command each man examines the gun equipment as described below:

(*a*) No. 1 examines the tripod and sees that:

(i) The trail is so adjusted that when the tripod is mounted, it will be at the proper height for him. He then closely folds and clamps the legs.

(ii) The strap is securely buckled around the trail.

(iii) The cradle is aligned over the trail.

(iv) The traversing clamp is tight.

(v) The traversing dial is clamped.

(vi) The trunnion and elevating pins are inserted properly and turned down.

(vii) The elevating arc is clamped near its center.

(viii) The elevating-screw threads are exposed about 1 inch.

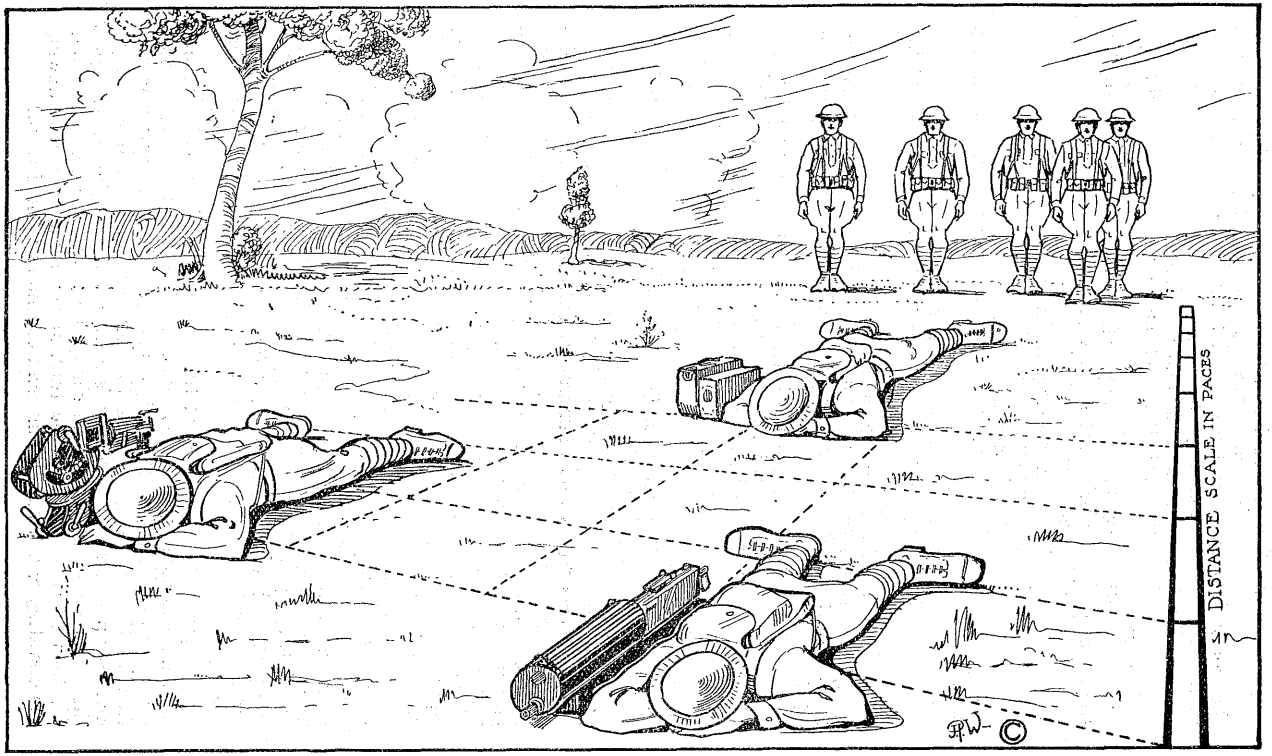


FIG. 43.—The squad posted for elementary gun drill.

(ix) The oil can is filled.

(x) The contents of the gunner's pouch are complete and the pouch is securely fastened on the left side of the cradle back of the ammunition box supports.

(b) No. 2 examines the gun as follows:

(i) Pulls back the latch and raises the rear sight leaf and cover.

(ii) Pulls back on the bolt handle and engages the extractor cam plunger behind the extractor feed cam.

(iii) Sees that:

1. The muzzle is pointed to the front.
2. The muzzle gland is screwed in tight.
3. The barrel is clear.
4. The steam plug cork is inserted in the steam plug cork hole.
5. The water plugs are screwed in tightly.

(iv) Allows the bolt to go forward, lowers and latches the cover.

(v) Pulls the trigger.

(vi) Sees that the lower edges of the sight adjustment plate are set at 700 and the wind gauge is set at zero, and lowers the sight leaf.

(c) No. 3 examines the belts and boxes and sees that:

(i) The cartridges are correctly placed and aligned.

(ii) The belts are clean and dry.

(iii) The belts are correctly packed in the box.

(iv) The box lid is closed and fastened and the latch is toward the front.

(v) The water box lid is screwed in and toward the front and the outlet cap is tight.

(d) Upon completion of the examination of the equipment No. 3 reports "Ammunition correct" (or the deficiencies noted); No. 2 reports "Gun and ammunition correct" (or the deficiencies noted); and No. 1 reports "All correct" (or the deficiencies noted). A thorough examination of the gun equipment is made at the beginning and at the end of the drill. A careful inspection will be made to insure that the ammunition belts contain no live rounds. Upon change of numbers within the squad such examination of equipment is made as will insure that the equipment is in proper condition for the execution of the drill, but no reports are made.

k. To mount the tripod. The position at which the tripod is to be mounted having been designated, the command is: ***MOUNT TRIPOD.*** At this command No. 1 grasps the right side of the cradle with his right hand, springs to his feet, runs forward carrying the tripod with him (steadying it with the left hand if necessary) and places it on the ground at the designated position. He then straddles the trail, and, with the right hand forward and the left hand to the rear, he unclamps the legs with a sweeping movement. (See Figure 44.)

He grasps the right side of the cradle with his right hand, and, with his left hand at the front spacer, raises the tripod and swings the legs to the front. With the left hand grasping the front spacer he steadies the tripod by placing the left forearm on the left thigh, glances up to see that the trail is aligned with the target, sees that the traversing dial is level, and clamps both legs with his right hand. He then sits down behind the trail, at the same time withdrawing the elevating and trunnion pins, and continues to hold them.

l. To dismount the tripod. At the command ***DISMOUNT TRIPOD,*** No. 1 replaces the elevating and trunnion pins and turns them down. He grasps the right side of the cradle of the tripod with his right hand, springs up and, steadying it with his left hand if necessary, turns to the left, and carries the tripod back at a run to a point 1 pace in rear of the original position or to some other designated point. He places it on the ground, trail to the rear, straddles the trail, and unclamps both legs simultaneously, allowing the tripod to collapse. He then grasps the tripod with his left hand at the front spacer and his right hand at the right side of the cradle and stepping forward 1 pace folds the legs back along the trail with a short upward, forward, and downward movement. He raises the front end of the tripod off the ground with his left hand at the

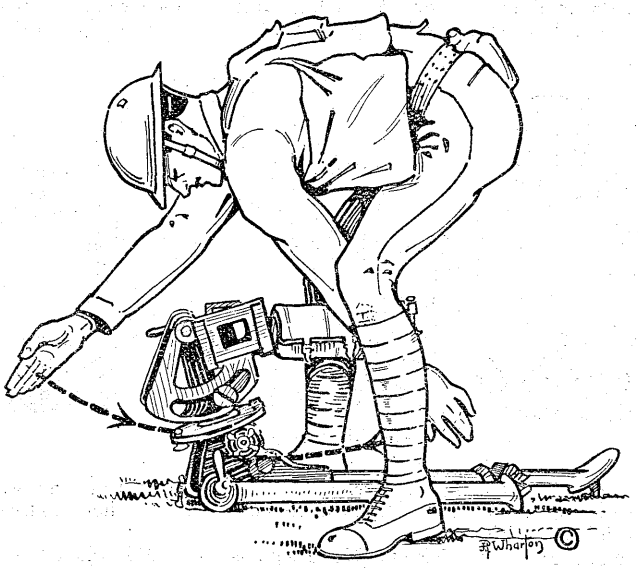


FIG. 44.—Mounting the tripod.

spacer, clamps both legs with his right hand, lowers the tripod to the ground, and takes the prone position to the left of the tripod.

m. To mount the gun. At the command ***MOUNT GUN,*** the tripod is mounted. As soon as the tripod is nearly in position, No. 2 grasps the grip of the gun with his right hand, passes his left hand over and under the water jacket, raises the gun under his left arm, moves forward at a run, and takes position on the left of the tripod and facing it. He reaches the position at the moment No. 1 removes the elevating and trunnion pins. No. 2 places his left foot between the front legs of the tripod and kneels on his right knee while supporting the weight of the gun on his left knee. Retaining his grasp of the grip with his right hand, he places the gun in position, inserts the trunnion pin with his left hand, and turns it down to the front.

He then lies down on the left of and facing the gun, feet to the rear, head below and in rear of the feed way. No. 1 aligns the hole in the elevating screw with the hole in the elevating bracket and, as soon as No. 2 starts the trunnion pin into the trunnion block, inserts the elevating pin and turns it down. No. 1 then assumes the normal firing position. He sits in rear of the trail shoe, straddling the trail, with feet under the tripod. The knees are drawn up and turned out and the elbows are supported on the inner surfaces of the thighs. The thumb of either hand is placed in rear of the stock and the forefinger on the trigger, the remaining fingers not touching the gun. The other hand is held near the side plate ready to tap. The head is held erect and the eyes are directed toward the target.

No. 3 takes forward one ammunition and one water box. He places the ammunition box with the latch to the right, so that it is in the loading position and in line with the feed way. He places the water box with the lid up in front of and leaning against the

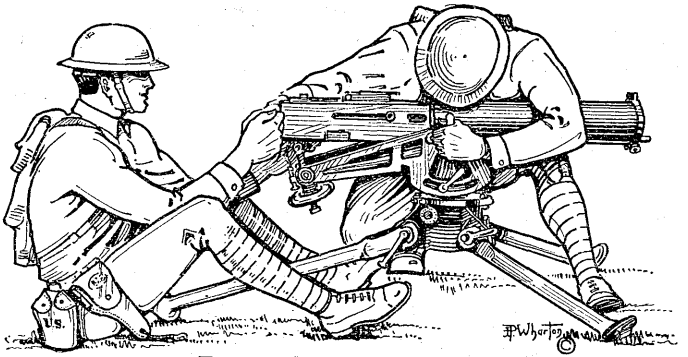


FIG. 45.—Mounting the gun.

left leg of the tripod. He arrives with the ammunition and water boxes at the moment No. 2 starts to lie down. He then returns to his original position.

No. 1 calls out: ***UP*** and No. 2 signals: ***READY*** when the gun is mounted and the equipment is in the proper place.

n. To dismount the gun. At the command ***DISMOUNT GUN,*** No. 1 removes the elevating and trunnion pins, and, at the same time, No. 2 places the ammunition and water boxes to the left so as to be clear of his own position. He then springs to his feet, lifts the gun from the tripod (holding it as described in *Mount gun*), turns to the left and runs to the original position. He places the gun on the gun cover or portable gun rest, muzzle to the front, and sees that:

(*a*) The gun is unloaded.
(*b*) The trigger is pulled.
(*c*) The lower edges of the sight adjustment plate are set at 700.
(*d*) The wind gauge is set at zero.
(*e*) The sight leaf is down.

He then resumes the prone position to the left of the gun.

As soon as No. 2 has removed the gun, No. 1 dismounts the tripod as described in paragraph 242*l*.

No. 3 runs forward, arriving at the gun as No. 2 places the ammunition and water boxes clear of his position, and brings them back to his original position. He then takes the prescribed prone position.

o. To load and to half load the gun. (1) *To load the gun.* At the command ***LOAD,*** No. 1 advances his right hand to a point opposite the belt exit and holds it in a position ready to grasp the brass tag of the belt.

No. 2 opens the ammunition box, grasps a fold of the belt between the thumb and forefinger of the right hand at the point where the brass tag joins the fabric, and pushes the tag through the feed opening as far as possible. No. 2 is responsible that the belt is straight and will feed properly, and that the cover is latched.

No. 1 grasps the tag as it is pushed from the belt exit and gives it a quick jerk to the right. He next quickly pulls the bolt handle to its rearmost position and releases it. He again pulls the bolt handle to its rearmost position and releases it. The gun is then fully loaded. No. 1 resumes his proper position at the gun.

(2) *To half load the gun.* At the command ***HALF LOAD,*** the operation is the same as described in subparagraph (1) except that the bolt handle is pulled to its rearmost position and released only once.

p. To unload the gun. (1) At the command ***UNLOAD,*** No. 1 pulls back the latch with his left hand, raises the sight leaf with his right hand, and then raises the cover with the same hand. No. 2 lifts the belt up and removes it from the feed way, packs it carefully in the ammunition box and closes the box. No. 1 lowers the extractor with the left hand and the cover with the right, pulls the bolt handle once to its rearmost position, and releases it, at the same time lowering the sight leaf with his left hand. After the bolt handle is released he resumes the proper position and pulls the trigger.

(2) In units equipped exclusively with machine guns constructed so the the sight leaf will not strike the water jacket when the cover is raised, raising the sight leaf before the cover is raised is not required. In any case the cover will not be raised by the sight leaf.

q. To clear the gun. At the command ***CLEAR GUN,*** No. 1 pulls back the latch and raises the sight leaf and cover. No. 2 lifts the belt and removes it from the feed way. No. 1 then pulls the bolt handle to its rearmost position and engages the extractor cam plunger behind the extractor feed cam and sees that the cartridge is ejected.

243. Advanced gun drill, the squad.—*a. Equipment required.* (1) In the earlier stages of training in advanced gun drill, only the gun equipment necessary for the particular drill is required. When all members of the squad are familiar with the duties of Nos. 1, 2, and 3, all the equipment of the squad is used and each number made familiar with it.

(2) During advanced gun drill whenever any or all of the squad equipment is used, responsibility and procedure are as follows:

(*a*) *Corporal.* He carries the clinometer on his belt and in addition carries the spare barrel, and cleaning rod.

(*b*) *No. 1.* He carries the tripod with the gunner's pouch attached.

(*c*) *No. 2.* He assists at the gun as directed by No. 1 and, when water is used, keeps the water jacket filled. He carries the gun, with flash-hider and steam-condensing device attached, and the asbestos mittens.

(*d*) *No. 3.* He is responsible for the supply of ammunition, water, oil, and spare parts to the gun position and the return of all empty belts and boxes to the point to which the carriers bring the supplies. He carries one box of ammunition and one water box with a carrying sling.

(*e*) *Nos. 4 to 10, inclusive.* They are responsible for the supply of ammunition, water, oil, and spare parts to No. 3, and for the return of all empty belts and boxes to the munitions distributing point.

Each number carries 2 boxes of ammunition or an equivalent load by means of a carrying sling. No. 4 of odd-numbered squads carries the section spare parts box in place of one box of ammunition.

(3) Whenever any part or all of the equipment is used, it is laid out for drill and posts are taken by squad numbers as shown in Figure 41. The manipulation or other target, if used, is set out 1000 inches from where the gun is to be mounted.

b. To carry gun equipment by hand. At the command ***BY HAND,*** No. 1 clamps the legs of the tripod with the front legs making an angle of about 90° with the trail. The tripod is carried with the front legs over the shoulders and the trail lying flat against the back. When the gun cover is part of the equipment ordered for drill, No. 2 places the gun in its cover. He places the asbestos mittens on either shoulder, and then places the gun on the mittens with the left side plate down and holds the gun at the grip with his hand. The remainder of the squad place the carrying slings over their shoulders and adjust the ammunition and water boxes, and the spare parts box if carried, to the straps. Other equipment, such as base and aiming stakes, is secured and carried in the most convenient manner. The squad is then marched in the desired direction.

c. To mount the gun in low position. (1) Before the gun is mounted in the lowest position the tripod may be in any of the following adjustments:

(*a*) Folded in the usual way with the trail set at an angle suitable for the normal sitting position.

(*b*) The trail set at an angle suitable for the lowest position so that it will not have to be adjusted after mounting.

(*c*) The trail set at an angle suitable for the lowest position so that it will not have to be adjusted after mounting, and, in addition, the two legs instead of being alongside the trail are swung forward, upward, and backward, pointing in the air.

(*d*) The tripod adjusted for carrying on the back.

(*e*) The tripod mounted for the low position prior to being brought forward.

The tripod may be carried forward in the usual way, by crawling and dragging the tripod, or by crawling with the tripod carried on the back.

(2) When, before mounting, the tripod is adjusted in the usual way with the trail set at a suitable angle for the normal sitting position, at the command ***MOUNT GUN,*** No. 1 crawls with the tripod to the position indicated, places it on the ground, lies down on the right side of it with his feet to the front, and loosens the

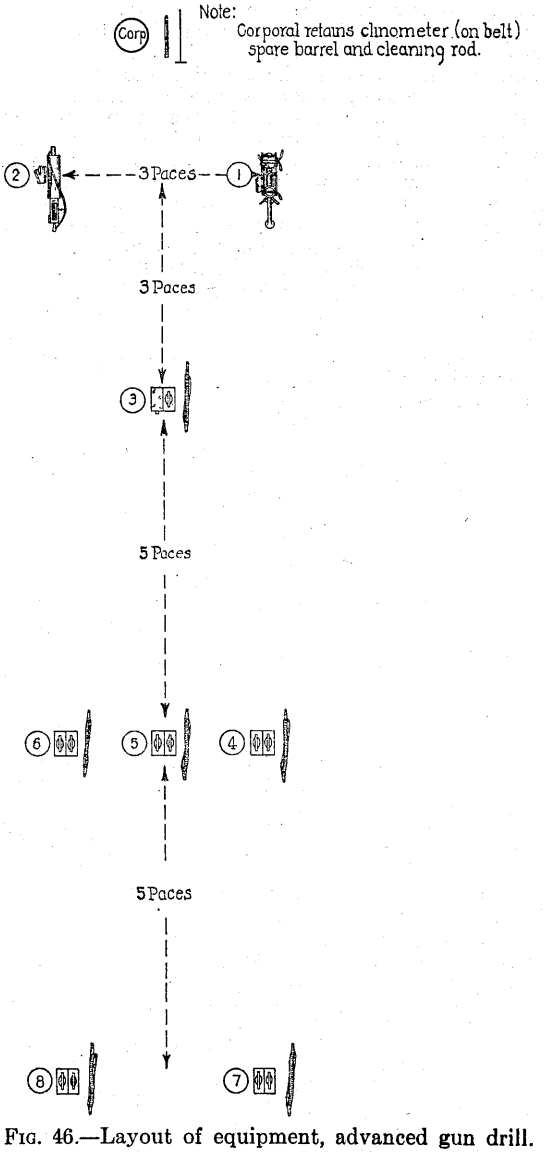


FIG. 46.—Layout of equipment, advanced gun drill.

trail and leg clamps. He then adjusts the legs by rolling the tripod to the right and left and raises the socket about 1 inch from the ground, supporting the socket in the palm of his left hand. Keeping the socket upright, he clamps the trail clamp and then tightens the leg clamps. He then removes the trunnion and elevating pins. No. 2 carries the gun to the position by crawling. He lies down on the left of the tripod with his head to the front and, assisted by No. 1, places the gun on the tripod. No. 1 inserts the trunnion pin, No. 2 the elevating pin. No. 3 crawls up with the ammunition and water boxes. When the gun is mounted No. 1 lies down on the right of the tripod, feet to the front, left leg crossed over the right, with his head and shoulders supported by the legs of No. 2.

The right leg of No. 2 is doubled up to give support at the proper height to the neck of No. 1. When the gun is mounted the shoes themselves and not the tubular portion of the legs and trail rest on the ground and the bottom of the socket is at least 1 inch from the ground.

d. To dismount the gun from low position. The gun is dismounted at the position of mounting in the manner prescribed for elementary gun drill.

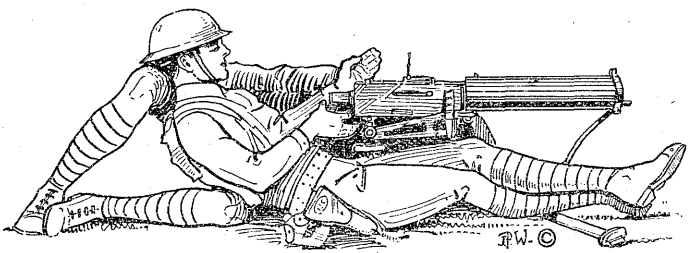


FIG. 47.—The gun mounted in low position.

e. To mount the gun on sloping ground. (1) Throughout this drill the squad is taught to mount the gun on varying slopes engaging targets uphill, downhill, and to the right and left along the slope of the hill. The gun is not mounted until reasonable progress has been made in mounting the tripod. All men are trained to mount the tripod on any kind of ground.

(2) The gun position having been designated on sloping ground and the target indicated, the command is: ***MOUNT GUN.*** At this command, the gun is mounted as described in elementary gun drill or as in paragraph 243*c*, with the following exception: The trail is pointed downhill on a steep slope, regardless of the direction the gun is to be laid. Nos. 1 and 2 take positions adapted to the ground. No. 3 performs his usual duties.

f. To lay the gun. (1) The gun having been mounted, loaded, or loading having been simulated, the instructor announces the range and designates the target by giving a command similar to the following: 1. ***Range eight hundred,*** 2. ***Paster Number 5.*** In giving the command, the instructor pauses after each element a sufficient length of time to permit No. 1 to repeat it. No. 1 repeats the first element of the command, raises the sight leaf and sets the lower edges of the sight adjustment plate at the range announced. While he is

setting the sight, No. 1 repeats the second element of the command. After completing the sight setting No. 1 manipulates the gun, first by traversing and then by elevating or depressing until the direction and elevation are approximately correct. He then quickly and accurately aligns the sights on the designated point takes the proper position at the gun and calls ***UP.*** The instructor checks the sight setting and aim and points out the errors if any.

(2) If deflection is given in the command, it is announced as the second element, as: 1. ***Range nine hundred,*** 2. ***Sight right 4,*** 3. ***Paster No. 6.*** No. 1, sets the deflection on the wind gauge after he has completed the sight setting. He then lays the gun as described above. Whenever a fairly large change of direction is necessary, No. 2 loosens the traversing clamp at the third command. No. 1 then swings approximately on the target, No. 2 tightens the traversing clamp and No. 1 lays accurately on the target by tapping.

g. To go into action. (1) The steam condensing device is additional equipment required for this drill. It is secured by No. 2 and attached to the gun before the movement begins.

(2) The instructor gives a command similar to the following: 1. ***Range nine hundred,*** 2. ***Paster No. 5,*** 3. ***ACTION.*** The instructor pauses between each element of the command a sufficient length of time to permit No. 1 to repeat it. At the command ***ACTION,*** No. 1 mounts the gun, sets the sights at the range indicated in the command, loads, and accurately lays on the indicated target. He then takes the proper position at the gun and calls ***UP.***

(3) The instructor watches the performance closely and requires that all points learned in previous drills be carefully observed. Each number performs his duties as prescribed for previous drills. When No. 3 has placed the water box in position, he inserts the end of the steam condensing device in the box.

h. To take the gun out of action. (1) *No cover available.* When the gun is in action and cover is too far away to permit the mounted gun being dragged or carried the whole distance, the command is: 1. ***No cover available,*** 2. ***OUT OF ACTION.*** The gun is unloaded and dismounted at the position. If the equipment is to be carried a considerable distance, the command ***BY HAND*** is given after the command ***OUT OF ACTION.***

(2) *Cover close at hand.* When the gun is in action and cover is sufficiently close at hand to permit the mounted gun being dragged to cover before being dismounted, the command is: 1. ***Cover close behind (To the right, left),*** 2. ***OUT OF ACTION.*** The gun is unloaded and the belt packed in the ammunition box. Nos. 1 and 2, assisted by No. 3, if necessary, drag the mounted gun and the ammunition and water boxes to the designated cover where the dismounting is completed.

(3) *Two (three) man load.* When the gun is in action and cover is too far away to permit dragging the mounted gun to cover, but close enough to avoid the necessity of dismounting the gun in the open, the location of cover having been pointed out, the command is: 1. ***Two-man load (three-man load),*** 2. ***OUT OF ACTION.***

(*a*) *Two-man load.* The gun is unloaded and the belt packed in the ammunition box. No. 1, keeping well down, moves to the right of the gun and grasps the ammunition box (passed to him by No. 2) and right leg of the tripod with his right hand and the trail with his left. No. 2 passes the ammunition box to No. 1, grasps

the left leg with his left hand, and the water box and end of the steam tube with his right hand. When both numbers have secured their loads, No. 1 calls ***UP.*** Both numbers spring up and rapidly carry the equipment to the cover designated, where the gun is dismounted. All other numbers at the gun position rush back to cover when the gun is carried back.

(*b*) *Three-man load.* If the distance to cover is great, the three-man load is preferable. The gun is unloaded, and the belt packed in the ammunition box. No. 3 crawls forward to a position on the right of the gun, grasps the ammunition box with his left hand and the right leg with his right hand. No. 2 operates as described for the two-man load. No. 1 grasps the trail with his right hand. When all numbers have secured their loads, No. 1 calls ***UP*** and the squad moves to cover as described for the two-man load.

(4) The object of this drill is to train the squad in the use of cover when taking the guns out of action, and, when cover is not close at hand, speed in taking the equipment to cover, where the gun may be dismounted. Variations from the above prescribed methods are authorized when such variations lead to a better accomplishment of ends sought.

i. To commence firing. (1) The gun being loaded (or loading simulated) and laid on the designated target, the command is: ***COMMENCE FIRING.*** No. 2 taps No. 1 on the back and calls: ***FIRE.*** No. 1 presses the trigger to the rear by an even pressure with the finger in such manner as not to disturb the laying of the gun or influence its vibrations during firing. The eyes are directed at the target. Any tendency to look down at the trigger or elevating handwheel or through the sights while firing must be corrected.

When the command ***COMMENCE FIRING*** is given as a part of and immediately following other elements of a fire order, No. 1 completes the laying of the gun or carries out any other necessary movements before opening fire.

(2) To fire at any desired rate, the command is: 1. ***Slow (medium, rapid),*** 2. ***COMMENCE FIRING.*** The interval between bursts is so regulated that 60, 125, or 250 rounds per minute respectively, are fired, depending on the rate ordered.

(3) To increase (decrease) the rate of fire in progress, the command is: ***FASTER (SLOWER).*** No. 1 changes the rate of fire to the next higher (lower) rate.

j. To suspend firing. The instructor blows a long blast of the whistle and repeats, if necessary, or commands: ***SUSPEND FIRING.*** No. 2 taps No. 1 on the back and calls: ***SUSPEND FIRING.*** No. 1 releases the trigger. Firing stops. The gun, if not loaded, is loaded and held in a position of readiness for instant resumption of firing, sights unchanged.

No. 1 checks the laying of the gun and continues to observe the target or aiming point, or place at which the target disappeared or at which it is expected to reappear. *Suspend firing* is used for short pauses when the target disappears or moves out of range, or when fire is to be shifted to a new target.

k. To cease firing. (1) The command is: ***CEASE FIRING.*** No. 2 taps No. 1 on the back and calls: ***CEASE FIRING.*** No. 1 releases the trigger. Firing stops. The gun, if loaded, is unloaded. The sight is set at 700, the deflection at zero, and the sight leaf laid. Cease firing is used for long pauses, to prepare for change of position.

(2) Commands for suspending or ceasing fire may be given at any time after the fire order has been given, whether the firing has actually commenced or not.

l. To zero the dial. The gun being laid on the designated point, the command is: ***ZERO DIAL.*** The corporal unclamps the traversing dial, turns it until the zero of the dial is opposite the index, and then clamps the dial.

m. To measure an angle. (1) *Horizontal angles.* The gun being laid on the designated point, with the traversing dial at zero the command is: 1. ***Measure the angle right (left),*** 2. ***TO THAT STEEPLE*** (*or point desired*). The corporal loosens the traversing clamp. No. 1 turns the gun until it is aimed at the designated point. The corporal tightens the clamp and announces the angle, as ***Dial***

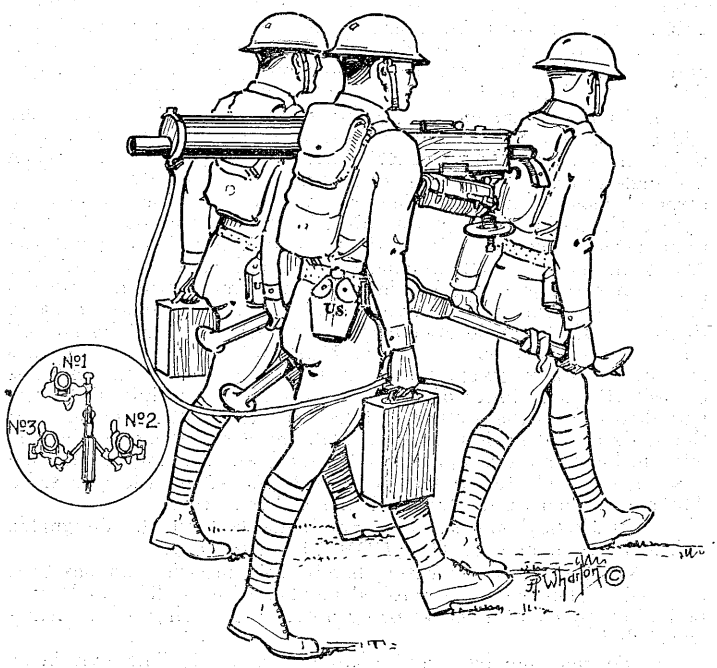


FIG. 48.—Three-man load.

right (left) 2440. If the angle is found to be other than an even division on the dial the corporal moves the gun back to the nearest division, or multiple of 20, and directs the gunner to complete the laying by means of the rear sight. The gunner turns the windage screw to the left (right) until the aim is on the designated point. The corporal then announces the dial and sight reading.

Example: 1. Assume the angle to be measured is right. When the gun is laid on the designated point the index is between 1440 and 1460. The corporal moves the gun back until the index is opposite 1440 and the gunner moves the sight left until the line of aim is on the designated point (left 10). The angle is announced as ***Dial right 1440 Sight left 10.*** (*Angle measured is R 1450*).

Example: 2. Assume the angle to be measured is left. When the gun is laid on the designated point the index is between 5520 and 5540. The corporal moves the gun back to 5540 and the gunner moves the sight right until the line of aim is on the designated point (Right 10). The angle is then announced as ***Dial left 5540 Sight right 10.*** The amount of the angle is then determined by subtracting the amount of the dial reading from 6400, because the dial is graduated clockwise, and adding the sight reading to that result (*Angle measured is L 870*).

Angles of less than 20 mils are measured on the rear sight.

(2) *Vertical angles.* The gun being laid on any point, the command is: 1. ***Measure the angle up (down),*** 2. ***TO THAT CROSSROADS*** (or point desired). No. 1 turns the elevating handwheel until the gun is aimed at the designated point, the corporal notes the angle of elevation or depression by means of the dial or by counting clicks and announces it as: ***10 mils up (down).***

n. To lay off an angle. (1) *Horizontal angles.* The gun being laid on the designated point and the dial having been set at zero, the command is: ***DIAL RIGHT (LEFT) 620 (640, 800).*** When the angle is right, the dial is set as zero, if not already there. The corporal loosens the traversing clamp and turns the gun to the right until the index is opposite 620 on the traversing dial. He then tightens the traversing clamp. If the angle is left, the corporal sets 620 at the index without moving the gun and clamps the dial. The gun is then swung to the left in a similar manner until the index is opposite the zero of the traversing dial and the traversing clamp tightened. If the angle announced is one which cannot be laid off on an even division on the dial, as ***Right 690,*** the corporal proceeds as outlined above except that he turns the gun until the index is opposite the next lower division on the dial, or multiple of 20, 680, and then directs the gunner to take ***Left 10*** on the rear sight. If the angle should be left, as ***Left 690,*** the corporal moves the dial left until the index is opposite the next lower division on the dial (680) and directs the gunner to take ***Right 10*** on the rear sight. The gun is then turned left until the dial is at zero.

(2) *Vertical angles.* The gun being laid on the designated point, the command is: ***UP (DOWN) 5 (10, 17).***

No. 1 turns the elevating handwheel until the gun has been elevated or depressed the required number of mils. The angle may be laid off by counting clicks or by noting the readings of the handwheel dial.

o. To put out base and aiming stakes. (1) The gun being pointed in the desired direction, the command is: ***BASE (AIMING) STAKE OUT.*** At this command, No. 3, with base or aiming stake and shovel, moves to the front of the gun about 20 yards. Under the direction of the platoon sergeant he places the stake in line from the right and drives it in the ground. No. 3 then moves back to his original position in rear of the gun.

Base and aiming stakes are placed in such manner that they will not be shot down during the delivery of fire. This is accomplished by setting the sight at 2000 and driving the stake below the probable lowest elevation for firing.

(2) The base stake having been put out, the gun may be laid on this point at any time by the command ***LAY ON BASE LINE.*** With the sight still set at 2000 No. 1 lays the gun on the designated stake. Aiming stakes are differentiated by color, shape, or some

distinctive mark such as a letter or number. To lay on any particular aiming stake, announce the stake, as: ***On red*** or ***Number 1.***

p. To put on quadrant elevation. The gun being laid for direction, the command is: ***Q. E.*** *(quadrant elevation)* ***20 (45, 80), clinometer at 20 mils.*** No. 1 operates the elevating handwheel until the elevating screw threads are exposed about 1 inch. The corporal loosens the elevating clamping handle and with the clinometer on top of the right side of the gun, with the arc of the clinometer to the rear for a plus quadrant elevation or to the front for a minus one, elevates or depresses the gun until the bubble is approximately centered. He then tightens the elevating handle and accurately centers the bubble by operating the elevating handwheel. No. 1 raises or lowers the rear-sight slide and fixes the line of sighting on any selected auxiliary aiming point and notes the sight setting. If an aiming stake is used which was previously set out, it will usually be found that the allowance for drift on the sight leaf has caused an apparent movement of the line of sighting to the right. This should be corrected by means of the wind gauge and not by moving the gun. In laying on a new aiming point, sights should still be set at 2000 with the wind gauge at zero.

q. To measure the quadrant elevation. The gun being laid on the target with the correct sight setting, the command is: ***MEASURE Q. E.*** At this command, the corporal sets the clinometer on the gun with the arc to the rear if the muzzle is elevated, and with the arc to the front if the muzzle is depressed. Without disturbing the gun he then adjusts the plunger index and bubble holder index until the bubble is centered. The corporal takes the reading and announces the Q. E. giving the number of his gun, as: ***No. 2, Q. E. 16 (minus 15).***

r. Training in immediate action. (1) To maintain proficiency in immediate action, instruction in the reduction of prepared stoppages is introduced from time to time during advanced gun drills

(2) The gun having been loaded with the required stoppages without the knowledge of No. 1, the instructor announces ***GUN FAILS TO FIRE.*** No. 1 applies the correct immediate action, reloads, relays, and resumes simulated firing.

s. Training in attention to points before, during and after firing. (1) To teach the necessity for, and form the habit of, attention to points which must be cared for before, during and after firing, the instructor occasionally throughout advanced gun drill commands: ***ATTENTION TO POINTS BEFORE FIRING (DURING SUSPENSION OF FIRING, AFTER FIRING).*** Members of the squad carry out points to be observed.

(2) The proper care of the gun and equipment and replenishment of water, oil, and ammunition are duties which are performed automatically and without waiting for specific orders.

t. Training in the supply of ammunition, water, oil, and spare parts. Adequate and uninterrupted supply of ammunition, water, oil, and spare parts being essential to the successful employment of the machine gun in combat, training in supply must not be neglected. The squad is first instructed in the operation of the belt-filling machine, establishment and operation of a munitions distributing point, and the functioning of the chain of supply. This instruction having been given, provision for and maintenance of supply is combined with other drills or exercises. Training in supply includes:

(1) *Establishment and operation of a munitions distributing point.*

(*a*) Receipt and storage of ammunition, water, oil, and spare parts.

(*b*) Sorting, cleaning, and filling empty ammunition belts by hand and with the belt-filling machine. Loading of belts with ball or designated proportions of ball, tracer, and armor-piercing ammunition.

(*c*) Packing loaded belts into empty ammunition boxes.

(*d*) Segregation and storage of filled ammunition and water boxes for issuance to carriers as required.

(2) *Operation of the chain of supply.* The gun being mounted and a munitions distributing point having been established, the instructor directs the squad to practice the operation of the chain of supply. The following methods are given as a guide.

(*a*) When the exercise is started, No. 4 brings ammunition to the position of No. 3, secures empty ammunition boxes and belts, and returns to the munitions distributing point for a new supply. Each succeeding number delivers his load as required to the position of No. 3 in a similar manner, and returns to the munitions distributing point for a new supply. As each number secures a new load, he again approaches the position of No. 3, following the man who has preceded him from the munitions distributing point. When the required supply is at the position of No. 3, all carriers take available cover.

(*b*) If the distance to be covered is very short, or if it is difficult for men to pass each other en route, as along a ditch leading to the gun position, boxes may be passed from hand to hand.

(*c*) If the supply is to be maintained across an open space for a short distance, the supply may sometimes be kept up by dragging boxes which have been attached to the emergency rope. One end of the rope being at the gun position, No. 3 makes a loop in the center of the rope and passes it through the handle of an ammunition box, securing it with a stick. No. 2 then pulls the full box to the gun, attaches an empty, and No. 3, pulls it back.

244. Tests, elementary and advanced gun drill, the squad. —*a. General rules.* (1) The tests when given are carried out in accordance with these instructions.

(2) Before a man is tested, he is informed of all details of the test. This may be done by a demonstration of the test.

(3) A reasonable length of time is allowed for the examination of the equipment.

(4) Immediately after a test a man is informed that he passed or failed. If he has failed, the instructor points out the causes of his failure.

(5) Failure to perform the task properly or failure to complete it within the specified time constitutes a failure in the test.

(6) Time is taken from the completion of that portion of the command which starts the movement to the completion of the last movement of the test.

(7) No additional credit is given for completing the test under the prescribed time.

(8) Where No. 1 fails through the fault of No. 2, he is given another test.

(9) No movement is allowed after the signal is given that the test has been completed.

(10) If practicable, these tests are conducted by an officer, otherwise by a noncommissioned officer specially fitted for this work who will function under the close supervision of an officer.

(11) The individual conducting the tests notes all points listed under "performance," and disqualifies all men who fail to perform correctly any of these points.

b. Test in mounting the gun. (1) *Procedure.* As prescribed in paragraph 242*m* (p. 131). The position where the gun is to be mounted is 3 paces from the point where the tripod is laid out for elementary gun drill.

(2) *Time allowed.* 25 seconds.

c. Test in loading the gun. (1) *Procedure.* As prescribed in paragraph 242*o*. The belt is loaded with a few *selected* dummy cartridges and properly packed in the box. The box is closed and fastened prior to the test.

(2) *Time allowed.* Five seconds.

(3) If through no fault of No. 1 the gun is not loaded, No. 1 is credited with passing the test, provided he has correctly performed the required procedure of loading.

d. Test in unloading the gun. (1) *Procedure.* As prescribed in paragraph 242*p*.

(2) *Time allowed.* Five seconds.

(3) The belt is in the ammunition box with lid closed and fastened.

e. Test in dismounting the gun. (1) *Procedure.* As prescribed in paragraph 242*n*. The tripod and gun are carried back to the original position.

(2) *Time allowed.* 15 seconds.

f. Test in laying the gun. (1) *Procedure.* As prescribed in paragraph 243*f* (p. 136). The manipulation target is set up 1000 inches from the gun position. The gun is mounted for the normal sitting position. Before the test is given the gun will be laid on the target so as to be approximately 10 mils off in elevation and 10 mils off in direction from the aiming point which is to be designated. The man being tested will not be informed in advance of the aiming point which will be designated. Any range between 500 and 1200 may be ordered. No deflection will be announced.

(2) *Time allowed.* Ten seconds. Time is taken from the announcement of the range.

(3) The gun must be laid within one-half mil vertically and horizontally of the center of the bottom of the aiming paster.

g. Test in going into action. (1) *Procedure.* As prescribed in paragraph 243*g*. The range and target are announced before the command ***ACTION.*** The position where the gun is to go into action is 3 paces from where the gun is laid out for elementary gun drill.

(2) *Time allowed.* 40 seconds.

h. Test in immediate action. (1) *Preparation.* The test is prepared as follows: Four guns are set on a line with 3-pace intervals between guns. On each gun a different stoppage is prepared, the receiver covered with a cloth, and the firing pin released. At least two of the guns will be prepared with stoppages which will require the execution of the second stage of immediate action. Identical targets are placed in front of each gun. The aiming mark for each gun is such that one designation applies to all of them, for example, "The aiming mark for each gun is to be the black paster in the center of the target in front of each gun." After the stoppage has been prepared the gun is so laid that a slight manipulation of the traversing and elevating gears is necessary in order to lay accurately on the aiming mark. The sight setting on all the guns is the same.

(2) *Procedure.* The man to be tested is called up and given the aiming mark for each gun and the sight setting to be used. He then takes the proper position at the gun. As the instructor removes the cloth from the receiver he announces ***Gun fails to fire,*** and the man undergoing the test immediately applies the necessary immediate action. As soon as he has performed the correct action at this gun he presses the trigger, and the instructor then orders: ***NEXT GUN.*** The man moves as quickly as possible to the gun next in order. Here he takes the correct position without command and, as soon as the cloth is removed from the receiver, applies the correct immediate action. The procedure at the remaining guns is the same as at the second gun. As he presses the trigger of the last gun, the instructor at the gun calls: ***TIME,*** indicating that the man has completed the test.

(3) *Additional rules for test in immediate action.* (*a*) The guns are placed out of sight and not in effective hearing distance of the men waiting to be tested.

(*b*) An officer or noncommissioned officer is at each gun to conduct the test at that gun as well as to grade the man tested.

(*c*) If, after apparently correcting a stoppage and pressing the trigger, the instructor should say, ***The gun still fails to fire,*** the man taking the test then applies the immediate action necessary in that case.

(*d*) The officer or noncommissioned officer conducting the test at each gun, or a man detailed, performs the duties of No. 2 for the man undergoing the test.

(4) *Time allowed.* Two minutes, 40 seconds. Time is taken from the instant when ***Gun fails to fire*** is called at the first gun until the instructor calls: ***TIME,*** at the last gun.

(5) *Performance.* (*a*) The correct immediate action for each stoppage is applied.

(*b*) The gun is loaded.

(*c*) The gun is laid.

(*d*) The trigger is pressed.

245. Transportation, the squad.—*a. Duties of the mule leader.* The chief duties of the mule leader are:

(1) Leading the mule during drill, combat, and on the march.

(2) Training and care of the mule.

(3) Care and adjustment of the harness.

(4) Harnessing and unharnessing.

(5) Hitching and unhitching.

(6) Care of the cart.

b. To lead the mule. When hitched, the mule is led by means of the reins or halter tie rope. The mule leader takes position on the near side of the mule, holding the reins near the bit with his right hand, and holding the loose end of the reins in his left hand. At drills and ceremonies the mule is led with the reins; on the march the halter tie rope may be used. The mule is led with a loose rein and urged on from the rear, if necessary, by a member of the squad. The mule leader never faces or threatens the mule when leading him.

c. To gather the mule. The mule leader raises his right hand until it touches the mule's lower jaw and at the same time exerts a slight pressure with the reins in the direction in which the movement is to be made. The object of gathering the mule is to attract his attention and prepare him for the movement. At all preparatory commands involving a movement of the cart, the mule is gathered in time to cause the movement to begin at the command of execution.

d. To change direction. In all changes of direction the mule is led outward and away from the pivot in order to increase the radius of turning. In a turn to the right, the mule while actually led in the turn, may be better controlled if the mule leader places his right shoulder against the mule and guides him in the turn.

e. To load the carts. At the command ***LOAD CARTS*** the squad under the supervision of its leader secures the squad equipment and loads it on the cart as follows:

(1) *Gun cart.* (*a*) One tripod, strapped to tripod supports on the right side of the ammunition rack by means of the tripod-holding straps.

(*b*) One machine gun in its cover, placed in gun chest, muzzle to the rear, top of gun up.

(*c*) One cleaning rod, in gun chest.

(*d*) One flash hider in gun chest.

(*e*) One steam-condensing device, in gun chest.

(*f*) One pair of asbestos mittens, in gun chest.

(*g*) One spare barrel in its cover, in gun chest.

(*h*) Two water boxes, in ammunition rack, one in front and one in rear, secured by ammunition box holding-down straps.

(*i*) Five ammunition boxes, in ammunition rack, latches up, bevel faces alternating, secured by ammunition box holding-down straps.

(*j*) One horse cover, when ordered to be carried, folded to dimensions of carrier slats and secured to same by means of the carrier straps.

(*k*) One feed bag, strapped on carrier slats.

(*l*) One grain bag, strapped on carrier slats.

(*m*) One collapsible water bucket, strapped on carrier slats.

(*n*) Three carrying slings strapped on carrier slats.

(*o*) One cart paulin, folded to dimensions of carrier slats and secured to same by means of the carrier straps, when not used to cover the cart and equipment.

(*p*) One set of spare mule shoes and nails, in metal tool box.

(*q*) One grooming kit, in metal tool box.

(*r*) One short-handle shovel, inserted over axle, face of shovel up and held in position by the shovel-holding strap.

(*s*) One pick mattock, handle inserted on pick-handle holder and mattock blade secured by pick-holding billet and strap.

(*t*) One broad hatchet, blade placed in hatchet-blade holder on the rear of ammunition rack and handle secured by hatchet-holding strap.

(*u*) One emergency rope, passed through the handgrips on the front cross sill and attached around the front cross sill so that the free ends of the rope, used for pulling or braking the cart, will be of equal length on both sides of the cart. The free ends of the rope are coiled around the ends of the front cross sill over the handgrip. A loop is made at the ends of the rope. This loop is passed under the next to the last coil and secured by passing the free end of the rope through the loop.

(2) *Ammunition cart.* (a) Twelve ammunition boxes, in ammunition rack, latches up, bevel faces alternating, secured by ammunition box holding-down straps.

(*b*) Two water boxes, in right front and rear of ammunition rack, and secured by ammunition box holding-down straps.

(*c*) One tool kit, in left-hand tool chest.

(*d*) One set cleaning and preserving materials, in right-hand tool chest.

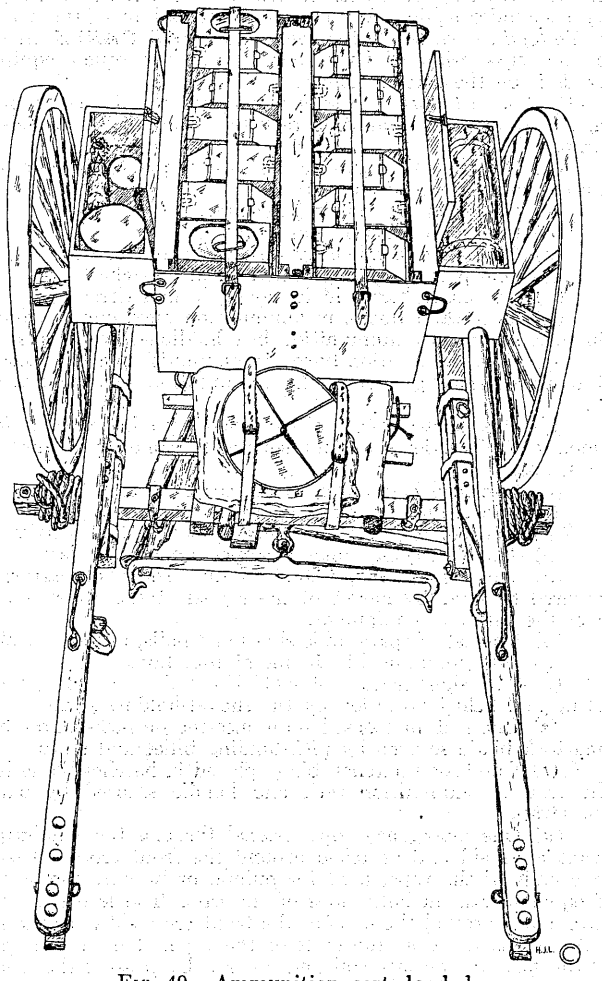


FIG. 49.—Ammunition cart, loaded.

(*e*) One grooming kit, in right-hand tool chest.

(*f*) One set spare parts and emergency repair material, in left-hand tool chest.

(*g*) One horse cover, when ordered to be carried, folded to dimension of carrier slats and secured to same by means of the carrier straps.

(*h*) One cart paulin, folded to dimensions of carrier slats and secured to same by means of the carrier straps, when not used to cover the cart and equipment.

(*i*) One set of spare mule shoes and nails, in right-hand tool chest.

(*j*) One collapsible water bucket, strapped on carrier slats.

(*k*) One feed bag, strapped on carrier slats.

(*l*) One grain bag, strapped on carrier slats.

(*m*) One emergency rope, secured as described for the gun cart.

(*n*) Four carrying slings strapped on the carrier slats.

(3) This equipment may be modified to meet practical requirements of service. The luminous sights, base and aiming stakes, and *T*-bases may be carried on the carts as required by the tactical situation. Platoon equipment, such as the belt-filling machine, or section equipment, may be placed on the carrier slats of one of the carts of the platoon or section. The spare parts box is carried on the gun cart of odd-numbered squads. The equipment, however, is always placed so that the load is evenly balanced. Care will be taken that the weight of extra articles of equipment is not all forward of the axle and that all articles are properly secured to the cart.

246. Cart drill, the squad.—*a. General rules.* (1) The term *squad* as used in cart drill refers to the squad with its transportation. The term *squad in ranks* is used to designate that part of the squad which is formed in two ranks.

(2) The squad executes, as explained in instruction dismounted without arms, *eyes right* or *left,* the *halt, facings, steps,* and *marchings,* except *back step, side step, to the rear* and *by the flank; rests* and *resumes attention,* except that mule leaders do not execute *parade rest* and *stand at ease* but remain at *attention* and execute *at ease,* respectively, instead. The squad is aligned and the alignment is preserved in accordance with the principles prescribed for the rifle squad. A working knowledge of the drill of the rifle squad without arms is necessary before cart drill is taken up.

(3) The squad does not turn on a fixed pivot in any movement in which the carts follow the squad in ranks in trace.

(4) In all changes of direction, except movements by the flank, the mule leaders retain their relative positions.

(5) No. 7 and No. 8 march on the right and opposite the hips of the mules, of the gun and ammunition carts, respectively, and assist the mule leaders.

b. To form the squad. (1) The squad is formed in double rank formation with the following exceptions:

(*a*) Nos. 9 and 10 hold their mules at 1 pace distance from the rear rank and gun cart, respectively.

(*b*) Nos. 7 and 8 take post to the right of the hips of the mules of the gun and ammunition carts, respectively.

(*c*) No. 6 covers No. 4 of the front rank.

(*d*) In numbering off, only the squad in ranks executes *eyes right* and *front.*

(2) In case the squad is depleted in strength the squad numbers are abolished successively from 10 to 6, as may be required. The two highest numbered men remaining are mule leaders. When the squad is depleted, posts occupied by Nos. 8, 7, 6, and 5 of the full strength squad are vacated in that sequence. The corporal of a depleted squad which is formed as part of a larger unit takes the post of No. 4 when the squad strength is reduced to 6 men. When the squad in ranks is reduced to a single rank, the carts close up, the gun cart mule being led at 1 pace distance from the front rank.

c. The oblique march. (1) The squad being in any formation, the command is: 1. ***Right (left) oblique,*** 2. ***MARCH.*** At the command ***MARCH*** the squad in ranks executes the movement in the same manner as the rifle squad. The mule leaders lead the mules in a direction 45° to the right of the original front and preserve their relative positions in the squad. The command ***Halt*** is not given during the oblique march.

(2) To resume the original direction, the command is: 1. ***Forward,*** 2. ***MARCH.*** At the command ***MARCH*** the men half face to the left in marching and then move straight to the front. The mule leaders execute a turn of 45° to the left and lead the mules straight to the front.

d. To turn on a moving pivot. (1) The squad being in line, to turn on a moving pivot, the command is: 1. ***Right (left) turn,*** 2. ***MARCH.*** The squad in ranks executes the movement as prescribed for the rifle squad. The mules are led to conform to the movement of the squad.

2. ***Right (left) half turn*** is executed in a similar manner.

e. To march to the flank. (1) The squad being in line, to march to the flank, the command is: 1. ***Squads right (left), Carts right (left).*** 2. ***MARCH.*** The squad in ranks executes *Squad right* as prescribed for the rifle squad. The mule leaders simultaneously lead to the right independently of the squad in ranks. The mule leaders, after the movement has been executed, guide on the front rank of the squad.

(2) To resume the original direction, the command is: 1. ***Squad left (right), Carts left (right),*** 2. ***MARCH.*** At the command ***MARCH*** the squad in ranks executes *Squad left.* The mule leaders simultaneously lead to the left and resume the normal position in rear of the squad in ranks.

f. To turn about and march. Being in line, to turn about and march, the command is: 1. ***Right (left) about turn,*** 2. ***MARCH.*** The squad executes *Right turn.* Upon completion of this movement the squad executes a second right turn. The mules are led to conform to the movement of the squad.

g. To move directly to the rear. When it is desired to march the squad directly to the rear, the squad, if marching, is halted. The carts are first moved back the desired distance. The squad in ranks is then marched back the desired distance and the squad reformed facing in the original direction.

h. Off carts. To remove the gun equipment and ammunition from the carts, the command is: ***OFF CARTS.***

(1) If marching, the squad halts.

(2) The members of the squad secure equipment as follows:

(*a*) The corporal secures the cleaning rod, and one spare barrel.

(*b*) No. 1 secures the tripod and gunner's pouch.

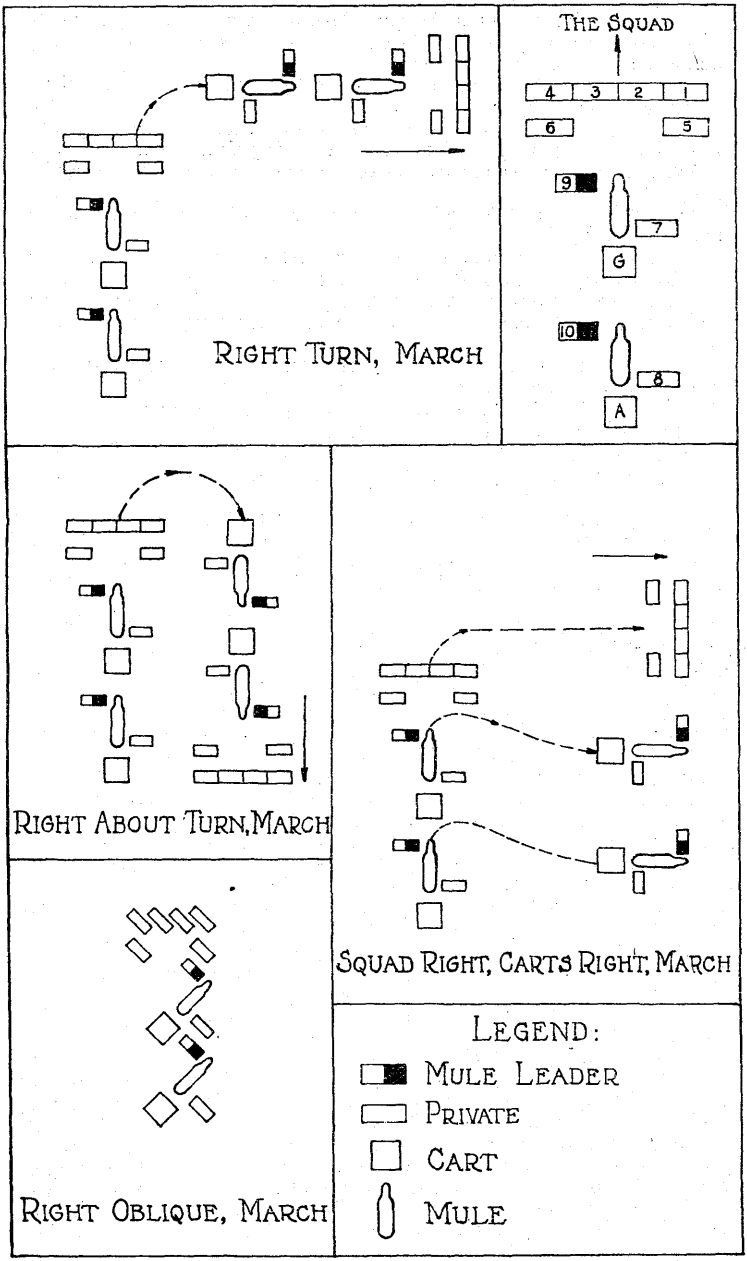


FIG. 50.—Cart drill, the squad.

(*c*) No. 2 secures the gun, flash-hider, steam-condensing device and asbestos mittens. He attaches the flash-hider and steam-condensing device to the gun.

(*d*) No. 3 secures one box of water, one box of ammunition and a carrying sling.

(*e*) No. 4 of odd-numbered squads secures one box of ammunition, one spare parts box and a carrying sling. No. 4 of even-numbered squads secures two boxes of ammunition and a carrying sling.

(*f*) Nos. 5, 6, 7, and 8 each secure two boxes of ammunition and a carrying sling.

(3) Ammunition and water are first unloaded from the ammunition cart. Additional articles of equipment which may be ordered for the accomplishment of the particular mission are secured and carried by squad members in accordance with a prearranged plan.

(4) The squad, unless otherwise directed, takes the formation prescribed in paragraph 246*b*.

i. On carts. To replace the gun equipment and ammunition on the carts, the command is: ***ON CARTS.***

247. Cart drill, the platoon.—*a. Organization.* (1) The machine-gun platoon consists of a platoon headquarters and two sections of two squads each.

(2) The platoon headquarters consists of 1 lieutenant (platoon leader), 1 platoon sergeant (second in command), 2 corporals (agent and transport), and 4 privates (runners).

(3) The section headquarters consists of 1 sergeant (section leader).

(4) In each platoon men are assigned to squads without reference to height so that each squad will have its proper proportion of large men. Men are assigned to duties which they are best fitted to perform. The integrity of squads is maintained. If any squad contains fewer than eight men, it is temporarily increased to that number for cart drill by transfers from other squads or from the runners of platoon headquarters. When the platoon becomes so reduced in numbers that there are less than seven men in each squad, the platoon may form in single rank, the transportation following at 1 pace distance reducing the length of the squad from 14 to 12 paces. In all formations in which intervals and distances are regulated by the length of the squad with transportation, they are correspondingly reduced by 2 paces. The distance between fours in march column formed from single rank is 90 inches. When the strength of the platoon is so reduced that there are less than six men in each squad, squads are temporarily consolidated into a section for cart drill. The unit thus formed is commanded as a single section but retains the designation of the platoon.

(5) For the purpose of formations or drills, runners are used to fill blank files.

(6) *Individual duties.* (*a*) The platoon sergeant is second in command of the platoon. He forms the platoon and receives the reports of the squad leaders at all formations. When the platoon is in line the platoon sergeant is posted on the right of the line of ammunition carts, opposite the wheel and covering the right guide of the platoon. When the platoon is in column of squads or march column, he marches opposite the head and on the right of the mule of the ammunition cart beside which he is posted when the platoon is in line. From his post he supervises the drill and assists the pla-

toon leader in control. He is responsible that platoon equipment carried on the carts is complete and properly loaded.

(*b*) The section sergeants of the right and left sections are the right and left guides of the platoon respectively. Section leaders are responsible that section equipment carried on the carts is complete and properly loaded.

(*c*) The corporals (squad leaders) take post on the right, at the head of the gun cart mule when transportation follows the squad, and in the file closers opposite the rear rank of their squads when the platoon is in march column.

(*d*) *Transport corporal.* When the platoon is in line, the transport corporal is posted on the left of the line of ammunition carts, opposite the wheel and covering the left guide of the platoon. When the platoon is in column of squads or march column, he marches opposite the head and on the right of the mule of the am-

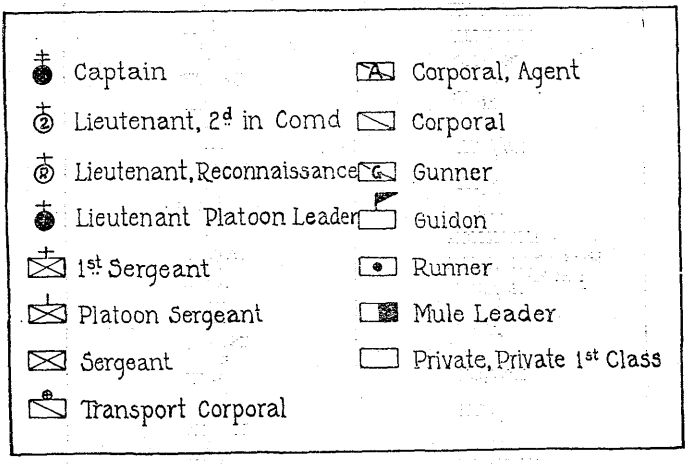


FIG. 51.—Legend for figures.

munition cart beside which he is posted when the platoon is in line. From his post he supervises the movements of the carts and assists the platoon leader in control.

(*e*) *Agent corporal.* When the platoon is in line, the agent corporal is posted on line with the platoon sergeant and transport corporal in the interval between the two center squads of the platoon. When the platoon is in column of squads or march column, he marches opposite the head and on the right of the mule of the ammunition cart on the left of which he is posted when the platoon is in line. (See Figure 52.)

(*f*) The runners are temporarily assigned to squads for drill.

b. Formations. (1) The formations of the platoon are: Line, march column, and column of squads, twos or files. The principal cart drill formations are: Line, march column and column of squads.

(2) *Definitions.* (*a*) *Column of squads.* That formation of the platoon in which the squads, each with its own transportation immediately in rear, are arranged one behind the other at 1 pace distance. (See Figure 52.)

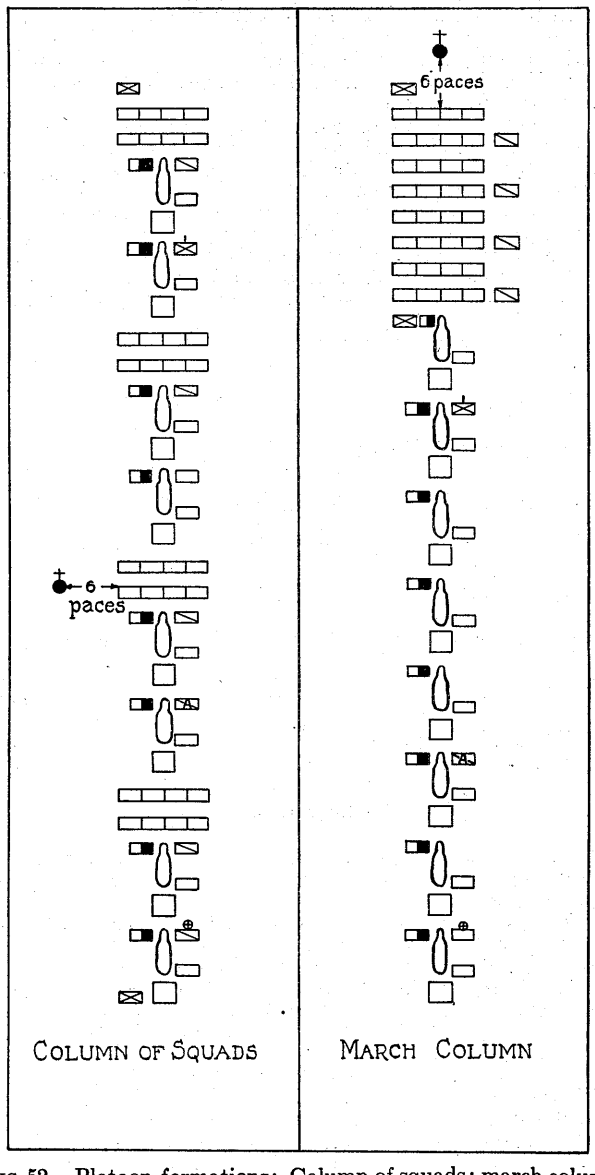


FIG. 52.—Platoon formations: Column of squads; march column.

(*b*) *March column.* That formation of the platoon with transportation in which the squads in ranks are formed as a column of squads in close-order drill, the carts following the last squad in ranks at 1 pace distance and in the order corresponding to the squads. (See Figure 52.)

(*c*) *Line.* That formation of the platoon with transportation in which the squads are abreast and without interval between squads. (See Figure 53.)

c. General rules for cart drill. (1) The movements which are executed by the machine-gun platoon in cart drill correspond generally to similar movements of the rifle platoon. The most important difference is that the platoon in line does not execute the turn on the fixed pivot.

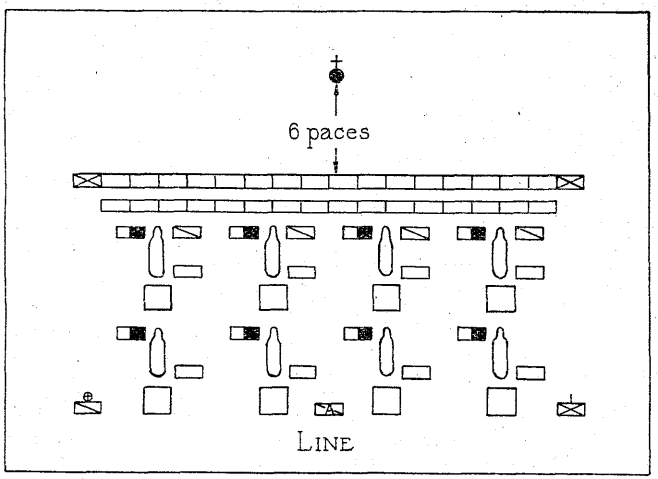


FIG. 53.—Platoon formations: Line.

(2) The platoon executes the movements explained for rifle units in proper cases substituting in the commands *platoon* for *squad.* It marches *at ease* and *route step* and *increases* and *diminishes the front of a column* in accordance with the principles prescribed for the rifle platoon. It *obliques* and *resumes the direct march* and executes *squads right, carts right, off carts,* and *on carts* as explained for cart drill, the squad.

d. To form the platoon. (1) To form the platoon in line the platoon sergeant takes post 6 paces in front of and facing the position the center of the platoon is to occupy and commands: 1. ***First (second, third) platoon,*** 2. ***FALL IN.***

(2) The platoon sergeant then receives the reports and, in turn, reports to the platoon leader in the same manner as prescribed for rifle units.

(3) The platoon leader takes post 12 paces in front of the center of the platoon, facing it, in time to receive the report of the platoon sergeant.

(4) The platoon is usually formed in line, but may be formed in any other prescribed formation in accordance with the same principles.

e. To dismiss the platoon. (1) The platoon being in line at a halt, the platoon leader directs the platoon sergeant: ***Dismiss the platoon.***

(2) The platoon sergeant moves to a point 3 paces in front of the center of the platoon, salutes, faces toward the platoon and gives the prescribed commands for inspecting arms. He directs the squad leaders: ***TAKE CHARGE OF YOUR SQUADS.***

(3) At this command, the squad leaders take charge of their respective squads and supervise the unloading, cleaning, and storage of equipment.

(4) As soon as the equipment has been removed from the carts the transport corporal takes charge of the transportation.

f. Movements from line. (1) *To form march column to the* front. The platoon being in line, to form march column to the front the command is: 1. ***March column,*** 2. ***Right (left) by squads,*** 3. ***MARCH.*** The squads in ranks execute right by squads. The carts follow the last squad in ranks successively from the right, each ammunition cart behind its gun cart. Squad leaders take post in the file closers opposite the rear rank of their own squad.

(2) *To form march column to a flank.* The platoon being in line, to form march column to a flank, the command is: 1. ***March column,*** 2. ***Squads right (left),*** 3. ***MARCH.*** The squads in ranks execute *Squads right.* The carts of each squad turn successively to the right and follow the last squad at a distance of 1 pace.

(3) *To form column of squads to the front.* The platoon being in line, to form column of squads to the front the command is: 1. ***Column of squads,*** 2. ***Right (left) squad forward,*** 3. ***MARCH.*** At the command ***MARCH*** the right squad moves straight to the front. The remaining squads stand fast if at a halt or, if marching, halt. As soon as uncovered, the remaining squads, at the command of the leaders, successively take up the march and follow in column.

(4) *To form column of squads to a flank.* The platoon being in line, to form column of squads to a flank, the command is: 1. ***Column of squads,*** 2. ***Squads right (left) turn,*** 3. ***MARCH.*** At the command ***MARCH,*** the right squad executes *Right turn.* Each of the remaining squads stands fast if at a halt or, if marching, halts. Each executes *Right turn* at the command of its leader in time to follow the squad on its right at the proper distance.

g. Movements from column of squads. (1) *To form line to a flank.* The platoon being in column of squads, to form line to a flank, the command is: 1. ***Line to the right (left),*** 2. ***MARCH,*** 3. ***Platoon,*** 4. ***HALT,*** 5. ***FRONT.*** At the command ***MARCH*** the leading squad executes *Right turn.* The rear squad executes *Right turn* as soon as they are opposite their places at the right of the preceding squad and take position without interval.

(2) *To form line to the front.* The platoon being in column of squads, to form line to the front, the command is: 1. ***Right (left) front into line,*** 2. ***MARCH,*** 3. ***Platoon,*** 4. ***HALT,*** 5. ***FRONT.*** Executed as prescribed for the rifle platoon.

(3) *To form line on right or left.* The platoon being in column of squads, to form line on right or left, the command is: 1. ***On right (left) into line,*** 2. ***MARCH,*** 3. ***Platoon,*** 4. ***HALT,*** 5. ***FRONT.*** Executed as prescribed for the rifle platoon. The squads come on the line without interval.

h. Movements from march column. (1) *Movement of carts in forming line from march column to the right or left.* The carts are moved to their normal positions in rear of their respective squads and conform to the movements of the squads. If the command ***HALT*** is given in forming line before the squads in ranks have advanced a distance equal to the length of the squad with carts, the mule leaders incline toward the rear of the new formation sufficiently to permit them to bring the carts directly in rear of their squads. The command: 1. ***Carts double time,*** 2. ***MARCH,*** may be given to hasten the completion of any movement from march column.

(2) *To form line to a flank.* The platoon being in march column, to form line to a flank, the command is: 1. ***Squads right (left),*** 2. ***MARCH.*** At the command ***MARCH*** the squads in ranks execute *Squads right* as prescribed for the rifle platoon.

(3) *To form line to the front.* The platoon being in march column, to form line to the front, the command is: 1. ***Right (left) front into line,*** 2. ***MARCH,*** 3. ***Platoon,*** 4. ***HALT,*** 5. ***FRONT.*** The squads in ranks execute *Right front into line* as prescribed for the rifle platoon.

(4) *To form line on right or left.* The platoon being in march column, to form line on right or left, the command is: 1. ***On right (left) into line,*** 2. ***MARCH,*** 3. ***Platoon,*** 4. ***HALT,*** 5. ***FRONT.*** The squads in ranks execute *On right into line* as prescribed for the rifle platoon.

i. To change direction. Change of direction is made by the same commands and in a manner similar to that prescribed for the rifle platoon.

j. To increase or diminish intervals. The platoon being in line, to increase the interval between subdivisions, the command is: 1. ***Extend on right (left) squad, so many paces,*** 2. ***MARCH,*** 3. ***Platoon,*** 4. ***HALT.*** If at a halt, the right squad marches forward at the command ***MARCH.*** If marching it continues to march, halting at the command of the platoon leader when it has advanced the desired distance. Other squads march by the most convenient route until opposite their new places at the prescribed interval, when they resume marching to the front and halt on the new line at the command of their leaders.

k. To form and to break up march column. (1) *To form march column.* The platoon being at a halt in column of squads, the command is: ***FORM MARCH COLUMN.*** The leading guide is posted at the point designated for the head of the column. The squad leaders lead the squads toward the guide and form column of squads without carts. The mule leaders lead the mules toward the rear of the last squad in ranks and form in proper order.

(2) *To break up march column.* The platoon being in march column, to break up march column, the command is: ***FORM COLUMN OF SQUADS.*** The leading guide is posted at the point designated for the head of the column. Squad leaders conduct the squads so as to form column of squads.

l. To form in route order. (1) March column is the habitual formation for route marches, but route order is applicable to any marching formation.

(2) To form in route order, the command is: ***FORM IN ROUTE ORDER.***

(*a*) File closers occupy blank files in the squads or, if sufficient space is not available, form a squad or squads at the head of the column.

(*b*) Corporals march in ranks with their respective squads, sending the platoon runners to the head of the column.

(*c*) The platoon sergeant marches in rear of the column of squads in ranks or in rear of the column of squads, twos or files, and from his post supervises the march of the platoon and assists the platoon leader in control.

(*d*) The agent corporal commands the platoon runners who are organized as a squad at the head of the column.

(*e*) The transport corporal marches in rear of the last cart in the formation and from his post supervises the march of the transportation and assists the platoon leader in control.

(*f*) When marching in route order squads and carts cover and preserve distance. Under favorable marching conditions platoons may be required to maintain cadence. When necessary two or more men may be detailed to march behind each cart to assist the carts over rough places.

248. Cart drill, the company.—*a. Organization.* (1) The machine-gun company comprises 3 platoons of 4 squads each and a company headquarters and train. This organization will be maintained until the number of squads in the company falls below 3 per platoon. A company of 5 to 9 squads will be organized as 2 platoons. A company of fewer than 5 squads will be organized as a single platoon, but retains the designation of company. The company is only occasionally drilled as a unit.

(2) Squads, sections, and platoons are numbered consecutively from right to left within the company and these designations do not change.

b. Formations. (1) The formations of the company are line, line of platoons, column of platoons, column of squads, march column and march column by platoons.

(2) The company headquarters and train are not ordinarily formed as units for cart drill or ceremonies. Unless otherwise directed, the members are distributed among platoons in such a way as not to interfere with the permanent squad organization of platoons. For inspections the company headquarters may be formed and inspected as a separate platoon as shown in Figure 54. The company headquarters and train is formed by the senior noncommissioned officer or private present and commanded by the second in command of the company.

(3) *Definitions.* (*a*) *Column of squads.* That formation of the company in which the platoons are placed one behind the other, each platoon in column of squads. The distance between platoons in column of squads is 9 paces.

(*b*) *March column.* That formation of the company in which the squads in ranks are formed as a column of squads in close-order drill, the carts following the last squad in ranks at 1 pace distance and in the order corresponding to the squads. This formation is used only for route marching. In *march column by platoons* the platoons are arranged one behind the other, each platoon being in march column. The distance between platoons in march column by platoons is 9 paces.

(*c*) *Line.* That formation of the company in which the platoons are abreast, each platoon in line, with an interval between platoons of 9 paces unless otherwise prescribed.

(*d*) *Line of platoons.* That formation of the company in which the platoons are in column of squads or march column, the leading elements of the platoons abreast. The normal interval be-

tween platoons of the company in line of platoons is platoon front (platoon in line) plus 5 paces.

(e) *Column of platoons.* That formation of the company in which the platoons, each in line are placed one behind the other at 10 paces distance.

c. General rules for cart drill. (1) Platoon leaders repeat such preparatory commands as are to be immediately executed by their platoons, such as ***Forward*** and ***Squads right,*** and the men execute the movement at the command of execution, such as ***MARCH*** and ***HALT*** if applying to their platoons, when given by the company commander. In movements executed in route step and at ease the platoon leaders repeat the command of execution if necessary. Platoon leaders do not repeat commands which are not essential to the execution of a movement by their platoons. Thus, at the company commander's command: ***March column by platoons, leading platoon right by squads,*** the platoon leader of the leading platoon repeats only ***March column, right by squads.*** In giving commands or cautions, platoon leaders may prefix the number of their platoons, as ***First platoon, HALT;*** or ***Second platoon, continue the march.***

(2) The rules and principles governing drills of the platoon govern the drill of the company whenever applicable.

(3) *The guidon.* The guidon is carried by a mounted enlisted man, usually a bugler. The normal post of the guidon is 1 pace in rear and 3 paces to the right of the company commander.

d. To form the company. (1) The company without transportation is formed as prescribed for the rifle company.

(2) The company with transportation is formed as follows:

(a) The company commander designates the time, formation and order of assembly. He causes the guidon to be posted at the point of rest where the base unit is to form.

(b) Platoon leaders conduct their platoons to the point of assembly of the company. The company headquarters and train are formed as a detachment and conducted at the proper time to the point of assembly of the company. The company commander takes his post and receives the report in the same manner as prescribed for the rifle company.

(3) *To form the company for cart drill.* The command is: ***FORM FOR CART DRILL.*** At this command, the headquarters and train detachment is broken up and the personnel assigned to platoons for cart drill.

e. To dismiss the company. (1) The company without transportation is dismissed as prescribed for the rifle company.

(2) When the transportation is present the company commander commands: ***DISMISS YOUR PLATOONS.*** Platoon leaders salute and conduct their platoons to the cart park or stables, where platoons are dismissed. The headquarters and train detachment is dismissed by its leader.

f. Movements from line. (1) *To form column of platoons to a flank.* The company being in line, to form column of platoons to a flank, the command is: 1. ***Platoons right (left) turn,*** 2. ***MARCH.*** Executed by platoons simultaneously.

(2) *To form march column by platoons to the front.* The company being in line, to form march column by platoons to the front, the command is: 1. ***March column by platoons, right (left) platoon right (left) by squads,*** 2. ***MARCH.*** Executed by the right platoon at the command ***MARCH.*** If the company is marching,

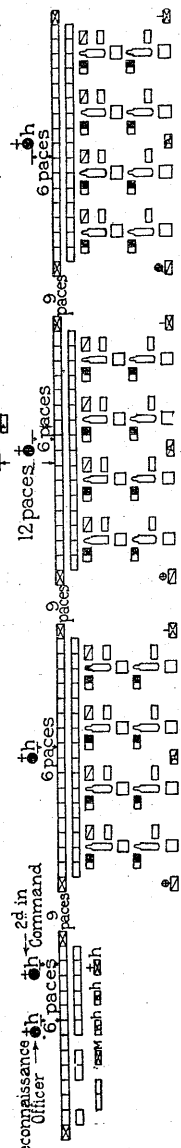


FIG. 54.—The machine-gun company with company headquarters detachment.

the leaders of the other platoons halt their platoons. If the company is at a halt, they caution ***Stand fast.*** They command: 1. ***March column, squads right,*** 2. ***MARCH,*** followed by 1. ***Column left,*** 2. ***MARCH,*** in time to follow the preceding platoon at a distance of 9 paces.

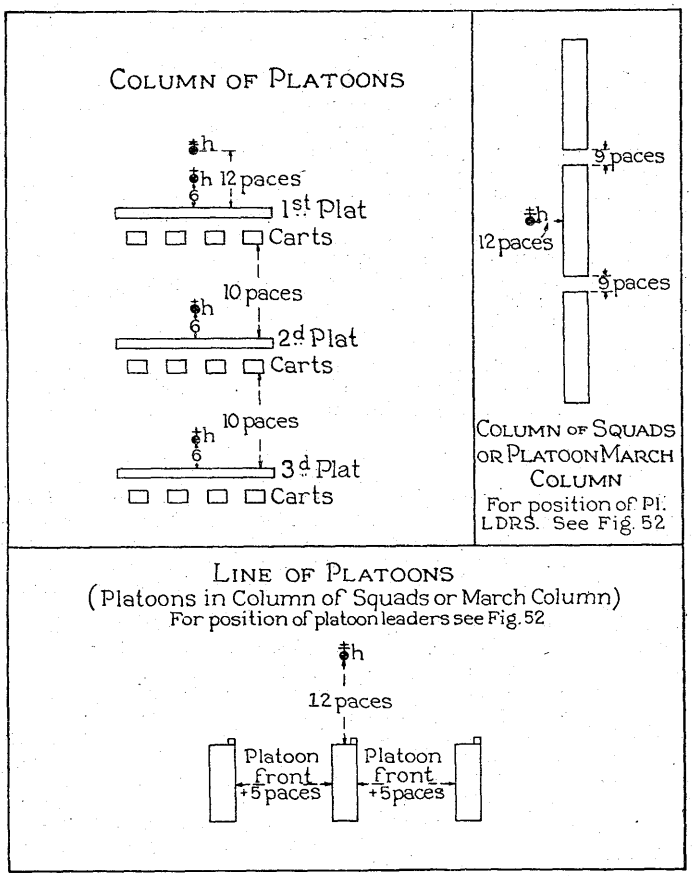


FIG. 55.—Formations of the machine-gun company.

(3) *To form march column by platoons to a flank.* The company being in line, to form march column by platoons to a flank the command is: 1. ***March column by platoons, right (left) platoon squads right (left),*** 2. ***MARCH.*** Executed by platoons successively, beginning with the right platoon. If the company is marching, the leaders of the other platoons halt their platoons. If the company is at a halt, they caution ***Stand fast.*** The other pla-

toons execute the movements at the command of the platoon leaders in time to follow the preceding platoon at a distance of 9 paces.

g. Movements from column of platoons. (1) *To form line to a flank.* The company being in column of platoons, to form line to a flank, the command is: 1. ***Platoons right (left)*** **turn,** 2. ***MARCH.*** Executed by platoons simultaneously.

(2) *To form line to the front.* The company being in column of platoons to form line to the front, the command is: 1. ***Right front into line,*** 2. ***MARCH.*** If marching, the leading platoon halts at the command ***MARCH.*** The platoon leaders dress their platoons to the left. If at a halt, at the command ***Right front into line,*** the leader of the leading platoon commands: ***Stand fast*** and the leaders of the platoons in rear command: ***March column, squads right.*** At the command ***MARCH,*** the former dresses his platoon to the left and the others at the proper time give the command: 1. ***Squads left,*** 2. ***MARCH,*** and halt their platoons 1 pace in rear of the line established by the leading platoon and dress to the left.

(3) *To form march column by platoons to the front.* The company being in column of platoons, to form march column by platoons to the front, the command is: 1. ***March column by platoons, leading platoon right (left) by squads,*** 2. ***MARCH.*** The leading platoon executes *March column, right by squads* at the command ***MARCH.*** If the company is marching, the leaders of the rear platoons halt their platoons. If the company is at a halt they caution ***Stand fast.*** They then command: 1. ***March column, right by squads,*** 2. ***MARCH,*** in time to follow the preceding platoon at a distance of 9 paces.

(4) *To form march column by platoons to a flank.* The company being in column of platoons, to form march column by platoons to the flank, the command is: 1. ***March column by platoons, leading platoon squads right (left),*** 2. ***MARCH.*** Executed by the leading platoon at the command ***MARCH.*** If the company is marching, the leaders of the rear platoons halt their platoons. If the company is at a halt, the leaders of the rear platoons caution ***Stand fast.*** The command: 1. ***March column, right by squads,*** 2. ***MARCH,*** is then given in time to enable the platoons to reach the ground where the leading platoon executed squads right and to follow in march column at a distance of 9 paces.

h. Movements from column of squads. (1) *To form line to the front.* The company being in column of squads, to form line to the front, the command is: 1. ***Line to the left (right) front,*** 2. ***Leading platoon left (right) front into line,*** 3. ***MARCH,*** 4. ***Company,*** 5. ***HALT.*** At the command ***Line to the left front,*** the leaders of the rear platoons command: ***Column left.*** At the command ***MARCH,*** the leading platoon executes *Left front into line.* The leaders of the rear platoons conduct their platoons to the left until the proper interval has been obtained when they change direction to the right and command: 1. ***Left front into line,*** 2. ***MARCH.*** The platoons are halted and dressed on the line established by the leading platoon.

(2) *To form line to the flank.* The company being in column of squads, to form line to the flank, the command is: 1. ***Line to the right (left),*** 2. ***Leading platoon line to the right (left),*** 3. ***MARCH,*** 4. ***Company,*** 5. ***HALT.*** If at a halt, at the command ***Line to the right,*** the leaders of the rear platoons command: ***Forward;*** if marching, they caution: ***Continue the march.*** At the command ***MARCH,*** the leading platoon forms line to the right. The

rear platoons march forward until the proper interval is obtained when they execute *Line to the right, march,* and are halted and dressed on the line established by the leading platoon.

(3) *To form line on right or left.* The company being in column of squads, to form line on right or left, the command is: 1. ***Line on right (left),*** 2. ***Leading platoon on right (left) into line,*** 3. ***MARCH,*** 4. ***Company,*** 5. ***HALT.*** If the company is marching, at the command ***Line on right*** the leaders of the rear platoons command: ***Continue the march.*** If the company is at a halt, they command: ***Forward.*** At the command ***MARCH,*** the leading platoon executes *On right into line.* The rear platoons move forward until the proper intervals are obtained when they execute *On right into line* at the command of their leaders and are halted and dressed on the line established by the leading platoon.

i. Movements from march column by platoons. (1) *To form column of platoons to the front.* The company being in march column by platoons, to form column of platoons to the front, the command is: 1. ***Column of platoons,*** 2. ***Platoons left front into line,*** 3. ***MARCH,*** 4. ***Company,*** 5. ***HALT.*** Executed by platoons simultaneously. When the command ***HALT*** is given by the company commander, the rear platoons continue to march and are halted by their leaders at a distance of 10 paces from the preceding platoon.

(2) *To form column of platoons to a flank.* The company being in march column by platoons, to form column of platoons to a flank, the command is: 1. ***Column of platoons,*** 2. ***Leading platoon squads right (left),*** 3. ***MARCH,*** 4. ***Company,*** 5. ***HALT.*** Executed by the leading platoon at the command ***MARCH.*** The leaders of the rear platoons, if the company commander's command ***MARCH*** is not immediately followed by ***Company,*** signifying that the company is to be halted without advancing, caution their platoons ***Continue the march*** and execute *Squads right* on the same ground as the leading platoon. When the command ***Company*** is given, they caution their platoons to ***Continue the march*** and halt them 10 paces from the preceding platoon. If the company commander's command ***MARCH*** is immediately followed by ***Company,*** the leaders of the rear platoons immediately command: 1. ***Column half left,*** 2. ***MARCH,*** followed by 1. ***Column half right,*** 2. ***MARCH,*** 3. ***Squads right,*** 4. ***MARCH,*** 5. ***Platoon,*** 6. ***HALT.*** The last command is given when the platoon has gained a position 10 paces behind the preceding platoon.

(3) *To form line to a flank.* The company being in march column by platoons, to form line to a flank, the command is: 1. ***Line to the right (left),*** 2. ***Leading platoon, squads right (left),*** 3. ***MARCH,*** 4. ***Company,*** 5. ***HALT.*** Executed by the leading platoon at the command ***MARCH.*** The rear platoons march straight to the front and execute *Squads right* at the command of their platoon leaders in time to come on the line with 9 pace interval from the right flank of the preceding platoon.

(4) *To form line to the front.* The company being in march column by platoons, to form line to the front, the command is: 1. ***Line to the left (right) front,*** 2. ***Leading platoon, left (right) front into line,*** 3. ***MARCH,*** 4. ***Company,*** 5. ***HALT.*** At the command ***Line to the left front,*** the leaders of the rear platoons command: ***Column left.*** At the command ***MARCH,*** the leading platoon executes *Left front into line;* halts at the command ***HALT*** and is dressed to the right. The leaders of the rear platoons conduct their platoons to the left until the proper interval has been obtained they

then change direction to the right and command: 1. ***Left front into line,*** 2. ***MARCH.*** The platoons are halted and dressed on the line established by the leading platoon.

(5) *To form line on right or left.* The company being in march column by platoons, to form line on right or left, the command is: 1. ***Line on right (left),*** 2. ***Leading platoon on right (left) into line,*** 3. ***MARCH,*** 4. ***Company,*** 5. ***HALT.*** Executed as described in paragraph 248*h*.(3).

j. To change direction. Change of direction is made by the same commands and in a manner similar to that prescribed for the rifle company.

k. To increase or diminish intervals or distances. (1) The company being in line, or line of platoons, to increase or diminish the intervals between platoons, the command is: 1. ***Extend (close) on right (left) platoon, so many paces,*** 2. ***MARCH,*** 3. ***Company,*** 4. ***HALT.*** At the command ***MARCH,*** if at a halt, the right platoon moves forward; if marching, it continues the march. It halts at the command ***HALT.*** At the command ***Extend on right platoon,*** the leaders of the other platoons, if the platoons are in line, command: ***Left oblique;*** if the platoon is in column of squads or march column, he commands: ***Column half left.*** The platoons march until opposite their new place at the prescribed interval when they change direction at the command of the platoon leaders and are halted on the line established by the right platoon.

(*a*) The company being in column of platoons, or column of platoons at increased distances, to diminish the distance between platoons the command is: 1. ***Close on leading platoon, (so many) paces,*** 2. ***MARCH.*** If at a halt the leading platoon stands fast; if marching, it halts at the command ***MARCH.*** If at halt, at the command ***Close on leading platoon (so many) paces,*** the leaders of the center and rear platoons command ***Forward.*** If marching they caution ***Continue the march.*** The center and rear platoons are marched forward and halted by their platoon leaders at the designated distance from the preceding platoon.

(*b*) The company being in column of platoons to increase the distance between platoons the command is 1. ***Extend on rear platoon, (so many) paces,*** 2. ***MARCH.*** If at a halt the rear platoon stands fast. If marching, it halts at the command ***MARCH.*** If at a halt at the command ***Extend on rear platoon (so many) paces,*** the platoon leaders of the leading and center platoons command ***Forward.*** If marching, they command ***CONTINUE THE MARCH.*** The leading and center platoons are marched and halted by their platoon leaders at the designated distance from the platoon in rear.

l. To form in route order. (1) March column and march column by platoons are the habitual formations for route marches, and route order is applicable to any marching formation.

(2) To form in route order the command is: ***FORM IN ROUTE ORDER.***

(*a*) The company headquarters forms and marches at the head of the company.

(*b*) Platoons form and march as described in paragraph 247*l* (p. 155).

(*c*) The company commander marches at the head of the company but goes wherever his presence is needed.

(*d*) A mounted officer habitually marches in rear of the last element of the company and assists the company commander in preserving march discipline and in the control of the company.

(*e*) When marching in route order, subdivisions of the company cover and preserve distance.

249. Battery drill, the platoon.—*a. Object.* The object of battery drill is to train the personnel in the application of indirect-laying data so that, either by command or by written orders, the fire of the battery may be delivered rapidly, accurately, and correctly.

b. Organization of the battery. A battery may consist of any number of guns, not less than two. The usual unit which executes battery firing is the platoon. The normal battery-drill unit is the platoon. The platoon leader commands the battery, section leaders their sections, and the squad leaders their squads. The platoon sergeant assists the battery commander. Members of platoon headquarters are assigned to squads for drill.

c. General. (1) *Training prerequisites.* Elementary gun drill and advanced gun drill are mastered before battery drill is taken up.

(2) *Equipment required.* (*a*) Each squad is provided with a gun, tripod, gunner's pouch, spare barrel, clinometer, cleaning rod, water box, steam-condensing device, nine ammunition boxes (eight ammunition boxes and one spare parts box in odd-numbered squads), one base stake and one or more aiming stakes, a shovel, three sandbags, and a T-base, when practicable. When dummy cartridges are used, at least six dummies are placed in each belt.

(*b*) The responsibility and procedure respecting equipment is the same as that prescribed with the following modifications:

(i) No. 4 has the base and aiming stakes in addition to his other prescribed load.

(ii) No. 5 has a shovel, two sandbags, one ammunition box, and a carrying sling.

(iii) No. 6 has a T-base, one sandbag, one ammunition box, and a carrying sling. When the T-base is not used, No. 6 has an ammunition box in its stead.

(3) *Commands.* (*a*) When all guns are to execute a movement, the command is prefaced by 1. ***All guns.*** When only a part of the battery is to execute the command, the command is preceded by 1. ***(No. — gun only)*** or 1. ***(Nos. — and — guns only).***

(*b*) The execution of both the angle of shift and the angle of convergence (or distribution) is combined into one command given directly by the battery commander to each gun. Where the use of the dial and rear sight are involved in laying off an angle the amount and direction of each is given as ***Dial right 600, Sight left 7.*** Section leaders will verify the proper execution of each command.

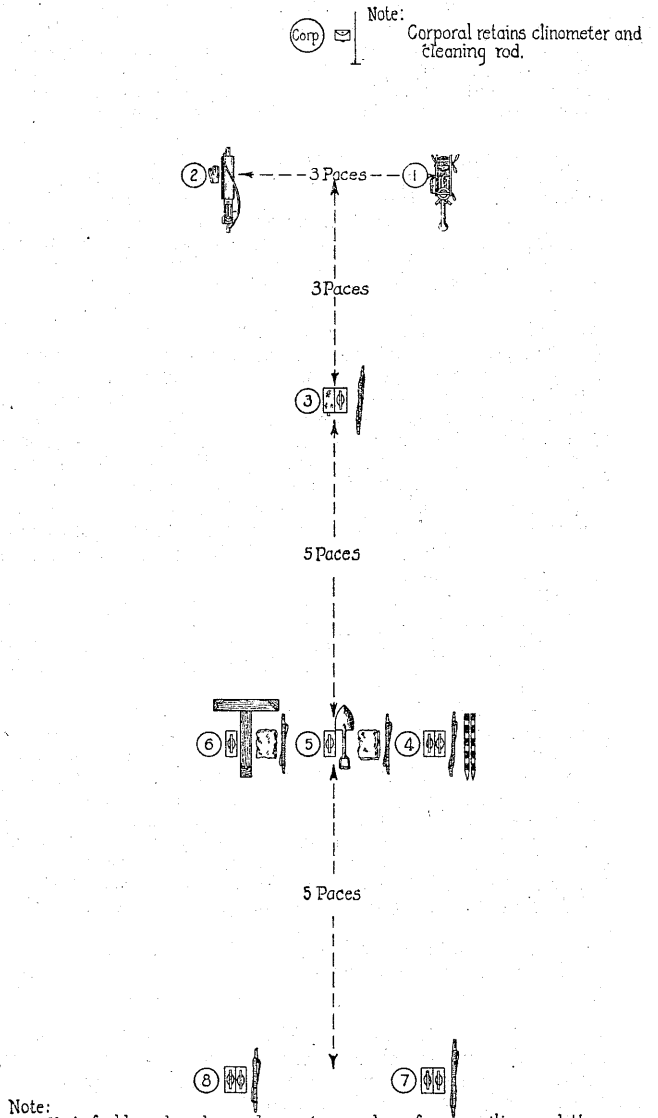
(*c*) The numbers 1 will repeat all commands.

(*d*) In giving data, numbers are announced as follows: "Forty," "twenty-four," "ten-fifty," "four hundred," "three thousand."

(4) *Safety precautions.* (*a*) Firing ceases and guns are unloaded whenever any member of the personnel is ordered in front of the guns. This applies when firing is simulated as well as when firing is with ball or other ammunition.

(*b*) In firing at any target, gunners never search below the elevation at which the guns were originally laid for that target unless specifically ordered to do so by the battery commander.

(5) *Explanations.* (*a*) In the explanations of movements, No. 1 gun (the right gun) is the base gun. The movements may be



Note:
No. 4 of odd numbered squads carries one box of ammunition and the spare parts box instead of two boxes of ammunition.

FIG. 56.—Layout of equipment, battery drill.

executed with any gun as base gun by substituting the proper words in the command. To designate the base gun, the command is: ***No. 1. (2, 3, 4), BASE GUN.***

(*b*) The explanations given below are for a battery of four guns. They are, however, applicable to a battery of any number of guns.

d. Formations for battery drill. (1) When the platoon is formed for battery drill it forms in line with 5-pace intervals between squads, unless other intervals are ordered. To cause the platoon to form for battery drill, the command is: ***FORM FOR BATTERY DRILL (with 10-pace interval).***

(2) If the platoon has already been formed in line, each squad takes the indicated interval from the squad on its right. The corporal paces off the required interval, designates the position for No. 1 of his squad, and commands: ***Squad, FALL IN.***

(3) Squads fall in, number off, secure equipment, examine equipment, and change numbers and duties in the squad as explained for elementary and advanced gun drills. Equipment is laid out for battery drill and posts are taken as shown in Fig. 56. Nos. 9 and 10, when present, take post immediately in rear of 7 and 8, respectively.

e. To prepare the battery position. (1) The battery commander designates the location of the base gun, direction in which the battery position is to extend, and the general direction of base lines. He announces the interval between guns and issues the necessary instructions relative to digging of emplacements and concealment or other preparation of the position.

(2) When T-bases are used the battery commander takes post on the flank of the battery position toward the base gun, indicates the direction in which the battery position is to extend and the general direction of base lines, announces the interval between guns, and commands: ***ON THIS LINE MOUNT T-BASES.*** At this command the corporal, Nos. 5 and 6 of each squad run forward with T-base, shovel, and sandbags. No. 6 of each squad places himself at the proper interval, as directed by the corporal, on the general line indicated for the direction in which the battery position is to extend. He then places the T-base on the ground with the long arm of the T-base aligned in the general direction indicated for base-lines. Nos. 5 and 6 dig in the T-base so that it is level and stable, fill the sandbags three-quarters full and stand them on end, one bag opposite each end of the T-base and 1 foot therefrom. Nos. 5 and 6 then run back to their original positions, No. 5 taking the shovel with him.

f. To mount guns. (1) The command is: 1. ***All guns,*** 2. ***MOUNT GUNS,*** or 1. ***(Nos. — and —) guns,*** 2. ***MOUNT GUNS.*** At this command the gun or designated guns are mounted on T-basis; Nos. 1 and 2 place the filled sandbags over the shoes of the tripod. No. 3 brings up one box of ammunition and the water box. No. 3 then returns to his post and gets two more boxes of ammunition, which he carries to the gun position. He then returns to his position. The ammunition and stakes carried by the remainder of the squad are brought up to the post of No. 3.

(2) When only the flank or other designated guns of a battery are mounted, to mount the remaining guns of the battery, the command is: 1. ***All guns,*** 2. ***MOUNT GUNS.***

g. To lay guns on initial aiming point. The battery commander designates the initial aiming point by any convenient method of target designation. The initial aiming point having been designated,

to lay the guns on the initial aiming point the command is: 1. ***All Guns (No. — and — guns),*** 2. ***ON I. A. P.*** At this command each corporal loosens the traversing clamp and the gunner sets the sight at 700 and the wind gauge at zero. Each No. 1 lays his gun on the initial aiming point. The corporals tighten the traversing clamps and zero the dials.

h. To parallel all guns on their base lines by means of an aiming circle or compass. (See Fig. 57.) (1) *Obtaining the data.*

(*a*) The aiming circle or compass is set up in any position with reference to the battery, but not less than 150 yards from it.

(*b*) All guns are ordered to lay on the head of aiming circle or compass as an initial aiming point. (See paragraph 249*g*.)

(*c*) The magnetic azimuth, aiming circle to No. 1 gun, is then read and converted to a back azimuth (5305—3200 = 2105).

(*d*) The difference between the magnetic azimuth of the base line, and the magnetic azimuth No. 1 gun—aiming circle is the angle through which No. 1 gun must turn from the aiming circle in order to lay on its base line (2900 — 2105 = 795).

(*e*) To lay the other guns of the battery, this procedure is repeated for each gun. This automatically parallels all guns of the battery.

(2) *Applying the data.* Each gun in turn is laid on its base line by command similar to the following:

No. 1. Dial right 780, sight left 15.
No. 2. Dial right 760, sight left 15.
No. 3. ——— ——— ———
No. 4. ——— ——— ———

Base stakes are then set out as described in paragraph 243*o*.

i. To measure the battery angle of parallax. The flank guns only of a battery having been mounted and the initial aiming point designated, the command is: ***MEASURE THE PARALLAX.*** At this command each gun is laid on the front sight of the other and the dials and wind gauges are set at zero. Each gun is then turned and laid on the initial aiming point. Each corporal announces the dial reading, giving the number of his gun as: ***No. 1 Dial 1560*** or ***No. 4 Dial 4820.***

If, when the gun is laid accurately on the initial aiming point, the dial index is not exactly opposite a division on the dial, the corporal moves the gun back to the nearest division on the dial and directs the gunner to complete the laying by means of the rear sight. He then announces the dial and sight reading, giving the number of his gun as: ***No. 1 Dial 1580, Sight left 5*** or ***No. 4 Dial 4800, Sight right 15.***

The battery commander determines the battery angle of parallax. The angles through which No. 1 and No. 4 guns have been turned are determined as follows: When the dial reading announced for any gun is greater than 3200, the dial reading is subtracted from 6400—because the dial is graduated clockwise—and the sight reading if used is added to this result. When the dial reading announced for any gun is less than 3200, the sight reading is added directly to the dial reading. The sum of the angles for No. 1 and 4 guns is then subtracted from 3200 and the result is the battery angle of parallax.

Example: Suppose the dial on No. 4 gun reads between 5220 and 5240. The corporal moves the gun back to 5240 and then directs the gunner to lay on the initial aiming point by means of the rear sight. The gunner moves the rear sight until the line of sighting

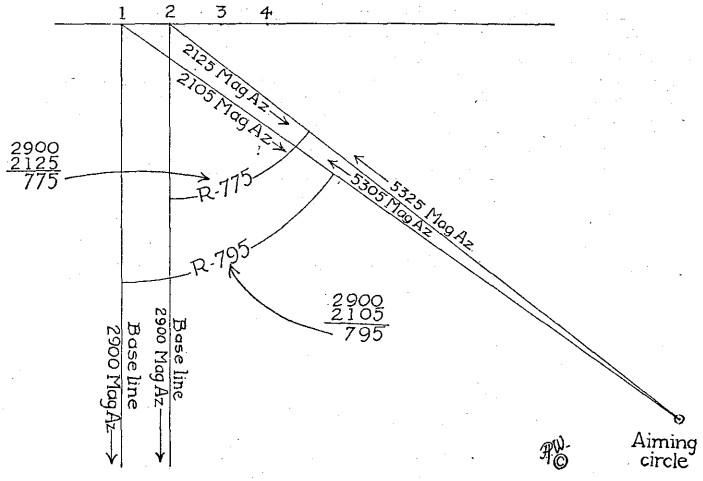


FIG. 57.—Using the aiming circle or a compass as the initial aiming point.

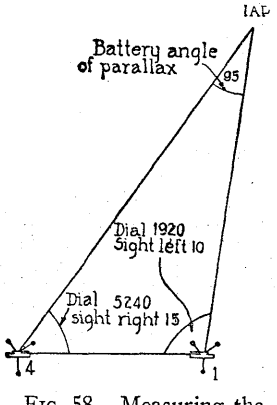


FIG. 58.—Measuring the battery angle of parallax.

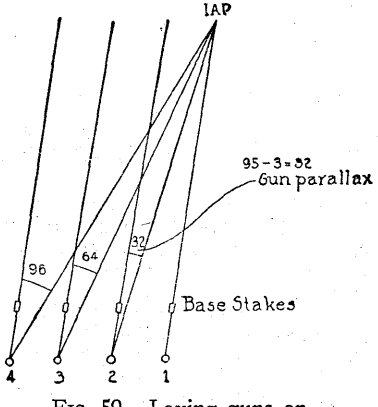


FIG. 59.—Laying guns on parallel lines.

is on the initial aiming point. Suppose the rear sight now reads *Right 15.* The corporal then announces: ***No. 4 Dial 5240, Sight right 15.*** Suppose the dial on No. 1 gun reads between 1920 and 1940. The corporal moves the gun back to 1920 and directs the gunner to lay on the initial aiming point by means of the rear sight. Suppose the rear sight now reads Left 10. The corporal then announces: ***No. 1 Dial 1920, Sight left 10.*** The battery angle of parallax is then figured as follows:

No. 1 gun		1930
No. 4 gun.....	6400 minus 5240=1160	
	1160 plus 15=1175	1175
		3105

3200 minus 3105=95 (Battery angle of parallax). (See Fig. 58.)

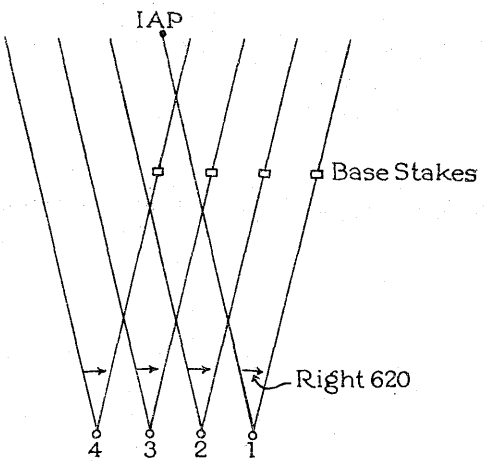


FIG. 60.—Establishing base lines.

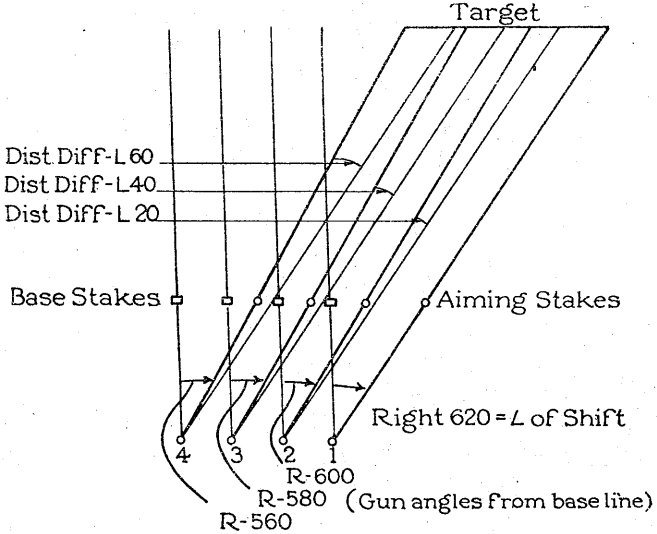
j. To lay the guns on parallel lines. The guns being laid on the I. A. P. and the gun parallax having been determined to be 32 mils, to lay the guns on parallel lines, the command is: ***No. 2 Dial left 20, Sight right 12. No. 3 Dial left 60, Sight right 4. No. 4 Dial left 80, Sight right 16.*** (Fig. 59.) Each corporal lays off the announced angle on the dial and each gunner lays off the announced angle on the sight. The lines of sighting of all guns of the battery are now paralleled.

k. To establish base lines. (1) The guns of the battery being laid on parallel lines, and being shifted through the base angle, to establish base lines, the command is: ***BASE STAKES OUT.*** At this command, base stakes are set out. (See Fig. 60.)

(2) The base lines having been established, the guns may be laid on their base lines by the command: ***All guns LAY ON BASE LINE.*** At this command, each gun is laid on its base stake with the sight set at 2000 and the dial and windage at zero.

l. To shift the battery through an angle. The guns being laid on parallel lines and the base angle having been determined, to shift

the battery through the desired angle, the command is: ***All guns Dial right (left) 620.*** If the angle should be other than an even division on the dial, *as Right 627,* the command is: ***All guns Dial right 620, Sight (left) 7.*** The corporal makes the necessary changes on the dial; the gunner, on the rear sight. The corporal, however, is responsible that the angle ordered is accurately laid off. In laying off horizontal angles, except as in sub paragraph *h,* the rear sight is always moved in the direction opposite to that in which the gun is to be moved. In this connection it must be remembered that moving the rear sight *left* actually moves the line of sighting *right* and vice versa. In either case the moving of the rear sight does not



Not drawn to scale

FIG. 61.—Laying guns on a wide target.

move the gun, and its use is purely as an angle measuring instrument for angles less than 20 mils.

m. To lay the guns on their part of the target. (1) When the target is wider than the battery frontage the paralleled guns are shifted through their angle of shift and turned through their distribution differences by the one command: ***No. 1 Dial (R) 620. No. 2 Dial (R) 600.*** (Fig 61.) If the angle for any gun is found to be other than an even division on the dial, as *right 610,* the gun is laid on its proper part of the target by the one command: ***No. — Dial (R) 600, Sight (L) 10.***

Example: Let us assume that it is desired to lay No. 2 gun on its proper part of the target and that the battery angle of distribution difference is 13 instead of 20, as shown in Fig. 61.

The angle of shift is right 620. The battery angle of distribution difference is left 13. No. 2 gun would then actually be turned from its base line right (620 minus 13) 607 by the command: ***No. 2 Dial (R) 600, Sight (L) 7.***

(2) When the target is a point target or narrower than the battery frontage, the paralleled guns are swung through their angle of shift and turned through their convergence differences by the command: ***No. 1 Dial (R) 600, No. 2 Dial (R) 620,*** etc. (Fig. 62). If the angle for any gun is found to be other than an even division on

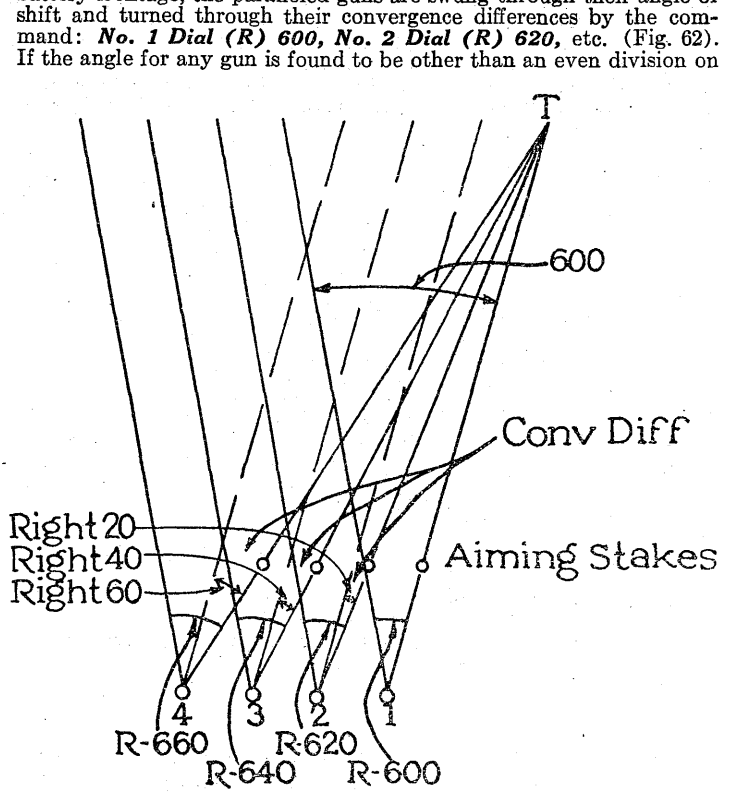


FIG. 62.—Laying guns on a narrow or point target.

the dial as *right 610* the gun is laid on target by the command: ***No. 2 Dial (R) 600, Sight (L) 10.***

Example: Let us assume that it is desired to lay No. 2 gun on its proper part of the target and that the convergence difference is 13 instead of 20, as shown in Fig. 62.

The angle of shift is right 600. The convergence difference is right 13. The gun would then actually be turned from its base line right (600 plus 13) 613 by the command: ***No. 2 Dial (R) 600, Sight (L) 13.***

(3) The guns having been laid on their part of the target, aiming stakes may be set out by the command: ***(Red), (Green) STAKES OUT.***

(4) Aiming stakes having been set out, the guns may be laid on their parts of the target by the command: ***All guns ON RED (TASK A) STAKES.*** At this command each gun is laid on its designated aiming stake, with the sight still set at 2000.

n. To lay the guns for elevation. (1) To lay all guns of the battery with the same elevation, the command is: ***All guns Q. E. 60 (72).*** At this command, all guns are laid with the designated quadrant elevation.

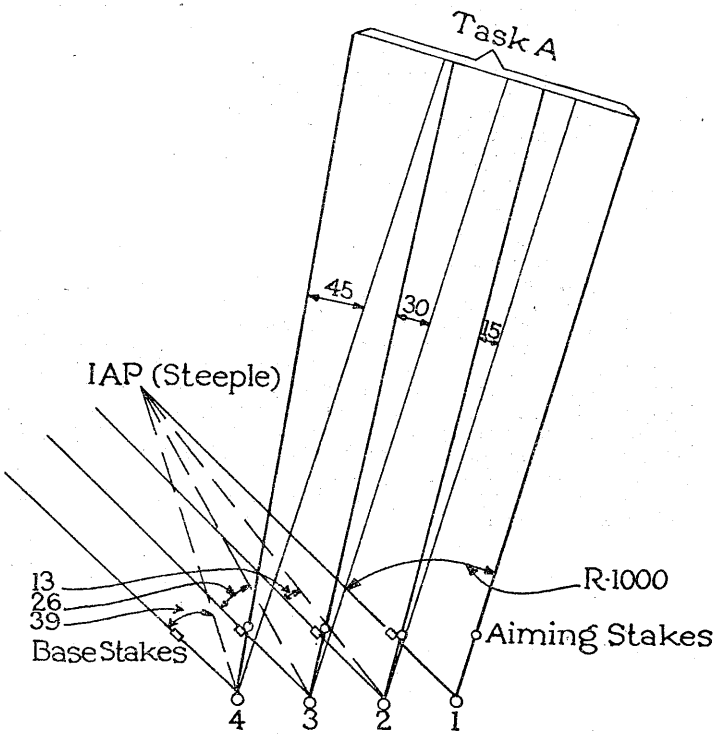


FIG. 63.—Establishing base and direction lines.

(2) To lay the guns of the battery with elevations successively greater or less than that of the base gun, the command is: ***No. 1 QE 60, No. 2 QE 65 (55), No. 3 QE 70 (50), No. 4 QE 75 (45).***

o. Tasks. (1) In battery firing, the proper direction lines for engaging various targets are marked by distinctive aiming stakes before firing is opened.

(2) When the squads have become proficient in the details of battery drill, they are next trained in the accurate rapid establishment of base and direction lines, shifting from one task to another, and the simulated firing of a series of tasks. The drill is ordinarily conducted by command.

Example 1: (See Fig. 63.)
IAP. To your left front. Steeple.
All guns on IAP.
No. 1 gun base gun.
No. 2 Sight (R) 13.
No. 3 Dial (L) 20, Sight (R) 6.
No. 4 Dial (L) 20, Sight (R) 19.
Base stakes out.
Example 2: (See Fig. 63.)
All guns on base lines.
No. 1 Dial (R) 1000.
No. 2 Dial (R) 980, Sight (L) 5.
No. 3 Dial (R) 960, Sight (L) 10.
No. 4 Dial (R) 940, Sight (L) 15.
Red stakes out.
No. 1, QE 70.
No. 2, QE 74.
No. 3, QE 78.
No. 4, QE 82.
Traverse 32.
Search up 10.
Medium.
Commence firing.

p. Firing by chart. (1) Instead of using commands the fire of a battery may be directed and controlled by the use of charts. Each gun has a chart upon which is entered the time and all data necessary to fire upon any target. These are obtained from the battery chart. Firing may be executed by a time schedule or by command. In the latter case at the command ***TASK A (B),*** etc., the guns are laid for that task according to data on the charts and fire opened at the command or signal of the battery commander.

(2) When firing on time schedule, at least one minute must be allowed for changing direction and elevation.

CHAPTER 8

EXTENDED ORDER

Paragraphs
SECTION I. The rifle squad, section, and platoon.....250–255
II. The machine-gun squad, section and platoon....256–260

SECTION I

THE RIFLE SQUAD, SECTION, AND PLATOON

250. Introduction.—*a. Purposes of extended-order drills.* The purposes of extended-order drills are:

(1) To teach the leaders and members of small units the principles of formation and movement utilized in combat exercises and actual combat.

(2) To provide leaders of small units with typical formations and movements to be employed under various tactical situations.

(3) To enable leaders of small units to control their organizations largely by commands or signals rather than by orders.

b. General rules. (1) Extended-order drill is executed at ease.

(2) The platoon is the largest unit which, by formal commands, executes extended-order drill.

(3) Signals are freely used during instruction, in order that officers and men may readily learn to recognize and apply them.

(4) In extended-order, during real or simulated firings, squad leaders and, if necessary, individual men transmit orders by word of mouth along the firing line. Transmission of orders by this means requires special training.

(5) The aiming point or target is carefully pointed out. See "Target designation"—Musketry, Basic Field Manual, Vol. III. This is habitually done after announcing the sight setting. Both are indicated before giving the command for firing. The designation of the target may be omitted when the target appears suddenly and is unmistakable, but the range must always be announced, the command ***Battle sight*** being given when it is not desired to have the sight set.

(6) The command for range serves as a preparatory command for firing; it insures the simultaneous opening of fire and the full effect of surprise.

(7) The target or aiming point having been designated, such designation need not be repeated until a change is necessary.

(8) Troops are trained to continue their fire upon the aiming point or target designated until a change is ordered.

(9) If the men are not already in the position of load, that position is taken at the announcement of the range. Skirmishers not in a firing position either at a halt or in movement, take such position at the command announcing the range.

(10) A skirmish line may load while moving, the pieces being held as nearly as practicable in the position of load. (See Sec. III, Chapter 4.)

c. To set the sight. Being in any firing formation: ***RANGE, SIX HUNDRED (THREE FIFTY, EIGHT HUNDRED,*** etc.) or ***BATTLE SIGHT.*** The sight is set as ordered.

d. To fire at will. (1) Being in any firing formation: ***FIRE AT WILL.*** Each man, independently of the others, comes to the ready, aims carefully and deliberately at the aiming point or target, fires, reloads, and continues firing until ordered to suspend or cease firing.

(2) To fire a designated number of rounds: 1. ***Two (one, five, etc.) rounds,*** 2. ***FIRE AT WILL.*** Each man fires the designated number of rounds, reloads, and holds the rifle in a position of readiness.

(3) To increase (decrease) the rate of fire in progress, the instructor commands: ***FASTER (SLOWER).*** (See Chapter 2, pars. 36 and 37 for signals.)

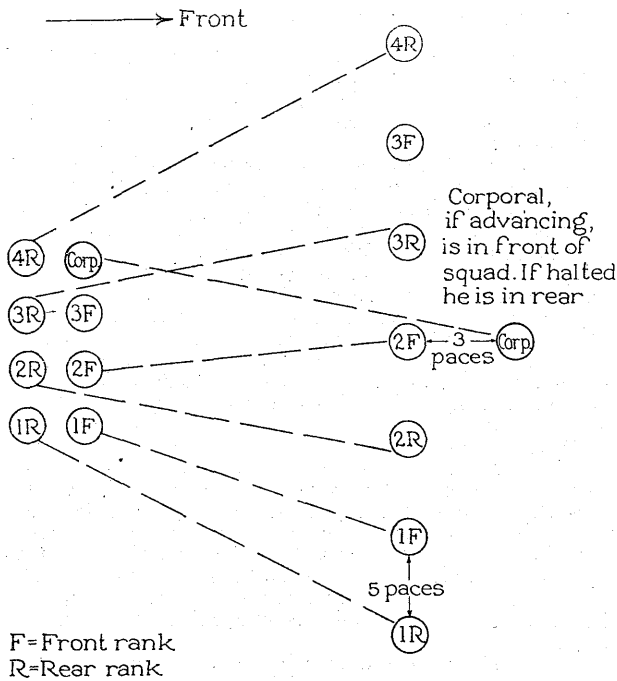


FIG. 64.—To deploy as skirmishers.

e. Instructions for use of the bayonet: (1) The bayonet is fixed at any time when so ordered.

(2) If marching, kneeling, or lying down, the bayonet is fixed and unfixed in the most expeditious and convenient manner and the rifle returned to the original position. ***Fix bayonets*** and ***Unfix bayonets*** are executed with promptness and regularity but not in cadence.

251. Instruction of the rifle squad as skirmishers.—*a. To deploy as skirmishers.*

(1) (*a*) Being in any formation, assembled: 1. ***As skirmishers (so many paces),*** 2. ***MARCH.***

(*b*) The corporal places himself in front of the squad, if not already there. No. 2 of the front rank follows the corporal; the remainder of the men moving at a run, place themselves abreast of the number 2 at the designated interval. No. 1 on his right, Nos. 3 and 4 on his left, rear-rank men on the right of their file leaders, extra men on the left of No. 4; all then conform to the corporal's gait. If no interval is designated, the men deploy at 5-pace intervals.

(c) The corporal is not restricted to any one place but goes where he can best control his squad; however, when he does not want the squad to follow him, he designates to No. 2 the direction of advance. When the squad is in movement, forward or to the flank, he is generally on the side of the squad toward the enemy; when it is in movement to the rear, he is generally on the side opposite the enemy; when it is halted in a firing position, he directs its fire from a position in the rear; when it is otherwise halted, he remains in its front. When it is desirable for the squad leader to take an active part in the fire fight, he takes such position in or near the skirmish line as will enable him to maintain control of the squad.

(*d*) When deployed as skirmishers, the men march at ease, pieces at the trail unless otherwise ordered.

(2) The interval between skirmishers depends upon the tactical situation.

(3) If marching to the rear, skirmishers resume the march to the front by the command: 1. ***Forward,*** 2. ***MARCH.***

(4) If deployed, to increase or diminish the interval: 1. ***As skirmishers (so many paces),*** 2. ***MARCH.*** The men move by the flank toward or away from the guide until the new intervals are obtained.

b. To follow the corporal. (1) Being in any formation, to march the squad without unnecessary commands, the corporal places himself in front of the squad and commands: ***FOLLOW ME.***

(2) If in line or deployed as skirmishers, No. 2 of the front rank follows in the trace of the corporal at about 3 paces; the other men conform to the movements of No. 2, guiding on him and maintaining their relative positions.

(3) If in column, the head of the column follows the corporal.

c. The assembly. (1) Being deployed: 1. ***Assemble,*** 2. ***MARCH.***

(2) They move toward the corporal in double time and form in their proper places.

(3) If the corporal continues to advance, the squad follows him at 3 paces.

d. To kneel or lie down. The kneeling or prone firing position will be assumed:

(1) To kneel: ***KNEEL.*** Assume the kneeling firing position, except the left forearm is across the left thigh; rifle remains in position of order, right hand grasping it above the lower band.

(2) Being at a halt, quick time, double time, or running; to lie down: ***DOWN.*** (See Fig. 65.)

(*a*) Advance the left foot, turning it across the front of the body.

(*b*) Drop forward on the outside of the left knee and at the same time extend the rifle, grasped in both hands and held vertically, so that the butt of the rifle strikes the ground at full arm's length directly in front of the left knee.

(*c*) Pivoting on the left knee and the butt of the rifle, roll forward into the firing position, with the rifle at the shoulder, or into the prone position, with the rifle on the ground to the front.

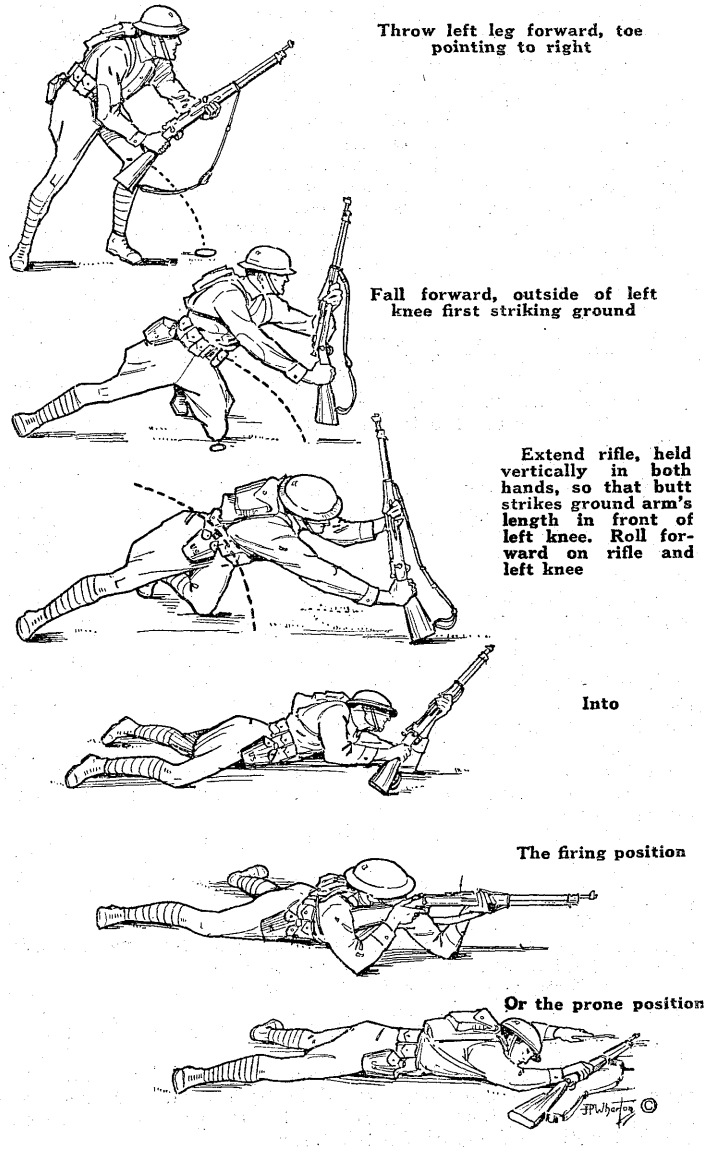


FIG. 65.—To lie down.

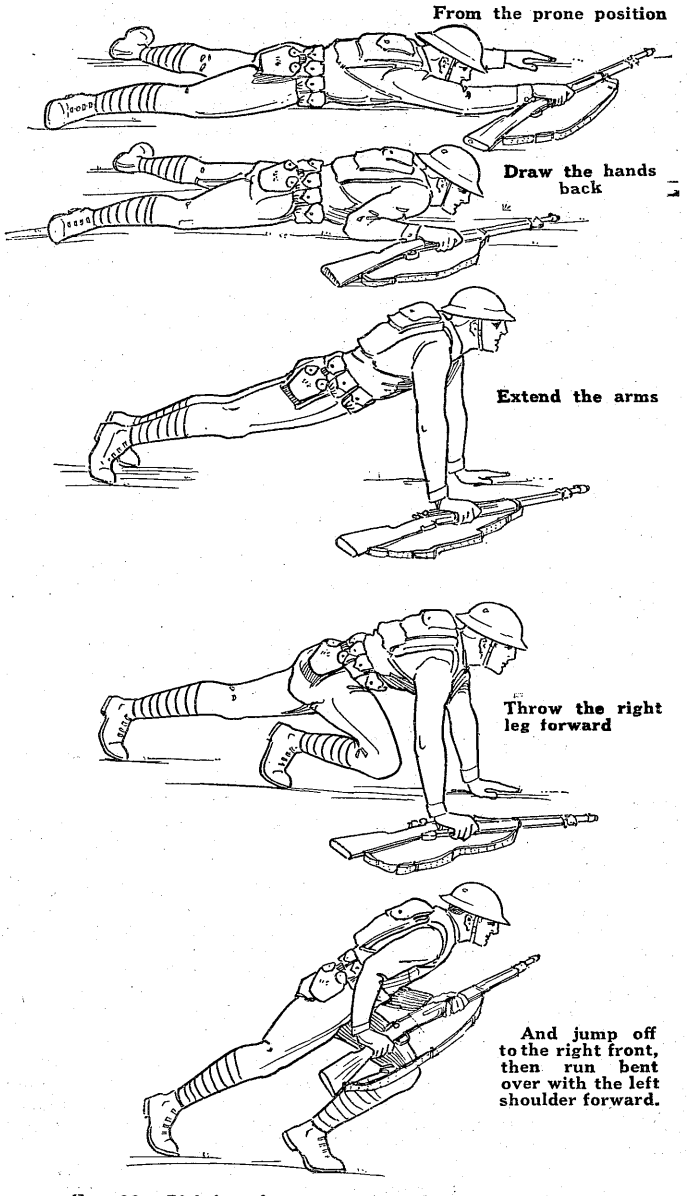


FIG. 66.—If lying down, to move forward at a run.

(*d*) Kneel and lie down with the automatic rifle are executed according to the same principles as with the rifle.

(3) In *lying down,* those required to fire or simulate firing drop to the firing position, others to the prone position.

(4) When without the rifle, to assume the prone position, advance the left foot as above. Extend the left arm over the head and roll forward on to the left knee, the left hip, and the left shoulder into the prone position. Care should be taken that the hands do not get under the body. In the prone position, the body is flat on the belly, the left side of the face on the ground, legs extended and apart with heels down, arms to the front and flat on the ground. The piece, if carried, is held to the front grasped in the right hand.

(5) If lying down, to move forward at a run: 1. ***Cease firing,*** 2. ***Prepare to rush,*** 3. ***UP*** or ***FOLLOW ME*** (or other command requiring a move forward at a run). (See Fig. 66.)

(*a*) If in the firing position, first take up the prone position and then draw the arms in slowly until the hands are opposite the chin, elbows away from the body and down.

(*b*) Raise the body by straightening the arms.

(*c*) Throw the weight of the body to the left arm and leg, and bringing the right leg forward, jump off to the right front. When running, bend as low as possible, keeping the left shoulder forward. Grasp the rifle in both hands, left hand at the balance, right hand at the small of the stock.

(*d*) To move forward other than at a run from the position of lying down, the movement is similarly executed at the appropriate command: 1. ***Forward,*** 2. ***MARCH.***

(6) If kneeling or lying down, to stand up: ***RISE.***

If kneeling, stand up, face to the front, on the ground marked by the left heel in the same manner as described for ***UP.***

If lying down, raise the body on both knees: stand up, face to the front, on the ground marked by the knees.

(7) If lying down: ***KNEEL.***

Raise the body on both knees; take the position of kneel.

The prone position is the usual position of the skirmisher when in skirmish line and when not advancing. When firing, the prone position is used better to utilize cover. The sitting or kneeling position may be used in firing when necessary to obtain a better field of fire.

e. Instruction of the skirmisher. (1) *Use of the rifle.* The instruction of the recruit in the use of the rifle begins at an early period in his training. It is impressed upon him that the rifle and automatic rifle are his principal weapons and that the object of all movement is to place at such point that he can make effective use of them.

(2) *The use of cover.* (*a*) The skirmisher should be given careful instruction in the individual use of cover.

It is impressed upon him that, in taking advantage of natural cover, he must be able to fire easily and effectively upon the enemy. If advancing on an enemy, he must do so steadily and as rapidly as possible. He must conceal himself as much as possible while firing and while advancing. While setting his sight he should be under cover or lying prone. To teach him to fire easily and effectively, at the same time concealing himself from the view of the enemy, he is practiced in simulated firing in the prone, sitting and kneeling positions, from behind hillocks, trees, heaps of earth or rocks, and

from depressions, gullies, ditches, doorways, or windows. He is taught to fire around the right side of his concealment whenever possible, or, when this is not possible, to rise enough to fire over the top of his concealment. He is taught to improve natural cover and adapt it as a firing position by the use of the intrenching tool.

When these details are understood, he is required to select cover with reference to an assumed enemy and to place himself behind it in proper position for firing. Rapid loading, rapid and accurate sight setting, and quick and skillful occupation of the firing position are practiced.

The skirmisher is instructed in the value of the different forms of cover as protection from both terrestrial and aerial view and from high angle infantry artillery fire.

(*b*) The evil of remaining too long in one place, however good the concealment, is explained. The skirmisher is taught to advance from cover to cover, selecting cover before leaving his concealment. It is impressed upon him that a man running rapidly toward an enemy, furnishes a poor target. He is trained in springing from a prone position behind concealment, running at top speed to cover and throwing himself behind it. He is also practiced in advancing from cover to cover by crawling or by creeping.

He is instructed in moving on designated direction points, making use of cover to screen his movements without losing the direction of advance.

(*c*) He is taught that when fired on while acting independently, he should drop to the ground, seek cover, and then endeavor to locate the enemy.

(*d*) The skirmisher is taught that, when acting as a member of a fire unit, should he find himself on ground unsuitable for firing because of lack of visibility or poor cover he at once moves to the nearest favorable locality, avoiding, however, such extensive changes as would blanket the fire of others.

(*e*) The instruction of the skirmisher in the use of cover is continued in the combat exercises of the platoon, but he must then be taught that the proper advance of the platoon and the effectiveness of its fire are of greater importance than the matter of cover for individuals.

(3) *Observation.* (*a*) The ability to use his eyes accurately is of great importance to the soldier. The recruit is trained in observing his surroundings from positions and when on the march.

He is practiced in pointing out and naming military features of the ground; in distinguishing between living beings; in counting distant groups of objects or beings; in recognizing colors and forms; and in the varying visibility of targets as affected by background and light.

(*b*) In the training of men in the mechanism of the firing line, they are practiced in repeating to one another target and aiming point designations and in quickly locating and pointing out a designated target. They should be taught to distinguish, from a prone position, distant objects, particularly troops, both with the naked eye and with field glasses. Similarly they should be trained in estimating distances.

(4) *Night movements.* (*a*) Movements at night or in heavy fog require special practice.

Order, silence, and skill in maintaining direction are the principal requisites. Practice is had in accustoming the eye and ear to the different impressions which objects and sounds make under

night conditions. Estimation of distance by eye and of direction and distance of sounds is practiced.

Exercises are conducted in orientation by means of objects whose location has been observed during the day, by the stars, and by the use of the compass. The soldier is instructed as to the conduct to be observed in case the enemy sets up flares in his vicinity. He is taught to secure his arms and equipment so that they make no noise.

(*b*) By the use of colored glasses, night conditions may be simulated during daylight hours. This procedure has an advantage in that it permits the instructor to observe closely the movements of the men under instruction.

(5) *Special instruction.* The soldier is instructed in the passage of obstacles, wire cutting, and the laying out of panels.

252. Rules for the deployment of the rifle section and platoon.—*a. Formations prior to deployment.* All deployments are executed from column of squads, twos, or files, or from section or squad columns.

b. Direction of deployment. (1) The platoon and section are so instructed that they are able to deploy in any direction in silence and without confusion.

(2) The direction may be designated prior to deployment at the same time as the command for deployment or after completion of the deployment. The direction may be indicated by signals; by designating prominent terrain features (*e.g.,* windmill, building, lone tree); by prescribing a magnetic azimuth; by indicating to the leader of the base unit the route to be followed, or by any combination of the above. If the deployment is to be made in a direction varying greatly from the direction of the advance, the platoon changes direction before deploying. If no direction be designated, the platoon or section deploys straight to the front. Where an advance is to take place on assigned direction lines for long-continued periods, both a distant direction point and a magnetic azimuth should be designated if practicable.

c. Base squad. The leading squad is the base of deployment. it remains the base of movement after deployment, unless another squad is designated by the platoon leader. In the base platoon of the company, the center squad of the leading wave is ordinarily designated as the base of the platoon; in other platoons the base squad is as a rule the squad on the flank toward the base platoon of the company.

d. Alignment and interval. Deployed platoons preserve a general alignment toward, and maintain interval from, the base squad within their respective fronts; individuals or squads march so as best to secure cover or facilitate the advance. Where distant direction points and compass bearing have been designated, each platoon marches in the designated direction. Any discrepancy in direction is, however, adjusted on the base platoon. Where it is impracticable to assign direction lines for long periods in advance, as will ordinarily be the case in mobile situations, both intervals and progress are adjusted on the base platoon.

e. Use of signals. (1) Platoon and section leaders deploy, assemble, and maneuver their units as far as practicable by arm signals.

(2) Whistle signals are sparingly used. In general, their use is limited to movements during the fire fight when on account of the noise of battle it is impossible to attract the attention of the skirmishers by other means.

(3) The habitual use of the whistle as a preliminary to a command is prohibited.

(4) For authorized signals see Chapter 2.

f. Commands. (1) A deployed platoon or section *advances, halts,* moves *by the flank* or *to the rear, obliques,* resumes *the direct march,* passes from *quick* to *double time* and the reverse by the same commands and in a similar manner as in close-order; if at a halt, the movement *by the flank* or *to the rear* is executed by the same commands as when marching. Changes in the direction of march are usually effected by the assignment of a new march direction to the base squad; skirmishers place themselves on the new front by gradual obliques and by opening out from or closing in on the base.

(2) Movements may be interrupted by the commands ***HALT, DOWN,*** or ***RANGE.*** On halting, a deployed line faces to the front (direction of the enemy) in all cases. If halted by the command ***DOWN,*** skirmishers take cover; if halted by the command ***RANGE*** or ***BATTLE SIGHT,*** they occupy a position on an approximate line with the platoon leader, take cover, and place themselves in readiness for instant firing.

g. Posts of leaders, guides, and runners. Leaders, guides, and runners are not restricted to fixed posts. In general the following will govern:

(1) When the platoon is in movement, the platoon leader is on the side of the platoon toward the enemy. When the platoon is halted in a firing position he directs the platoon from a position in rear of its leading section, or if both sections are in one line his position will be in rear thereof; when otherwise halted, he remains in front of his platoon. The post of the platoon sergeant is in rear of the center of the leading wave. During forward or flank movements, section leaders are on the side of the section toward the enemy. During movements to the rear, they are on the side away from the enemy. When the sections are halted in a firing position they are in rear of their sections. When otherwise halted, they are in front of their sections.

(2) Section guides are on the side of their sections away from the enemy, generally near the center of their sections.

(3) At the command for deployment, runners join the platoon leader; when the platoon deploys as an element in the combat formation, one runner joins the company commander.

h. Scouts. All members of the squad are trained as scouts. In each squad, numbers one front rank and rear rank act as scouts. Scouts are instructed to work in pairs.

i. Assembly formation. The assembly formation is always column of squads unless otherwise directed by the platoon leader.

253. Deployment of the rifle section and platoon.—*a. To deploy as skirmishers.*

(1) Being in column of squads, twos, or files, or section columns, to deploy as skirmishers: 1. ***As skirmishers,*** 2. ***MARCH.***

(2) The corporal of the leading squad moves in quick time straight to the front or in the direction indicated by the platoon leader. The leading squad deploys. The center and rear squads of the leading section are conducted by their leaders and caused to deploy abreast of the leading squad, the center squad on its right, and rear squad on its left. If the leading section consists of only two squads, the rear squad deploys on the right of the leading squad.

(3) The rear section deploys abreast of its leading squad and parallel to the line of the leading section as described for that section,

the leading squad deploying in place. Unless otherwise directed by the platoon leader, the rear section moves to the rear a distance of approximately 50 paces from the leading section. If the platoon advances, the rear section halts and allows the leading section to gain the distance of approximately 50 paces and then takes up the advance, modifying its distance as required by considerations of cover.

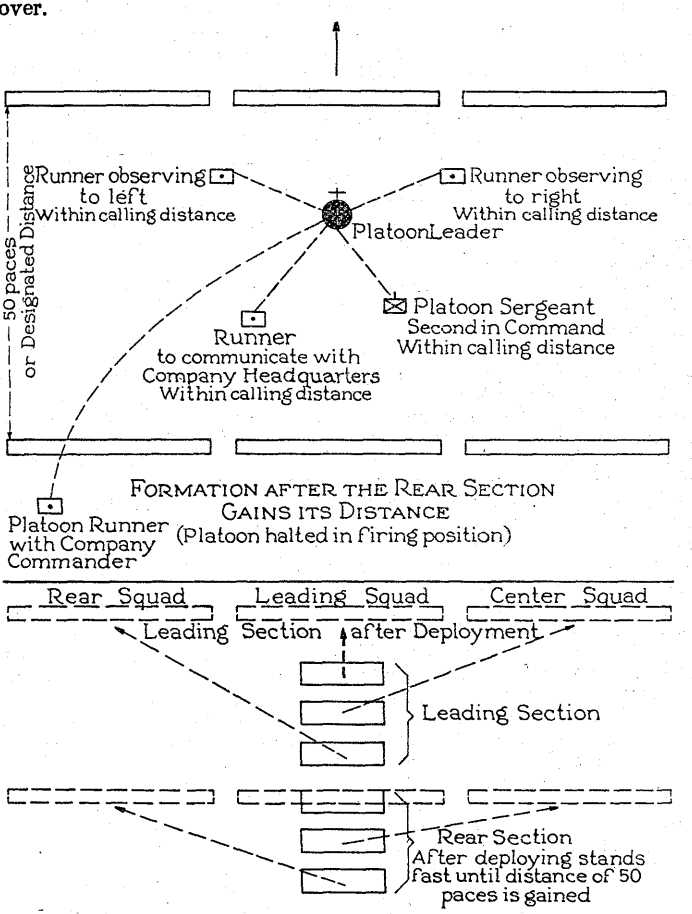


FIG. 67.—Platoon being in column of squads, to deploy as skirmishers. (Halted in firing position.)

(4) The platoon sergeant, section leaders, guides, and runners take their prescribed posts.

(5) Scouts of the leading section move forward a specially designated distance to a specially designated line in front of their sections when the platoon leader directs ***SCOUTS OUT.***

(6) Squads may be deployed on one flank only of the leading squad of each section by the command: 1. ***As skirmishers, right (left),*** 2. ***MARCH.*** Executed as above described except that in each section the squads in rear of the leading squad deploy on the right (left) and abreast of the leading squad of the section, in their order in column.

(7) One section only may be deployed by the command: 1. ***(Such) section,*** 2. ***As skirmishers, right (left),*** 3. ***MARCH.*** Executed by the designated section as above described for the leading section.

(8) Intervals between skirmishers are increased or decreased from or toward the base squad, as described in paragraph 251*a*. (4).

b. To deploy in line of squad columns. (1) Being in column of squads twos, or files, to deploy in line of squad columns: 1. ***Squad columns,*** 2. ***MARCH*** or 1. ***Squad columns, right (left),*** 2. ***MARCH.***

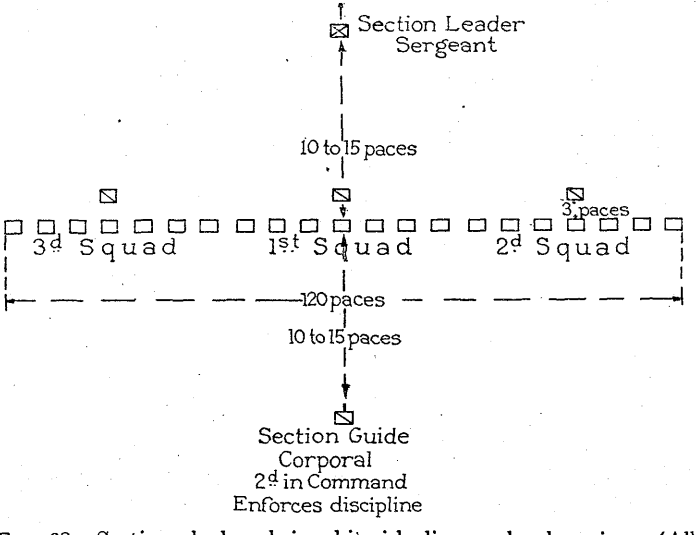


FIG. 68.—Section deployed in skirmish line and advancing. (All distances and intervals elastic.)

(2) Executed as prescribed in paragraph 253*a*, except that in each squad men follow the corporal in left-by-file order; the second in command follows in rear of the squad; leaders of squads in rear of the leading squad of each section conduct their squads in double time to their places abreast of the leading squad of the section, at the designated interval. If no interval is designated 40-pace intervals are taken.

(3) The formation in line of squad columns may be combined with line of skirmishers by appropriate commands; example: 1. ***First section, as skirmishers,*** 2. ***Second section, squad columns,*** 3. ***MARCH.***

(4) The distance between men in squad column is 5 to 10 paces

c. Section columns. Section oclumns are sections in column of twos; the sections are disposed with reference to each other abreast, in column with distances between sections, in echelon, or other formation required by the terrain or available cover, as directed by the platoon leader. When section or squad columns are formed in echelon or other irregular formation, they regulate their march on the most advanced unit.

Section columns may be formed from close-order formation by forming columns of twos in accordance with the principles of close-order and disposing the sections in such manner as the situation may require. If the sections are to be disposed abreast, the platoon should be formed in line of sections as described in Chapter 7, Section II. Distance between men in section columns is such as will permit ease in marching without straggling or undue lengthening of the column.

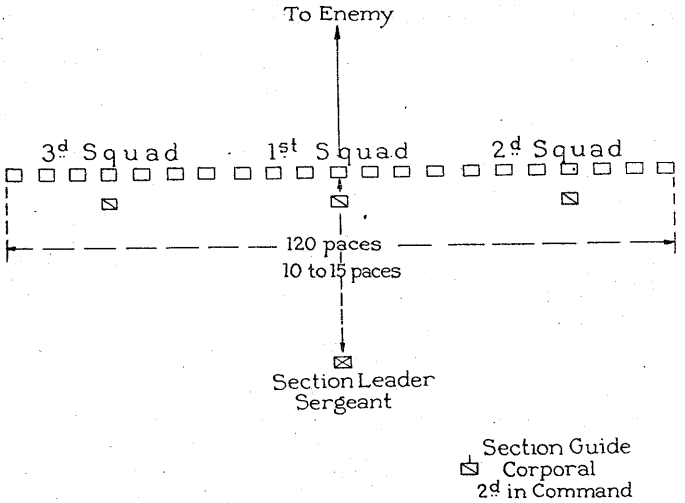


FIG. 69.—Section deployed in skirmish line and halted. (Engaged with the enemy.) (All distances and intervals elastic.)

d. To form line of squad columns from skirmishers. Being deployed as skirmishers, to form line of squad columns: 1. ***Squad columns,*** 2. ***MARCH.*** Each squad leader moves to the front; the members of each squad oblique toward their squad leader and follow him in order of arrival, in single file.

e. To deploy as skirmishers from line of squad columns. Being in line of squad columns to deploy as skirmishers: 1. ***As skirmishers (so many paces),*** 2. ***MARCH.*** Each squad deploys, the skirmishers forming in the same relative order as in deployment from close-order formation.

f. To form section columns from skirmishers or squad columns. Being deployed as skirmishers or in line of squad columns to form section columns: 1. ***Section columns,*** 2. ***MARCH.*** Section leaders move forward in front of their sections; squads, conducted by their leaders, move at a run toward their section leaders and assemble by squads in column of twos in his rear, squads in the same relative

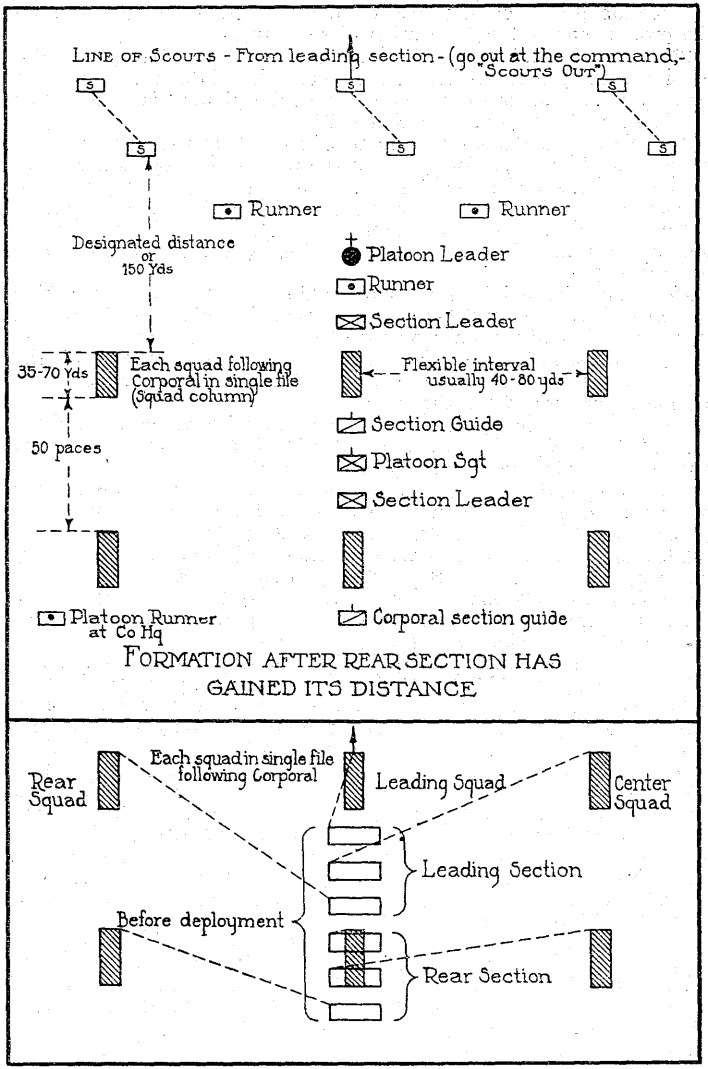


FIG. 70.—The platoon deployed in line of squad columns. (All distances and intervals elastic.)

order as in normal formation of the section in close-order, corporals at the head of their squads.

Section guides follow in rear of their respective sections to insure the prompt and orderly execution of the advance.

254. The assembly.—*a. To assemble the platoon.* Being deployed as skirmishers, to assemble the platoon, the platoon leader takes post at or designates the point at which the platoon is to assemble and signals: 1. ***Assemble,*** 2. ***MARCH.***

The platoon assembles in column of squads, in the same relative order as in the normal formation of the platoon in close order.

The leading squad assembles at the designated point as prescribed in paragraph 251*c*. Other squads are conducted by their leaders at a run toward the assembly point where each squad forms in its proper position. Section leaders, guides, and runners take their prescribed posts.

If already formed in squads or sections or in squad or section columns, these are conducted to the assembly point and formed in their normal relative order by squad or section leaders.

b. To assemble by sections. Sections may be assembled by the command: 1. ***Sections, assemble,*** 2. ***MARCH.*** Executed by each section as prescribed for the platoon.

c. To assemble by squads. Squads may be assembled by the command: 1. ***Squads, assemble,*** 2. ***MARCH.*** Executed by each squad as described in paragraph 251*c* (p. 175).

d. To assemble one section or one or more squads. One section or one or more squads may be assembled by the command: 1. ***(Such) section (or squads) assemble,*** 2. ***MARCH.***

255. Movements of the rifle section and platoon.—*a. To advance by rushes.* (1) (*a*) Being deployed as skirmishers, to advance by rushes, the platoon leader indicates the line or cover to be reached, if practicable, and commands: 1. ***By section (squad, four men, etc.) from the right (left),*** 2. ***RUSH.***

(*b*) The leader of the indicated fraction gives the command: 1. ***Cease firing,*** 2. ***PREPARE TO RUSH.*** The men of the fraction indicated cease firing and hold themselves in readiness to spring forward instantly, taking care not to betray to the enemy by any movement of the body or the rifle the fact that a rush is about to take place. When ready, the leader of the rush commands: ***UP.*** (See paragraph 251*d* (5).) The leader and his men spring to their feet and running at top speed gain the new position, where they throw themselves on the ground (see par. 251*d* (2)) and at the leader's command open fire. The leader of the rush selects the new line if it has not been previously designated. Individual members of the unit make minor changes in selection of firing positions when necessary. (See par. 251*e* (2) (*d*)).

(*c*) The first fraction having established itself on the new line, the next like fraction is sent forward by its section leader without further command of the platoon leader, and so on, successively, until the entire wave is on the line established by the first rush. The platoon leader may direct that the successive fractions execute the rush only upon his signal.

(*d*) The rear wave advances to the position vacated by the leading wave, or remains in its original position or otherwise maneuvers according to circumstances, as directed by the platoon leader or on the initiative of the section leader.

(*e*) While leaders may accompany any fraction of their unit, they usually go forward as soon as a major portion of their unit is

on the new line. When a leader moves forward, the second in command takes charge of the remaining force on the old line and sends the fractions forward as directed.

(2) When the leading wave comprises more than one section, the rush of the wave as a whole in conducted by the platoon leader, as described for a section in subparagraph (1) above.

The platoon leader leads the rush; section leaders lead their respective sections. For combat principles of the rifle squad, section platoon, and company, see Basic Field Manual, Volume I.

b. To advance by thin lines. (1) Being deployed as skirmishers to cross open, fire-swept areas by independent advances of individuals or small fractions, the platoon leader commands: 1. ***On (such line, e. g., crest, hedge, road,* etc.*),*** 2. ***REFORM.***

Each squad leader sends men forward singly or in pairs, or as circumstances may permit, to the line designated by the platoon leader.

(2) The platoon leader must recover control of his platoon at the designated position before attempting a further advance.

(3) This method of advance finds special application at long range or when the source of hostile fire cannot be discovered and beaten down.

SECTION II

THE MACHINE-GUN SQUAD, SECTION AND PLATOON

256. General.—*a. Factors governing extended order.* In combat, machine-gun units take up extended-order formations in order to make effective use of their weapons and to minimize casualties. The extension is governed by the mission to be performed, the nature of the ground, and the necessity for proper control.

b. Rules for deployment.—(1) Deployments from close order are executed from a march column, or from a column of squads, twos, or files; any particular extended-order formation, however, may be executed from any other. The expression "The (such-and-such unit) being in any formation", appearing hereinafter, indicates that the unit in question is in one of the formations authorized in this subparagraph.

(2) All units are so instructed that they are able to deploy in any direction, in silence and in order. The direction may be indicated by signal; by designating prominent terrain features (*e. g.—windmill, building, lone tree*); by prescribing a magnetic azimuth; by indicating to the leader of the base unit the route to be followed; or by any combination of the above. If the deployment is to be made in a direction varying greatly from that of the advance, the unit changes direction before deploying. If no direction be designated, the unit deploys straight to the front. When an advance is to take place on assigned direction lines for long-continued periods, both a distant direction point and a magnetic azimuth should be designated, if practicable.

(3) The leading squad is the base of deployment; it becomes the base of movement after deployment unless another squad is announced as the base by the platoon leader. All extensions are made to the left unless otherwise announced.

(4) All deployments are made at a run: that is, at top speed, in contradistinction to double time. During training in the mechanics of extended order this rule may be departed from, and movements may be made in quick time for instructional purposes.

(5) There is no command of execution, all movements being executed as soon as the signal or command is understood.

c. Movement. (1) A deployed machine-gun unit *advances, halts, obliques, moves by the flank, resumes the forward march, passes from quick to double time* and the reverse, as prescribed in Section X, Chapter 7. (Drill, machine-gun squad, platoon, and company). Changes in the direction of march are usually effected by assigning a new march direction to base squads. The remainder of the unit conforms to the change in direction.

(2) During the fire fight machine-gun units do not maintain a fixed position in relation to the troops they are supporting. Their advance is made by long bounds from firing position to firing position. The time of movement, rate of advance, and route are determined by the leader of the machine-gun unit in conformity with the tactical situation and with such instructions as are issued by proper authority.

(3) Movement may be interrupted by the commands or signals: ***HALT, LIE DOWN, OFF CARTS,*** or ***ACTION.*** On halting, units take advantage of cover. If a halt is caused by the command or signal ***OFF CARTS,*** equipment is removed from the carts, and the carts, if under enemy observation, are moved to the nearest available cover unless otherwise directed. When halted by the command ***ACTION,*** squad leaders cause their equipment to be removed from the carts (if ***OFF CARTS*** has not been executed) and the guns to be mounted in the positions indicated.

d. Signals. Units are deployed, maneuvered, put in action, taken out of action, and assembled, as far as practicable by signals. If necessary, special signals may be used to supplement those prescribed. Whistle signals are used sparingly, being limited to moments during the fire fight when, on account of the noise of battle, it is impossible to attract attention by other means. The habitual use of the whistle preceding a command or signal is prohibited.

e. Preliminary training. Instruction in the mechanism of extended order may be taken up in conjunction with the drill prescribed in Section X, Chapter 7. Training in the extended-order exercises outlined hereinafter should be preceded by instruction in the proper use of ground and cover. The principles covering this instruction are found in Section III, Chapter 1, Basic Field Manual, Vol. I. In this preliminary training, methods of concealing the gun from terrestrial and aerial observation will be emphasized. The use of background, both natural and artificial, of terrain features, and of camouflage should first be demonstrated, then practiced. A guide to this instruction is contained in paragraph 260*d* (p. 198).

257. The squad.—*a. Duties of squad leader.* The squad is deployed and led by its leader. During movement, his usual position is at the head of his squad when it is in squad column, and in the center and slightly in advance when it is deployed in line. It is his duty to guide on the base unit, to watch the section leader for signals, and to lead his squad in the assigned direction, controlling the movements of his men to insure the skillful use of ground and other cover. He will prevent bunching, particularly at the gun. When resuming the advance after a halt, he will make sure that all members of the squad have understood and obeyed the order to move forward. In case of casualties he will prescribe such redistribution of the loads of members of the squad as will insure the arrival at the next firing position of all equipment necessary for the immediate opening of fire.

b. Formations. (1) The most usual extended-order formation of the machine-gun squad is the *squad column* (see paragraph 257*c*) with individuals arranged one behind the other. (Figure 71.) The ordinary distance between individuals is at least 5 paces. This space is increased or diminished depending on cover, visibility, and requirements of proper control. At night, in fog, in smoke, or when advancing through woods, distances are shortened to the limits of visibility in order to prevent loss of control and contact.

(2) In order to conceal the identity of the squad when moving forward with rifle units, or when crossing a short space swept by the aimed small-arms fire of the enemy, a line formation (see paragraph 257*d*) may be assumed. (Figure 72.) This formation is not used when the squad is accompanied by its carts. The interval between men deployed in line is ordinarily 5 paces. This may be increased or diminished in conformity with the nature of the ground, the intensity of hostile fire, and the requirements of control.

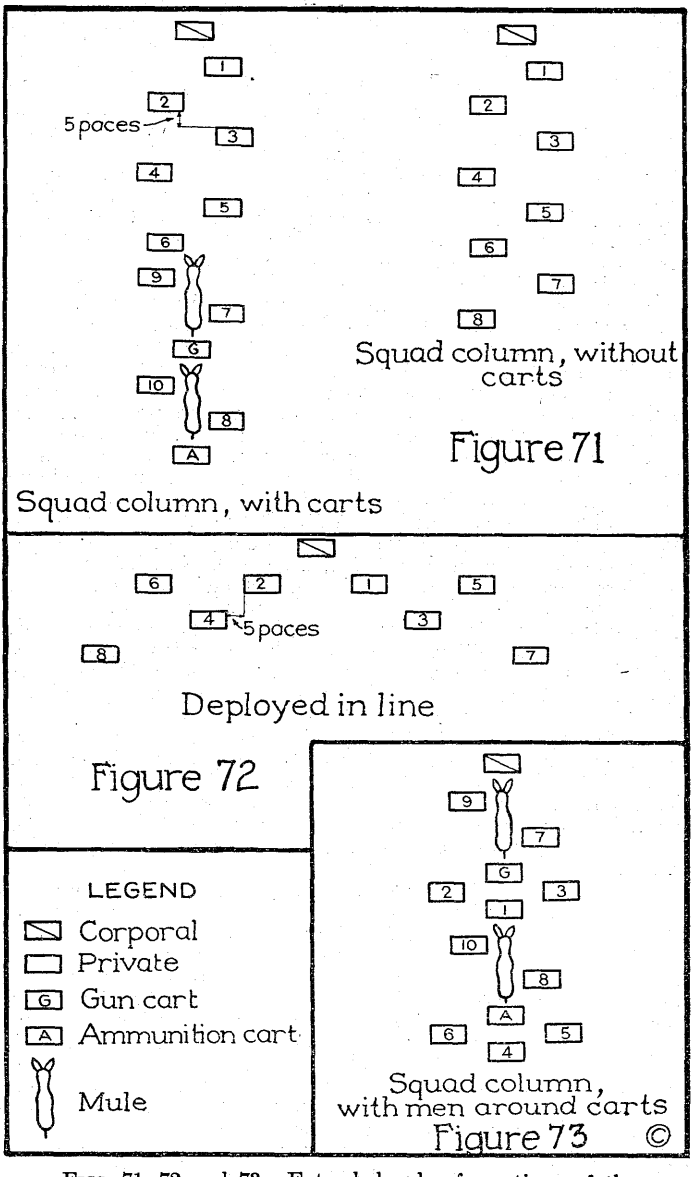
(3) In the approach march when the equipment is on carts and there is probability of immediate action or of delays in progress due to swamps, heavy undergrowth, or other obstruction, members of the squad may be grouped around the gun and ammunition carts (see paragraph 257*e*, and Figure 73). This formation may also be used when there is danger of fire from enemy aircraft. In this case the guns will be mounted on the carts ready for immediate use.

c. Squad column. The squad being in any formation, to form squad column the command is: ***SQUAD COLUMN.*** The corporal moves in the direction designated for deployment, followed in a staggered column by numbers 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, and 6. Nos. 1, 3 and 5 move from 3 to 6 paces to the right and Nos. 2, 4, and 6 move in a similar manner to the left. The gun cart, with numbers 9 and 7, and the ammunition cart, with numbers 10 and 8, follow number 6 unless otherwise directed. When equipment is being carried by hand, numbers 7 and 8 follow number 6 to the right and left of the center line respectively. When necessary, by reason of going through defiles or paths, men may follow in file instead of being staggered.

d. Deployed line. (1) The squad being in any formation, with equipment removed from carts, to form deployed line the command is: ***AS SKIRMISHERS.*** The squad leader moves in the direction of the deployment. Numbers 1, 3, 5, and 7, in the order named, place themselves at 5 pace intervals on the right of the corporal, number 1 nearest him; numbers 2, 4, 6, and 8 place themselves similarly on his left.

(2) To form deployed line with greater or less intervals, or to increase or diminish the intervals when deployed, the command is: ***AS SKIRMISHERS (SO MANY) PACES.***

e. Around carts. The squad being in any formation, to assume a formation with the members of the squad around the carts, the command is: ***AROUND CARTS.*** At this command the squad leader places himself from 3 to 10 paces in front of the gun-cart mule; number 1 places himself in rear of the gun cart; numbers 2 and 3 place themselves abreast of and several paces away from its left and right wheels, respectively; numbers 4, 5, and 6 similarly place themselves near the rear, left and right of the ammunition cart. The distances from the carts at which the men are to move will depend upon the nature of the ground traversed, and the enemy fire. When this formation is assumed on roads as an alert formation for antiaircraft fire, the men will ordinarily walk in the trace of the carts in order to keep the left of the road clear.



FIGS. 71, 72 and 73.—Extended-order formations of the machine-gun squad.

f. Assembly. To assemble the squad, the squad leader commands: ***ASSEMBLE.*** The members of the squad move at a run toward the squad leader and form in their proper places, in the usual close-order formation.

258. The section.—*a. Duties of section leader.* The section is deployed and led by its leader. During movement he occupies no fixed position, but he will generally be in advance of his unit. When leading his section, he selects routes of advance, and reconnoiters for gun positions and targets. When the section is halted in a firing position, he places himself where he can best control its fire, usually in rear and to a flank of his guns; when otherwise halted, he is usually in front of his section. He keeps in touch with the platoon leader at all times.

b. Formations. (1) The formation of the section in a line of squad columns, with an interval of 40 paces between squads (see Figure 75), is used to minimize the effect of hostile shell fire. It is easier to go into action from this formation than from any other.

(2) To obtain greater depth in the deployment, a formation of the section in line of squad columns, echeloned (see paragraph 258c(2), may be used (see Figures 74)). This formation affords greater protection against shell fire, and facilitates the employment of the guns in directions other than to the front. It is especially adaptable to units marching near a flank.

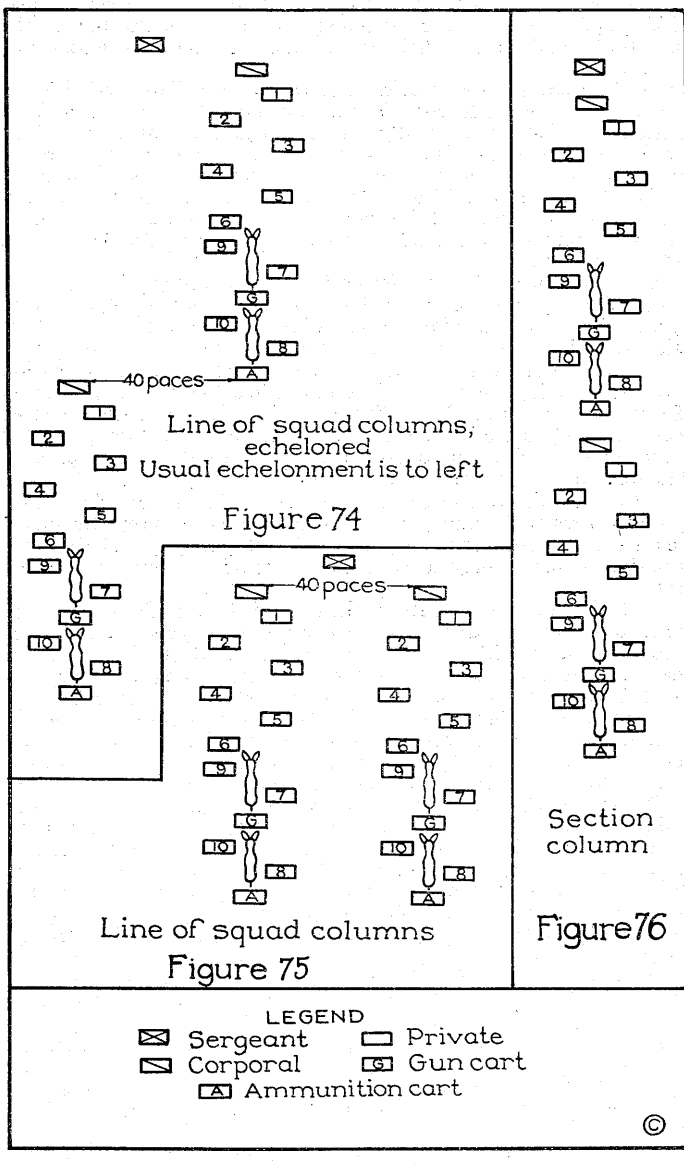
(3) In order to conceal the identity of the section when moving forward with rifle units, or to cross a short space swept by small-arms fire, a line formation may be used (see paragraph 258*d*). This formation is not employed when the section is accompanied by its carts.

(4) To facilitate control when moving at night or through woods, intervals and distances are decreased. A good formation is a section column with shortened distances, in which the squads in squad column march one behind the other (see paragraph 258*e*, and Figure 76). This formation can also be used for moving through defiles or narrow approaches, by having the men follow in file.

c. Line of squad columns. (1) The section being in any formation, to form line of squad columns, the command is: ***SQUAD COLUMNS.*** Each squad leader commands: 1. ***Squad column,*** 2. ***FOLLOW ME,*** and leads his unit in the required direction. The leading or right squad, unless otherwise directed, moves straight to the front, the other to the left oblique, if necessary, continuing at a run until it has gained the required interval and is abreast of the leading squad, whereupon it conforms to the movements of the squad on the right. To form line of squad columns at greater or less intervals, the section leader commands: ***SQUAD COLUMNS AT (50, 30, 20) PACES.*** Deployment may be made to the right by the command: ***SQUAD COLUMNS, RIGHT.*** The movement is executed as described above, except that the rear squad deploys to the right of the leading squad.

(2) To form line of squad columns, echeloned, the command is: ***SQUAD COLUMNS, ECHELONED.*** The execution is the same as is prescribed in subparagraph (1) above, except that the rear or left squad moves so that its head is on a line with the tail of the leading squad.

d. As skirmishers. The section being in any formation, with equipment removed from carts, to deploy as skirmishers, the command is: ***AS SKIRMISHERS.*** The squads, moving straight to the front or in the indicated direction, deploy abreast of their corporals and maintain their same relative positions.



FIGS. 74, 75 and 76.—Extended-order formations of the machine-gun section

e. Section column. The section being in any formation, to form section column the command is: ***SECTION COLUMN.*** The leading or right squad forms squad column, if necessary, and moves off in the indicated direction, while the other forms squad column, if necessary, and follows without distance. The movement is executed at a run until the section column has been formed.

f. Around carts. Any of the above-mentioned formations of the section (except *as skirmishers*) can be used with the men disposed around the carts as provided for in paragraph 257*e*. The section can be formed in line of squad columns, in section column, or in echeloned formations, with the men of each squad disposed around the carts, by modifying the first command by the command ***AROUND CARTS.*** For example, to form line of squad columns with the men around the carts, the command would be: ***SQUAD COLUMNS, AROUND CARTS.***

g. Assembly. To assemble the section, the section leader takes post at or designates the point at which the section is to assemble and commands: ***ASSEMBLE.*** Each squad leader assembles his squad and marches it at a walk or as otherwise directed to the point of assembly. The section assembles in column of squads.

259. The platoon.—*a. Duties of platoon leader.* (1) In general, if the platoon is operating as a part of the company, the time of deployment, the route of approach or general direction of march, and the area for the initial firing positions are selected by the company commander. When this is the case, the platoon leader deploys the platoon, makes such personal reconnaissance as may be necessary or directed by the company commander, and directs the advance of, and assigns firing positions to, his sections. On the other hand, if the platoon is acting alone, as when it is supporting the advance of a rifle company, the platoon leader, himself, will determine both the time and method of deployment, assign the general direction of march, reconnoiter the route of approach, and select firing positions for his unit. In addition he: provides for the supply of ammunition, water, and oil; disposes of the carts when the company commander relinquishes control of them; issues the necessary orders; controls the fire of the platoon; determines the time and method of advance to successive firing positions; maintains communication with his company commander and with the rifle unit which the platoon may be supporting; and (when ordered or when necessary) places his sections for the defence of the ground gained.

(2) The platoon leader does not remain in a fixed position with respect to his unit, but goes wherever his presence is required. During movement he is generally on the side toward the enemy; when the platoon is in action, he occupies a position from which he can observe the effect of fire and from which he can control his sections.

b. Duties of platoon sergeant. The platoon sergeant is the second-in-command; he leads the platoon when the leader goes ahead on reconnaissance or becomes a casualty. When the platoon commander is within controlling distance, the platoon sergeant follows in rear of the platoon during movement and insures its orderly advance. When the platoon is in action, the platoon sergeant is in charge of the platoon command post. He also is charged with the disposal and operation of the range finder.

c. Duties of transport corporal. The transport corporal marches at the rear of the carts of the platoon and insures their orderly advance. After *Off carts* has been executed, he takes charge of the carts and disposes of them in accordance with orders from the pla-

toon leader; in case orders are not issued, the transport corporal takes the carts to the nearest available cover. He commands the platoon munitions distributing point.

d. Duties of agent corporal. When the platoon is deployed, the runners are formed as a squad under command of the agent corporal, who conducts it at the head of the platoon, conforming to the formation of the other elements. When the platoon is in action, as part of the company, operating as a unit, the agent corporal remains at the platoon command post unless otherwise directed, and has charge of the runners under the supervision of the platoon sergeant. If the platoon is supporting a rifle company, the agent corporal, with one or two runners, is sent to the command post of the rifle unit supported.

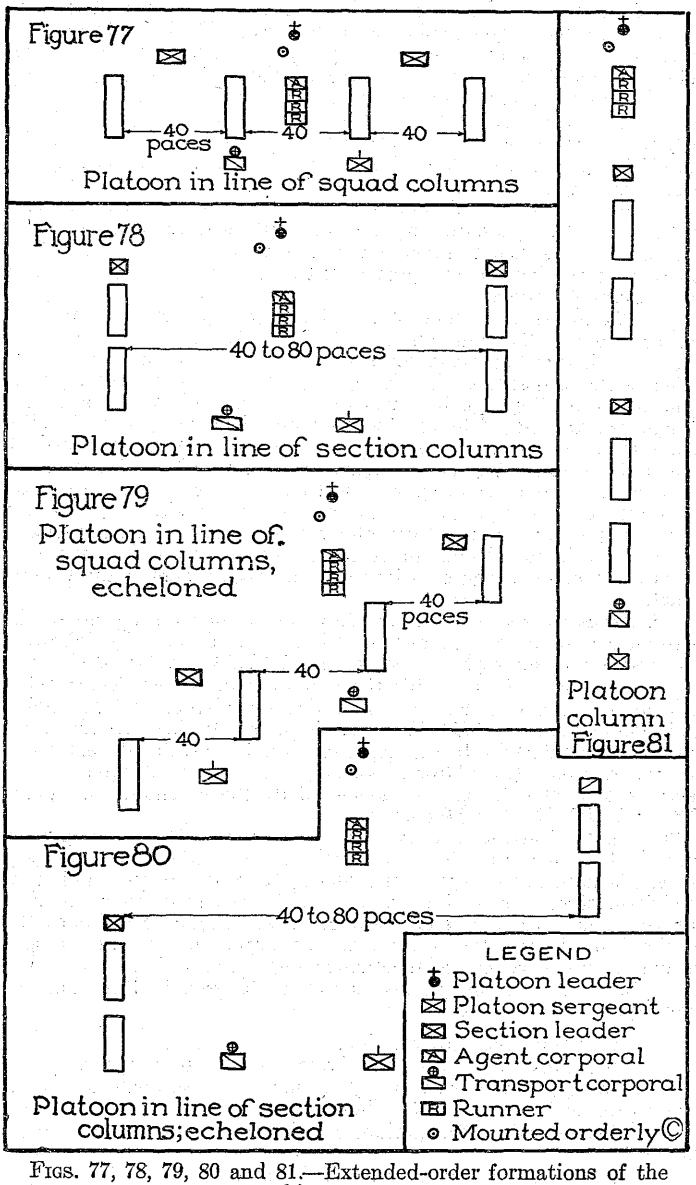
e. Formations of platoon. The platoon deploys in the same manner as the squad and section. Formations used are line of section columns, line of squad columns, platoon column, line of squad columns echeloned, and line of section columns echeloned. No fixed formation will be adhered to. The formations, intervals, and distances will depend upon the requirements of the tactical situation, the nature of the ground, and the fire of the enemy. In order to make the maximum possible use of defiladed approaches, the formations, intervals, and distances will be changed from time to time during the advance, or the formation of one section may be varied from that of the other. Because of difficulty of control, the platoon ordinarily does not advance with squads deployed abreast of each other.

f. Line of section columns. (1) The platoon being in any formation, to form line of section columns, the command is: ***SECTION COLUMNS,*** (see Figure 78). The leading or right section, which is the base, forms section column (see paragraph 258*e*.) and moves straight to the front or in the designated direction; the other forms section column also, and moves to the left and forward at a run until the required interval has been gained and the section is on line with the base section. If no interval is announced, the platoon will deploy with 40 paces between sections.

(2) To form line of section columns, echeloned, the command is: ***SECTION COLUMNS, ECHELONED.*** (See Figure 80.) The leading or right section moves out as laid down in subparagraph *f* above; the other moves to the left until the required interval has been gained, and at such distance that its head is on a line with the tail of the leading section. When changing to this formation from line of squad columns, echeloned, the resulting interval between sections will be 80 paces. If desired, this interval may be reduced to 40 paces by causing the section not the base to close on the base section.

(3) Deployment may be made to the right by the commands: ***SECTION COLUMNS, RIGHT,*** or ***SECTION COLUMNS ECHELONED, RIGHT.*** The movements are executed as described in paragraph 259*f* (1) and (2) above, except that the rear section deploys to the right of the leading section.

g. Line of squad columns. The platoon being in any formation, to form line of squad columns, the command is: ***SQUAD COLUMNS.*** (See Figure 77.) The leading or base squad forms squad column, and, unless otherwise directed, moves straight to the front. The others form squad column, also, and move to the left and forward at a run until they have gained the required interval and have arrived approximately on line with the base squad, whereupon



FIGS. 77, 78, 79, 80 and 81.—Extended-order formations of the machine-gun platoon.

they conform to its rate and direction of movement. The usual interval between squad columns is 40 paces. Deployment may be made to the right by the command: ***SQUAD COLUMNS, RIGHT.*** The movement is executed as described above, except that the rear squads deploy to the right of the leading squad.

h. Line of squad columns, echeloned. To form line of squad columns, echeloned the command is: ***SQUAD COLUMNS, ECHELONED.*** (See Figure 79.) The leading or right squad is the base and forms squad column, moving in the designated direction. The others form in squad column, and each moves to the left and front until its head is approximately on line with the rear of the squad to the right. The usual interval between squads is 40 paces. This movement may also be executed to the right in the manner indicated in paragraph *g* above.

i. Platoon column. The platoon being in any formation, to form platoon column the command is: ***PLATOON COLUMN.*** (See Figure 81.) In this formation the squads in squad column follow each other without distance. To form platoon column from column of squads, the leading squad forms squad column and moves off in the designated direction followed by the others in turn. When the situation requires speed, the movement is executed at a run until all squads have formed squad column; on account of the considerable distance this movement requires the leading units to run with loads, it should be executed at a walk whenever the situation permits. To form platoon column from any other formation, each squad, if not already in squad column, forms squad column and moves at a run by the shortest route to its place in column behind the leading squad.

j. Around carts. Any of the above-mentioned formations of the platoon can be used with men marching around carts, by following the first command with the command ***AROUND CARTS.***

k. Assembly. To assemble the platoon, the platoon leader takes post at or designates the point at which the platoon is to assemble and commands: ***ASSEMBLE.*** Each squad leader assembles his squad and conducts it to the point of assembly as already explained for the section. The platoon assembles in column of squads. The sections of a platoon can be assembled by the command or signal: ***BY SECTIONS, ASSEMBLE.***

260. Extended-order exercises.—*a. General.* (1) As soon as a unit has had instruction in the formations of extended-order sufficient to enable it to deploy easily and quickly in any direction and from any formation, it should be given simple extended-order exercises for the squad, section, and platoon. These should coordinate the mechanism of extended order with the proper use of ground and various forms of cover under assumed tactical situations.

(2) The following points should be stressed in this phase of training:

(*a*) Approach into position.
(*b*) Movement from one firing position to another.
(*c*) Advancing over rough ground and through woods in various formations, with and without carts.
(*d*) Selection, occupation, construction, and concealment of gun positions.
(*e*) Supply of ammunition and water.
(*f*) Speed in going into action from carts.
(*g*) Practice at night.

b. Methods of conducting exercises. (1) The instructor selects suitable ground, prepares a simple tactical situation embracing one or more of the points outlined above, and insures that the organization undergoing instruction is properly equipped for the exercise. The unit is then conducted to the vicinity of the ground selected for the purpose. The instructor explains the purpose and nature of the exercise, and outlines the assumed tactical situation. The unit then carries out the mission which is implied in the statement of the tactical situation or which has been announced by the instructor.

(2) Exercises involving such movements as an approach to a firing position, going into action, and concealment of gun positions, are made more instructive and interesting by detailing a part of the unit or other units to watch the exercise from the assumed location of the enemy. The importance of skillful use of ground and cover and of the proper handling of gun equipment is thus emphasized and understood.

(3) Every extended-order exercise should be concluded by a critique. The entire unit undergoing instruction is assembled for this purpose. The instructor will comment upon the performance of lessons learned in elementary and advanced gun drill and in direct laying, if applicable, as well as the application of formations and movements prescribed for extended order. When a unit has failed to perform the exercise properly, he will point out the causes of the failure and the probable results of such failure under real battle conditions.

c. Approach into position. (1) Special emphasis in extended-order exercises should be laid on the approach into position. Machine guns, when discovered, always attract fire. A careful approach march will be of no value if the last part of the approach and the actual mounting of the gun result in bunching of men and a considerable amount of noticeable movement. The character of the terrain with respect to cover, visibility, and the tactical requirements, will govern the exact method of going into action.

(2) If a position offering but slight cover and under hostile observation is to be occupied, the approach into position must be carried out with great caution. The gun crew must crawl forward with their loads from the nearest available concealment to the gun position, and there mount the gun. Only such members of the squad as are absolutely necessary should go to the gun position. Because of the awkwardness of the loads, this work will require a great deal of practice. Number 1 must crawl forward with the tripod. The gunner folds the legs of the tripod back against the trail and drags the tripod with him as he crawls by hooking his arm under the cradle. Number 2 must crawl forward with the gun, exercising great care so that it will not be damaged. There are two methods of crawling with the gun: in the first, number 2 lies on one side, holding the water jacket of the gun between his legs and the stock in one hand, and hitches himself along with his feet and elbow; in the second method, number 2 carries the gun lying across both arms, crawling on elbows and knees or stooping as low as possible. This latter method allows greater speed but permits less use of concealment Other members of the squad crawl forward, either pushing their boxes ahead of them or dragging them behind by means of the carrying sling. The actual mounting of the gun must be done very carefully in order to avoid attracting attention to the gun position.

(3) Where cover exists close to the position in which the gun is to be mounted, it is usually better to set the gun up under cover and then push or drag it into position.

(4) Time is usually an important factor in battle, and these methods of mounting a gun may often be inadvisable because of the great amount of time necessary to get it into position. Safety at such times may be found in the use of speed in going into action. Where this course of action is advisable, the members of the squad must particularly avoid bunching in moving to the gun position. The squad leader, by causing his men to go individually forward to the gun position, can greatly reduce the possibility of hostile observation and, consequently, the number of casualties.

d. Selection, occupation, and concealment of gun positions.

(1) Since the primary object of extended order is to facilitate the effective use of machine guns in action, instruction in the method of using and improving natural cover and in the construction of simple emplacements will be taken up in this connection. In the attack particularly and sometimes in the defense, section and squad leaders must pick out the exact positions. The proper training of a machine-gun unit demands that exercises in the selection, preparation, and concealment of gun positions be given squads and sections.

(2) There are several requirements for a good machine-gun position. First, it must be such that the mission assigned the gun can be carried out. The orders designating positions should be definite enough to limit the noncommissioned officers to areas where the mission of the company or platoon can be accomplished. Second, the position selected must permit the most effective use of ground for concealment. Not only the position itself, but also the approach thereto, should allow reasonable concealment for the gun crew. The other factors to be considered in selecting positions are ease of control, signal communication, and supply.

(3) Gun positions should always be selected with reference to existing natural cover from observation. High grass or brush, low crests, ditches, steep banks, existing shell holes and dugouts, all furnish more or less desirable concealment for guns. Care must be exercised, however, that the cover itself is inconspicuous. A lone tree or bush, while offering concealment, may also serve as an excellent aiming point for enemy fire. Positions near features of the terrain that are likely to draw fire, and which can easily be designated by the enemy, should be avoided.

(4) In attack situations, opportunities for further preparation of gun positions will be scarce. In the defense, however, even when time is limited, much work can be done in concealing guns. In such situations concealment from aerial observation should be given the same consideration as that from ground observation. The making of paths to and around guns must be avoided. Those already in existence should be used as far as practicable, and any leading to the gun positions must be continued beyond the emplacement, to some other path or road, or to a dummy emplacement. The preparation of the position should alter the natural appearance of the ground as little as possible. If the site is grassy, the sod should first be removed and then later used to conceal any work done. Surplus excavated earth must be disposed of in such a manner as not to attract attention; it may be used on a dummy work. To cover a position completely, recourse to the use of camouflage nets, grass, or brush for screening the work may be necessary. Such screening, if it does not blend with its surroundings, is worse than none. Care must be exercised, or an alert enemy familiar with the ground will recognize changes in the appearance of the terrain. Therefore regular

slopes or outlines, regular spacing, and unnatural shadows are especially to be avoided.

(5) The amount of preparation for gun positions will vary a great deal, depending upon the time available and the character of the ground. Ditches and steep banks give good opportunities for immediate concealment of guns and also for more elaborate emplacements. Shell holes are easily converted into gun emplacements, because the ground in and around a freshly made shell hole is ordinarily soft and easily worked with the small intrenching tools usually available. If time is available, cover for the gun crew against shrapnel and shell fragments and against aerial observation can be obtained by digging into one side of the shell hole. Light overhead cover against aerial observation can be improvised with a few hours labor, by using either netting or small branches to cover the emplacement.

e. Training in supply.—(1) Adequate and uninterrupted supply of ammunition, water, oil, and spare parts being essential to the successful employment of machine guns in combat, training in supply must not be neglected. This form of training involves instruction in the establishment and operation of a munitions distributing point and of chains of supply. Instruction in these having been given, provision for and maintenance of supply should be combined with other extended-order drills and exercises.

(2) A munitions distributing point is established for the company or for each platoon, depending upon the tactical situation. The munitions distributing point is commanded by the senior noncommissioned officer present, usually a transport corporal, and will be manned by mule leaders and horse holders. The establishment of a munitions distributing point involves the following considerations:

(*a*) Receipt and storage of ammunition, water, oil, and spare parts. Ammunition will be obtained from the battalion munitions distributing point by carts. The orders of company commanders and of platoon leaders will state the location of these points, the amount of ammunition to be secured, and possibly the route to be traversed by the carts. Water will be obtained locally wherever possible. Oil and spare parts are not an automatic issue, but when obtained will reach the guns through the munitions distributing points.

(*b*) Sorting, cleaning, and filling empty ammunition belts by hand and with the belt-filling machine; loading of belts with designated proportions of ball, tracer, and armor-piercing ammunition; packing loaded belts into ammunition boxes.

(*c*) Segregation and storage of filled ammunition boxes and water boxes for issuance to carriers as required.

(3) Instruction in the establishment and operation of the chain of supply is of especial importance in extended-order training. When guns are mounted for action, ample ammunition should immediately be brought to their vicinity, to enable them to deliver a suitable volume of fire quickly. To effect this, the ammunition carriers of each squad should be trained to bring the ammunition carried by them to the position of number 3 as soon as the gun has been ordered mounted in a definite position. Squad and section leaders are responsible for getting this ammunition forward. The method by which it is brought forward will depend upon the character of the terrain and the enemy fire. Squad and section leaders will control the ammunition chain by orders given to the carriers through

number 3. The following methods of the operation of an ammunition chain in getting ammunition to the gun position are furnished as guides:

(*a*) When the terrain up to the position of number 3 affords good cover, each ammunition carrier will bring his load to that point.

(*b*) If but one good approach to the gun position exists and if it is difficult for men to move along it (as in a ditch), the ammunition may be passed from carrier to carrier, each man moving it to the position of the next forward carrier. If but one approach to both guns of a section exists, all of the carriers of the section may be combined into one chain and operate as indicated above.

(*c*) If the supply has to be maintained across an open space, covered either by the enemy's observation or fire, boxes may have to be thrown to the position of number 3 or dragged across the open by means of a rope.

(4) The ammunition carried by the members of the squad will often be insufficient for the entire action. The amount needed will vary with the tactical situation. In defensive situations as much as 20,000 rounds per gun may have to be brought to the gun positions. The orders of company and platoon commanders will prescribe the amount of ammunition, the location of the munitions distributing points, the routes thereto, and special instructions for carrying parties. Extra ammunition brought forward must be carried by hand, the work being done by the ammunition carriers of the squads. Squad and section leaders must control these carrying parties by definite orders specifying the location of munitions distributing points, the amounts of ammunition to be brought forward, and the routes to be followed. Whenever the munitions distributing points are at some distance from the gun positions, the ammunition carriers should be handled as a detail under the command of a specified carrier. These details may contain all the carriers of a section or platoon, or the men of each squad may constitute a separate detail. When but one good route to the munitions distributing point exists or where there is considerable danger of becoming lost, a section detail will probably be the best; when the area to be traversed is under heavy enemy fire, several small details can usually move with greater safety. In moving from the gun positions to the munitions distributing points and return, the ammunition details will take all possible advantage of cover, using such formations as will minimize the danger of casualties. The most usual formation will be a staggered column with distances of 5 paces between men. These distances will vary, depending upon the conditions of visibility, ground traversed, and enemy fire. Under conditions of poor visibility or when crossing close country, the distances between men will be materially reduced; under heavy enemy fire, they will be increased.

(5) When sections or platoons move from one firing position to another, by hand, the question of supply is particularly serious. Enough ammunition must be carried so that the guns can carry out their mission from their new positions. To obtain this ammunition it may be necessary for each ammunition carrier to carry 3 or 4 boxes of ammunition on the move. This can be done providing ammunition slings are used. Platoon leaders are charged with the responsibility of prescribing the number of boxes to be carried forward. This number should be sufficient for the initial needs at the new positions. In addition they must inform their section leaders of any change in the location of the munitions distributing points from which they are to procure their subsequent supply.

PART TWO. DISMOUNTED CEREMONIES AND INSPECTIONS

CHAPTER 1

DISMOUNTED CEREMONIES

		Paragraphs
SECTION I.	General rules	261–267
II.	Reviews	268–271
III.	Parades	272–276
IV.	Presentation of decorations	277
V.	Escorts	278–280
VI.	Guard mounting, foot troops	281–283
VII.	Relieving the old guard	284–291

SECTION I

GENERAL RULES

261. Arrangement of units in formation.—*a.* The order in which troops are arranged for ceremonies is prescribed in Volume VI, Basic Field Manual. A peace or reduced strength company in line is formed with the men arranged according to height from right to left, the tallest on the right. In a war strength company the men in each platoon will be similarly arranged according to height.

b. (1) The commanding officer of the unit concerned and his staff will actively supervise formations for all ceremonies. They will move to such positions as will best enable them to make corrections.

(2) Companies in battalions and battalions in regiment are formed as prescribed in Sections IV and V, Chapter 7, Part One.

c. After the command is formed the commander faces it and subordinate commanders face to the front.

262. Staff salutes.—When troops are brought to present arms, the staffs of the various commanders of troops salute with their commanders.

263. Place of formation.—*a.* At the ***Assembly*** for a ceremony, companies are formed on their own parades and inspected.

b. At ***Adjutant's call,*** except for ceremonies involving a single battalion, each battalion will be formed on its own parade, reports received, and the battalion presented to the battalion commander. At the second sounding of *Adjutant's call,* the regiment is formed.

264. Modification of formations.—Formations for ceremonies may be modified by commanding officers when the nature of the ground or exceptional circumstances require such changes to be made.

265. Formation of special units.—The service, howitzer, and regimental headquarters companies are formed as prescribed in Sections V and VI, Chapter 7, Part One. These companies and the machine-gun companies may be formed either mounted and with transportation or dismounted without transportation. When formed dismounted they conform to the formation of the rifle companies.

266. Size of units.—*a.* When participating in a ceremony it is desirable that all platoons contain the same number of squads. When companies are at peace or reduced strength, the battalion may be formed in line, the rifle companies being in line and the machine-gun company in line. If necessary the rifle companies may be formed without a division into platoons, the machine-gun company consisting of but one platoon.

b. Members of company headquarters detachments will, whenever possible, be posted in the line of file closers, formed as an extra squad of a platoon, or used to fill blank files.

267. Manual of arms.—During ceremonies the guides and enlisted men in the line of file closers, execute all movements of the manual. For officers and men armed with the pistol only see paragraph 103 (p. 24).

SECTION II

REVIEWS

268. General rules.—*a.* (1) The adjutant causes markers to be placed or otherwise indicates the line of march of the column in such manner that its flank in passing will be about 20 paces from the reviewing officer.

(2) The post of the reviewing officer is indicated by a marker.

(3) Officers of the same grade as the reviewing officer or of higher grade, and distinguished personages invited to accompany him, place themselves on his left or as otherwise indicated; their staffs and orderlies place themselves on the corresponding side of the staff and orderlies of the reviewing officer; and all others who accompany the reviewing officer place themselves on the left of his staff or as otherwise indicated, their orderlies on the left of the line of orderlies. An officer, preferably a staff officer, is designated to escort distinguished personages and to indicate to them their proper positions.

b. (1) While passing around the troops the reviewing officer may direct that his staff, flag, and orderlies remain at the post of the reviewing officer, or that only his personal staff and flag accompany him. In either case the commanding officer alone moves abreast of the reviewing officer. While passing around the troops the commanding officer is on that side of the reviewing officer which is away from the command. If the reviewing officer is accompanied by his staff, the staff officers of the commander place themselves on the side of the staff of the reviewing officer corresponding to the position of the commander.

(2) The reviewing officer makes such general inspection of the command as he may desire while passing around the troops. A detailed and methodical inspection is not a part of the ceremony of reveiw.

(3) The reviewing officer and others at the reviewing stand salute the color as it passes. When passing around the troops, the reviewing officer and those accompanying him salute the color when passing in front of it.

(4) The reviewing officer returns the salute of the commanding officer of the troops and the salutes of subordinate commanders down to include battalion commanders. Those who accompany the reviewing officer do not salute.

c. In passing in review, each staff salutes with its commander.

d. After saluting the reviewing officer in passing in review, the commanding officer of the troops turns out of the column and takes

post on the side of the reviewing officer toward the direction of march of the command, and returns saber. The members of his staff accompanying him take post on the corresponding side of the reviewing officer's staff and return saber. When the rear element of his command has passed, the commanding officer of the troops, without changing his position, salutes the reviewing officer and draws saber. The members of his staff draw saber at the same time. He and the members of his staff accompanying him then rejoin the command. The commanding officer of the troops and the members of his staff are the only ones who turn out of the column and take post at the side of the reviewing officer.

e. If the person reviewing the command is not mounted, the commanding officer and his staff, on turning out of the column after passing the reviewing officer, dismount preparatory to taking post. In such case the salute of the commanding officer, prior to rejoining his command, is made with the hand before remounting.

f. When the rank of the reviewing officer entitles him to the honor, each regimental color salutes at the command ***Present arms*** given by the battalion commander of the battalion with which it is posted, or by the battalion commander of the battalion posted on the right of the color when the color is not posted with a battalion, and again in passing in review. As a part of the first salute when the commanding officer of the troops salutes the reviewing officer (paragraph 269), one band and the field music designated by the commanding officer of the troops renders the prescribed honors. (See paragraph 269.) Officers and troops retain the position of salute until the completion of the music. During the second salute (when passing in review) only the prescribed ruffles and flourishes will be played by the field music of the band which has turned out of the column and is at the post of the reviewing officer.

g. (1) The band of an organization plays while the reviewing officer is passing around the organization.

(2) During the march in review each band turns out of the column, takes post as hereinafter prescribed or as otherwise directed, and continues to play until the regiment has passed. It then ceases playing and follows in rear of its regiment. The band of the following regiment commences to play as soon as the preceding band has ceased.

(3) In large commands bands may be massed and posted as directed by the commanding general.

h. The present arms by the troops and passing around the troops by the reviewing officer may be dispensed with.

i. Troops march in review with the guide toward the flank on which the reviewing officer is posted.

j. Troops pass in review in quick time only.

k. (1) In reviews of regiments or larger units care must be exercised by each organization commander that the step is maintained in his unit after it has passed the reviewing officer in order not to interfere with the march of the column in rear. If abnormal terrain or other adverse conditions make it necessary, the commanding officer may direct each battalion and special unit, after its rear has passed the reviewing officer 50 paces, to take the double time for 100 yards.

(2) When the review is to be followed by an inspection, units after passing in review reform in their original places or as otherwise directed.

l. In a brigade or larger review a regimental commander may cause his regiment to stand at ease, rest, or stack arms and fall out, and resume attention, provided it will not interfere with the ceremony.

m. When an organization is to be reviewed before an inspecting officer junior in rank to the commanding officer, the commanding officer receives the review and is accompanied by the inspecting officer, who takes post on his left.

269. Battalion review.—*a.* (1) The battalion having been formed in line of close columns or in line, the battalion commander faces to the front. The reviewing officer moves a few paces toward the battalion commander and halts. The battalion commander turns about and commands: 1. ***Present,*** 2. ***ARMS,*** and again turns about and salutes. The reviewing officer returns the salute. At the reviewing stand, when the National Anthem, "To the Color" (Standard) or the "General's March" is played as a part of the honors rendered, the reviewing officer, and those accompanying him, salute as prescribed in Volume VI, Basic Field Manual. (In a unit larger than a battalion the commanding officer of troops waits until all elements have come to *present arms* or the salute, before turning about.) When the rank of the reviewing officer entitles him to the honor, the band or field music plays the appropriate music as prescribed in Volume VI, Basic Field Manual, starting to play as the commanding officer of troops salutes.

(2) The battalion commander (commanding officer of troops) turns about, brings the battalion to order arms, and again turns to the front.

(3) The reviewing officer moves toward the battalion commander and halts about 6 paces from him. The battalion commander salutes, joins the reviewing officer, and accompanies him around the battalion. The band plays while they are passing around the battalion. The reviewing officer proceeds to the right of the band and thence to the left of the line by passing immediately in front of the company commanders. He then proceeds around the flank and passes in rear of the battalion and the band.

(4) On arriving again at the right of the band, the battalion commander salutes and halts, and the reviewing officer with his staff proceeds to his post in front of the center of the battalion. When the reviewing officer and his staff have passed him, the battalion commander moves directly to his post in front of the battalion, faces it, and commands: ***PASS IN REVIEW.***

(5) At the command ***PASS IN REVIEW*** the band changes direction, if necessary, and halts.

(6) (*a*) *The battalion being in line* (*rifle companies in line and the machine-gun company in line*).—When the band has halted, the battalion commander commands: 1. ***Squads right,*** 2. ***MARCH.*** At the command ***MARCH,*** the band, playing, and the battalion move off, the rifle companies forming column of squads to the right; the machine-gun company executing platoons right turn and then moving to the right oblique until the left guides of its platoons cover the guides of the rifle companies.

(*b*) *The battalion being in line of close columns* (*rifle companies in close column and the machine-gun company in column of platoons*).—When the band has halted, the commander of the right company commands: 1. ***Column of squads,*** 2. ***Leading Platoon, squads right,*** 3. ***MARCH.*** At the command ***MARCH,*** the band, playing, and the leading platoon move off. The other platoons

of the right company move forward in time to execute *squads right* on the same ground as the leading platoon and follow the preceding platoon in column of squads at the proper distance and without command from the battalion commander. The other rifle companies successively form column of squads to the right in the same manner and in time to follow the preceding company at 10 paces. The machine-gun company executes column right and then right oblique until the left guides of its platoons cover the guides of the rifle companies.

(7) The band and the battalion change direction at the points indicated without command from the battalion commander. At the first change of direction the machine-gun company executes column left at such time as will permit the right guides of its platoons to cover the right flank of the column. At the second change of direction each rifle company commander in turn commands: 1. ***Column of platoons,*** 2. ***Leading platoon, squads left,*** 3. ***MARCH.*** The machine-gun company executes column left at such time as will permit the right guides of its platoons to cover the right guides of preceding platoons. It will pass in review in column of platoons.

(8) The battalion commander takes post 20 paces in front of the band immediately after the second change in direction.

(9) The battalion commander and staff salute when the former is 6 paces from the front of the reviewing officer and terminate the salute when the battalion commander has passed 6 paces beyond him. The band executes column left when it has passed the reviewing officer. When the rear of the band is 10 paces beyond the left flank of the marching column, it executes a second column left. A third column left is given at such time as to place the band in front of and facing the reviewing officer and 10 paces from the left flank of the troops.

(10) Each company commander and the second in command execute and terminate the salute in the same manner and when in the same relative positions with respect to the reviewing officer as prescribed for the battalion commander and his staff. Each platoon leader without turning his body, commands: 1. ***Eyes,*** 2. ***RIGHT,*** 3. ***FRONT.*** He gives the command ***RIGHT*** when he is 6 paces from the front of the reviewing officer, and the command ***FRONT*** when the rear element of his platoon has passed beyond the reviewing officer. He brings his saber to the first position of present saber at the command ***Eyes*** and to the second position at the command ***RIGHT.*** He resumes the carry at the command ***FRONT.*** Officers in the line of file closers salute at the command ***Eyes RIGHT,*** of the platoon leader.

(11) The commands ***Eyes RIGHT*** and ***FRONT*** will be given by machine-gun company and platoon commanders as prescribed for the rifle company.

(12) The band leader and the drum major execute and terminate the salute at the points prescribed for the battalion commander. In each platoon the right guide, the man on the right in the rear rank, and the officer or man on the right in the line of file closers do not execute ***Eyes RIGHT.*** Enlisted men in the line of file closers do not salute in passing in review.

(13) If the reviewing officer is entitled to a color salute, the regimental color salutes when at 6 paces from his front and is raised when at 6 paces beyond him.

(14) Having saluted, the battalion commander and his staff take post and proceed as prescribed in paragraph 268*d*.

(15) The review terminates when the rear unit has passed the reviewing officer. The band then ceases to play and, unless otherwise directed by the battalion commander, returns to the position it occupied before passing in review, or is dismissed. The battalion then executes such movements as the reviewing officer may have directed, or marches to its parade ground to be dismissed.

b. At battalion review the battalion commander and his staff may, in the discretion of the commanding officer, be dismounted.

270. Regimental review.—*a.* (1) The regiment ordinarily is formed in line of battalions in column of close columns as prescribed in Section V, Chapter 7, Part One, or in case of companies at peace or reduced strength, when not divided into platoons, in line, each battalion being in close column.

(2) The review proceeds as prescribed for the battalion, except that "regimental commander" is substituted for "battalion commander" and "regiment" for "battalion".

(3) At the regimental commander's command ***Present arms,*** the battalion commander of the center battalion commands: 1. ***Present,*** 2. ***ARMS.*** The other battalion commanders, successively from the center, bring their battalions to present arms. ***Order arms*** is similarly executed.

(4) To march the regiment in review, the regimental commander commands, orders, or signals: ***Pass in review.*** At this command the band changes direction, if necessary, and halts.

(5) (*a*) When the regiment is formed in line of battalions, in column of close columns, and the band is halted, the battalion commander of the right battalion commands: 1. ***Column of close lines,*** 2. ***First company, squads right,*** 3. ***MARCH.*** At the command ***MARCH,*** the band and the leading company of the right battalion move off, the band playing. The other companies of the right battalion move forward successively in time to execute squads right (column right for the machine-gun company) on the same ground as the leading company, and follow the preceding company at 15 paces. Other battalion commanders, successively from the right, move their battalions by the same commands and in a similar manner in time to follow the preceding battalion at 50 paces. The band and companies change direction without command from the battalion commanders and pass in review, the rifle companies in close column, the machine-gun company in column of platoons. At the first change of direction rifle companies execute ***Squads left*** and at the second change ***Column left.*** The machine-gun company executes ***Column left*** at each change of direction.

(*b*) When the regiment is formed in line of battalions, each battalion in close column, companies being at peace or reduced strength and not divided into platoons, and the band has halted, the battalion commander of the right battalion commands: 1. ***Column of squads,*** 2. ***First company, squads right,*** 3. ***MARCH.*** At the command ***MARCH,*** the band and the leading company of the right battalion move off, the band playing. The other rifle companies of the right battalion move forward successively in time to execute squads right on the same ground as the leading company and follow the preceding company at 5 paces. The machine-gun company moves forward and executes right turn in time to follow the preceding company at a distance of machine-gun company front plus 5 paces, and so that the left guide will cover the guides of the rifle companies. Other battalion commanders, successively from the right, move their battalions by the same command and in a similar manner in time

to follow the preceding battalion at 50 paces. The band and companies change direction without command from the battalion commanders and pass in review in column of companies. At the first change of direction each battalion executes ***Column left,*** the machine-gun company changing direction at such time as will permit the right guide to cover the right flank of the column, and at the second change each battalion forms column of companies.

(6) At the second change of direction each battalion commander takes post 20 paces in front of his leading company. The regimental commander takes post 30 paces in front of the band immediately after the second change of direction.

(7) The march of the combined special units is conducted similarly to that of a battalion.

(8) The commands ***Eyes RIGHT*** and ***FRONT*** are given as prescribed for battalion review.

(9) The rear of the column having passed the reviewing officer, the battalions and special units ordinarily are marched to their parades and dismissed.

b. The review of a small body of troops composed of different arms is conducted on the principles laid down for the regiment. The troops of each arm are formed and marched so as to conform to the movement of the infantry.

271. Reviews of brigades or larger units.—*a.* The principles of regimental review are observed for larger units.

b. A command consisting of one regiment or less and detachments of other arms, is formed for review as ordered by the commanding officer.

c. (1) In the review of a brigade or larger command, regiments are formed as prescribed for the regiment. Trains and other organizations are similarly formed. The arrangement of the regiments and brigades is made as prescribed by the commander.

(2) The basic units of movement are the infantry battalion and the field artillery battery.

d. The reviewing officer takes post opposite the center of the command. The commanding officer of troops commands: 1. ***Present,*** 2. ***ARMS.*** Battalion and other units are presented and brought to the order successively from the center as prescribed for the regimental review. Only the commanding officer of the troops and battalion commanders and commanders of units not part of a battalion give the command ***Present arms.*** Brigade and regimental commanders and their staffs salute as soon as their last units have presented arms.

e. (1) The reviewing officer receives the present in front of the center of the command. After passing around the command, he takes post at a convenient distance in front and to the right flank. The commanding officer of the troops then commands, orders, or signals: ***PASS IN REVIEW.*** At the command ***PASS IN REVIEW,*** the band of the right regiment changes direction to the right and halts, the unit or units posted on the right of the right regiment change direction to the right, form in the prescribed formation in column and halt with sufficient distance between them and between the band of the right regiment and the unit immediately in front of the band, for brigade and regimental commanders and their staffs to take their proper positions in front of their commands. The battalion commander of the right battalion commands: 1. ***Column right,*** 2. ***MARCH.*** At the command ***MARCH,*** the band of the right regiment, playing, and the unit or units in front of the band execute

forward march, the right battalion executes *column right* and follows the band at 50 paces. The band turns to the left out of column when 50 to 100 paces beyond the reviewing officer, and moves a sufficient distance in the new direction to countermarch and halt on the line with him. The other battalions of the right regiment move successively to the right in like manner, in time to follow the preceding battalion, in column of close columns at 50 paces. The right battalion of each succeeding regiment moves to the right in time to allow the band of its regiment to follow the preceding unit at 80 paces. The distance between brigades is 120 paces.

(2) ***Eyes left*** is executed similarly to the method of executing ***eyes right*** as prescribed for the regiment.

(3) The foregoing formation may be modified to conform to available terrain.

(4) The command may pass in review toward either flank or to the front of either flank as required by the nature of the ground.

SECTION III

PARADES

272. General rules.—*a.* If dismounted, the officer receiving the parade and his staff stand at parade rest with arms folded and raised so that the upper arms are horizontal, while the band is sounding off. They resume attention with the adjutant. If mounted, they remain at attention.

b. At the command ***REPORT,*** given by a battalion adjutant, the company commanders in succession from the right salute and report "A (or other) company, present or accounted for"; or "A (or other) company, (so many) officers or men absent." The adjutant returns each company commander's salute after the report is made and understood. He returns to the carry saber after acknowledging each salute.

c. Headquarters companies, machine-gun companies, and the howitzer company are ordinarily formed dismounted and without carts, their formations, commands, and movements conforming to those of the rifle companies. If formed mounted and with carts, their commanders dismount to execute *officers center* at battalion parades.

273. Battalion parade.—*a.* At *adjutant's call,* the battalion is formed in line of close columns or line, but is not presented. The battalion commander takes post at a convenient distance in front of the center of, and facing, the battalion.

b. The adjutant, from his post in front of the center of the battalion, commands: 1. ***Parade,*** 2. ***REST.*** After the battalion has executed *parade rest* he then commands: ***SOUND OFF.***

c. The band in place, plays the *sound off* of three chords, giving two beats in quick time to each chord, and at the conclusion of the third chord moves forward, playing in quick time. It executes column left so as to march across the front of the battalion midway between the adjutant and the line of company commanders. When the band has passed the left of the line it countermarches and returns over the same ground to the right of the line. After it passes beyond the right of the battalion it executes column right. When the entire band has passed beyond the front rank of the battalion it again countermarches and halts in its original position. When the band ceases playing, the *sound off* is again played. At evening parade, when the band ceases playing, *retreat* is sounded by the

field music. Following the last note and while the flag is being lowered, the band plays the *national anthem.*

d. Just before the last note of retreat, the adjutant comes to attention and at the ending of the last note commands: 1. ***Battalion,*** 2. ***ATTENTION,*** 3. ***Present,*** 4. ***ARMS.*** The adjutant then salutes. The battalion remains at *present arms* during the playing of the *national anthem.* The adjutant then turns about, salutes, and reports "Sir, the parade is formed." The battalion commander directs the adjutant "Take your post, Sir," and draws saber. The adjutant moves at a trot (in quick time if dismounted), passes by the battalion commander's right, and takes his post.

e. The battalion commander then commands: 1. ***Order,*** 2. ***ARMS,*** and gives such movements in the manual of arms as he may desire. Officers, noncommissioned officers commanding platoons, the color guard, and guidon bearers having once executed the *order arms,* remain in that position during the movements of the manual.

f. The battalion commander then directs the adjutant "Receive the reports, Sir." The adjutant, passing by the battalion commander's right, advances at a trot (in quick time if dismounted) toward the center of the battalion, halts midway between it and the battalion commander and commands: ***REPORT.***

g. The reports are then made as prescribed in paragraph 272*b*.

h. The reports received, the adjutant turns about, and reports "Sir, all present or accounted for"; or "Sir, (so many) officers, and (or) (so many) men absent," including among the absentees those from the band and field music reported to him by the band leader prior to the parade.

i. The battalion commander directs "Publish the orders, Sir." The adjutant turns about, and commands: ***ATTENTION TO ORDERS.*** He publishes the orders and then commands: 1. ***Officers,*** 2. ***CENTER,*** 3. ***MARCH.*** After giving the command ***MARCH,*** the adjutant turns about and takes his post.

j. At the command ***Officers,*** company commanders execute *carry saber.* At the command ***CENTER,*** they face to the center. At the command ***MARCH,*** they close to the center, (the band playing), halt, and individually face to the front.

k. The company commanders, having closed and faced to the front, the senior commands: 1. ***Forward,*** 2. ***MARCH.*** The company commanders advance, the center officer being the guide, and march on the battalion commander. The company commanders are halted 6 paces from the battalion commander by the senior, who commands: 1. ***Officers,*** 2. ***HALT.*** They halt and salute, returning to the carry with the battalion commander. The battalion commander returns the salute, then gives such instructions as he deems necessary, and commands: 1. ***Officers,*** 2. ***POSTS,*** 3. ***MARCH.***

l. At the command ***POSTS,*** company commanders face about.

m. At the command ***MARCH,*** they step off with the guide as before. The senion commands: 1. ***Officers,*** 2. ***HALT,*** so as to halt them 8 paces from the line; he then commands: 1. ***POSTS,*** 2. ***MARCH.***

n. At the command ***POSTS,*** company commanders face outward, and at the command ***MARCH,*** step off in succession at 4-pace distance, resume their posts and execute *order saber.* During the execution of *officers center* and *officers posts,* company commanders remain at the *carry* except when saluting the battalion commander.

o. The music ceases when the last company commander has resumed his post.

p. The battalion commander then gives the commands for the battalion to pass in review and returns saber.

q. The battalion marches according to the commands and principles of review. When the last company has passed, the ceremony is concluded.

r. The band continues to play while the companies are in march upon the parade ground. After passing in review, companies are marched to their respective parades and dismissed.

s. When the company commanders have saluted the battalion commander, as explained in *k* above, he may direct them to form line with his staff, in which case they move individually to the front, passing to the right and left of the battalion commander and staff, place themselves on the left of the line established by the staff and stand at attention at *carry saber.* They *return saber* with the battalion commander. The music ceases when the company commanders join the staff. When the company commanders take post on line with the staff the second in command of each company immediately assumes command. The battalion commander then causes the companies as heretofore prescribed to pass in review.

274. Battalion parade (alternate ceremony).—The following alternate ceremony for battalion parade, in which all company officers and guidon bearers close to the center and march to the front, may be substituted for that prescribed in paragraph 273.

a. The battalion commander and staff may be mounted or dismounted. All other persons are dismounted. The headquarters company and the machine-gun company are without their carts. The companies will be so formed that either each company or none of the companies will have an officer in the post designated for the second in command. This alternate ceremony proceeds as prescribed in paragraphs 273*a* to *i,* inclusive.

b. At the command ***Officers,*** all company officers execute *carry saber,* guidon bearers execute *carry guidon.* At the command ***CENTER*** all company commanders, officers second in command of companies, officers commanding the leading platoons, and guidon bearers face to the center, officers commanding rear platoons take post in the column formed by the commanders of the leading platoons facing the center, the commander of the first platoon in rear in front of the right guide of the leading platoon, the commander of the second platoon in rear in front of the left guide of the leading platoon. Officers in the line of file closers take post in the column formed by the platoon leaders facing the center and opposite the intervals between companies. At the command ***MARCH,*** officers and guidon bearers close to the center, the band playing, halt, and individually face to the front; company commanders and officers second in command oblique to the front and close on a line four paces in advance of the line of guidon bearers; guidon bearers close on their own line, each taking post in rear of his own company commander; all other officers close on the line of the commanders of leading platoons. When companies are formed as single platoons all officers except company commanders and officers second in command close on the line three paces in front of the front ranks of the companies, guidon bearers close on a line four paces in advance of the line of officers thus formed, company commanders and officers second in command close on a line four paces in advance of the line of guidon bearers.

c. The officers and guidon bearers having closed and faced to the front, the senior commands: 1. ***Forward,*** 2. ***MARCH.*** The officers

and guidon bearers advance, the center officer of the leading rank being the guide, and march on the battalion commander. The officers and guidon bearers are halted with the leading rank 6 paces from the battalion commander, by the senior, who commands: 1. ***Officers,*** 2. ***HALT.*** They halt and salute the battalion commander, who returns the salute. The battalion commander then commands 1. ***Carry,*** 2. ***SABER.*** At the first command, the guidon bearers grasp the lance with the left hand, executing the first position of *carry guidon.* At the second command, executed simultaneously, the officers execute *carry saber,* the guidon bearers completing the *carry guidon.* The battalion commander then gives such instructions as he deems necessary, and commands: 1. ***Officers,*** 2. ***POSTS,*** 3. ***MARCH.***

d. At the command ***POSTS,*** officers and guidon bearers face about.

e. At the command ***MARCH*** they step off with the guide as before, the center officer of the leading rank being the guide. The senior commands: 1. ***Officers,*** 2. ***HALT,*** so as to halt the leading rank 3 paces from the line of companies; he then commands: 1. ***POSTS,*** 2. ***MARCH.***

f. At the command ***POSTS,*** officers and guidon bearers face outward, and at the command ***MARCH*** step off in succession at 4 paces distance, resume their posts, and execute *order arms.* The music ceases to play when the last officer has resumed his post. During the execution of *officers center,* and *officers posts,* all officers and guidon bearers remain at the carry except when saluting the battalion commander. Company commanders do not form on line with the staff after saluting the battalion commander.

g. The alternate ceremony continues as prescribed in paragraphs 273*o* to *r,* inclusive.

275. Regimental parade.—*a.* The regiment is ordinarily formed in line of battalions in column of close columns.

b. The parade proceeds as for the battalion as prescribed in paragraph 273, with the following exceptions:

(1) "Regimental commander", is substituted for "battalion commander", and "regiment" for "battalion" in the description, and "battalions" for "battalion" in the commands.

(2) In moving across the front of the regiment the band passes midway between the adjutant and the line of battalion commanders.

(3) The battalions execute *present arms, order arms, parade rest,* and come to *attention* at the command of execution of their respective commanders, successively, from the center battalion.

(4) After publishing the orders, the adjutant commands: 1 ***Officers, center,*** 2. ***MARCH.***

(5) The battalion commanders form one line, closing on the center. The senior commands: 1. ***Forward,*** 2. ***MARCH.*** The center battalion commander is the guide and marches on the regimental commander.

(6) Battalion staff officers remain at their posts.

(7) After being dismissed, the battalion commanders turn successively to the right or left, move at a trot toward their respective battalions, each by the most direct route, and resume their posts. If dismounted, they face about at the command ***POSTS,*** and at the command ***MARCH*** proceed to their posts in quick time and by the most direct route.

(8) To march the regiment in review the regimental commander commands, orders, or signals: ***PASS IN REVIEW.*** The regiment marches according to the principles of review.

276. Regimental parade (alternate ceremony).—The following alternate ceremony for regimental parade may be substituted for that prescribed in paragraph 275, when the size of the regiment or other circumstances make it desirable. This alternate ceremony proceeds as prescribed in paragraph 274. Battalion commanders and their staffs close on the line of battalion commanders, company commanders and officers second in command oblique to the front and close on a line 4 paces in their rear, guidon bearers oblique to the front and close on a line 4 paces in rear of the company commanders, other officers oblique to the front and close on a line 4 paces in rear of the guidon bearers. The regimental commander and staff may be either mounted or dismounted, all other persons are dismounted. Headquarters, machine-gun, howitzer, and service companies are without carts or transportation.

SECTION IV

PRESENTATON OF DECORATIONS

277. Presentation of decorations.—*a.* Whenever practicable a review will be held on occasions of:

(1) The presentation of an American decoration, except when the medal of honor is presented in person by the President.

(2) The decoration of the colors.

(3) The presentation of a foreign decoration.

b. After the reviewing officer has passed around the line and resumed his post, the commanding officer of the troops, from his post commands, orders, or signals: 1. ***Persons to be decorated and all colors, center,*** 2. ***MARCH.*** At the command ***MARCH,*** persons to be decorated and all colors move by the most direct route and take post as follows:

(1) The persons to be decorated in single rank in the center of the command and 10 paces in front of the line of company commanders in groups according to rank of decorations; within each group according to rank of individuals, highest ranking decoration and individual on the right, respectively.

(2) Colors to be decorated in single rank 5 paces in front of the center of the line of persons to be decorated in groups according to rank of decoration to be bestowed, highest ranking decoration on the right.

(3) All other colors with color guards in single rank 5 paces in rear of the center of the persons to be decorated and in the same relative position as their location in the command.

(4) The commanding officer of the troops takes post 5 paces in front of the center of the leading element. He then commands: 1. ***Forward,*** 2. ***MARCH.*** At the command ***MARCH,*** the commanding officer, the persons to be decorated, and the colors advance, the band playing. The commanding officer of the troops marches on the reviewing officer. In all ranks the guide is center. The detachment is halted by the commanding officer of the troops when he has reached a point 10 paces from the reviewing officer by the command: 1. ***Detachment,*** 2. ***HALT.*** He then salutes the reviewing officer and reports "Sir, the persons (colors) to be decorated are present." The reviewing officer returns the salute and directs that the command be presented. The commander of the troops returns to his post in front of the center of his command by moving around the right flank of the persons or colors to be decorated and then directly to his post. On reaching his post he commands: 1. ***Present,*** 2. ***ARMS,***

faces about and salutes. The band then plays the *national anthem.* If only field music is present, it sounds *to the color.* On completion of the music, the commanding officer of the troops brings the command to the order. The persons to be decorated salute and terminate the salute at the commands ***Present arms*** and ***Order arms,*** respectively, of the commanding officer of the troops.

c. A designated staff officer then reads the order announcing the awards. After the reading of the order, the reviewing officer, accompanied if necessary by his staff or designated members thereof, advances to the colors and to the line of persons to be decorated and fastens the appropriate streamer to the staff of the color, and pins the decoration awarded on the left breast of each person. He then directs the commanding officer of the troops to march the command in review and resumes his post. The persons decorated form line on the left of the reviewing officer or as otherwise directed, and the colors return to their posts by the most direct route.

SECTION V

ESCORTS

278. Escort of the color.—*a.* (1) The regiment being in line of battalions in column of close columns, the regimental commander details a company, other than the color company, to receive and escort the national color to its place. During the ceremony the regimental color remains with the color guard at its post with the regiment.

(2) The band moves straight to its front until clear of the line of field officers, changes direction to the right, and halts. The designated company forms column of platoons 15 paces in rear of the band with the color bearer in the line of file closers of the center platoon.

(3) The escort then marches without music to the regimental commander's office or quarters and forms in line facing the entrance.

(4) The color bearer, preceded by the senior lieutenant and followed by a sergeant of the escort, obtains the color.

(5) When the color bearer returns, followed by the lieutenant and the sergeant, he halts before the entrance, facing the escort. The lieutenant places himself on the right, and the sergeant on the left, of the color bearer. The escort then presents arms, and field music sounds *to the color.* The lieutenant and the sergeant salute at the command of the company commander.

(6) Arms are brought to the order; the lieutenant and the sergeant return to their posts. The company is formed in column of platoons, the band taking post in front of the column. The color bearer places himself in the center of the space in rear of the center platoon. The escort then marches in quick time, with guide left, back to the regiment, the band playing. The march is conducted so that the escort arrives at a point 50 paces in front of the right of the regiment, and then passes parallel to its front. When the color arrives opposite the center of the regiment, the escort is formed in line to the left. The color bearer, passing between the platoons, advances and halts 6 paces in front of the regimental commander.

(7) The color bearer having halted, the regimental commander, who prior to the arrival of the color bearer has taken post 30 paces in front of the center of the regiment, turns about and commands: 1. ***Present,*** 2. ***ARMS.*** The regimental commander then turns to the front and salutes. The field music sounds *to the color* when the regimental commander salutes.

(8) The regimental commander then turns about and brings the regiment to the order and the color bearer takes post.

(9) The escort executes *present* and *order arms* at the command of its commander, who then forms it in column of platoons, and preceded by the band marches it to its place, passing around the left flank of the regiment.

(10) The band plays until the escort passes the left of the line. It then returns to its post on the right, passing in rear of the regiment.

(11) The regiment may be brought to rest when the escort passes the left of the line.

b. Escort of the color is executed by a battalion according to the same principles.

279. Escorts of honor.—*a.* Escorts of honor are detailed for the purpose of receiving and escorting personages of high rank, civil or military. The troops detailed for this duty are selected for their soldierly appearance and superior discipline.

b. The escort forms in line, opposite the place where the personage is to present himself, the band on the flank of the escort toward which it is to march. On the appearance of the personage, the escort will be brought to attention and, when he has taken position from which to receive them, the honors due his rank will be rendered. Ordinarily the person so honored will inspect his escort. The escort then forms column of platoons or squads and takes up the march. The personage with his staff or retinue takes position in rear of the column. When the personage leaves the escort, line is again formed, and, when he has taken position from which to receive them, the same honors are rendered as on his arrival.

c. When the position of the escort is at a considerable distance from the point where the personage is to be received, as for instance where a courtyard or wharf intervenes, a double line of sentinels, facing inward, is posted from that point to the escort. The sentinels successively salute as the personage passes and then are relieved and join the escort.

d. An officer is designated to attend the personage and bear such message as he may desire to send to the commander of the escort.

280. Funeral escort—*a.* (1) The composition and strength of the escort are prescribed in Volume VI, Basic Field Manual.

(2) The escort is formed opposite the place where the body of the deceased rests, the band on the flank of the escort toward which it is to march.

(3) Upon the appearance of the casket, the commander commands: 1. ***Present,*** 2. ***ARMS,*** and the band plays an appropriate air. At the conclusion of the music, arms are brought to the order. Other organizations are brought to attention by their commanders, who then salute.

(4) The escort forms column of platoons or squads. Escorts of the strength of a platoon or less may form line.

(5) The procession forms in the following order: 1. *Music,* 2. *Escort,* 3. *Clergy,* 4. *Casket and pallbearers* (honorary pall-bearers, when present, in column of files on each side of the casket, the leading member of each column opposite the front wheels of the hearse or caisson; active pallbearers in column of twos immediately in rear of the casket), 5. *Mourners,* 6. *Members of the former command of the deceased,* 7. *Other officers and soldiers,* 8. *Distinguished persons,* 9. *Delegations,* 10. *Societies,* 11. *Civilians.* Officers and soldiers are in order of rank, seniors in front.

(6) When the procession has been formed, the band and the escort are put in march by the commander of the escort. Elements in rear conform.

(7) The procession marches slowly to solemn music.

(8) When the column arrives at the burial ground, the escort is formed in line facing the grave. The remaining elements are conducted as close as practicable to the grave. When the casket is removed from the caisson or hearse the escort presents arms and the band plays an appropriate air. The casket is carried along the front of the escort and placed over the grave. When the casket is placed over the grave the escort is brought to the order and the band ceases playing.

(9) The commander of the escort then commands: 1. ***Parade,*** 2. ***REST.*** The escort executes *parade rest,* with the officers and men inclining the head. Other organizations present execute the same movement at the command of their commanders. They resume the attention in a similar manner.

(10) When the funeral services are completed and the casket lowered into the grave, the commander causes the escort to resume attention, to elevate the muzzles of the pieces and to fire three volleys of blank cartridges. See Section III, Chapter 4, Part One. When the escort is larger than a company, one company is designated to fire the volleys.

(11) A bugler then sounds *taps.*

(12) The band and the escort are then put in march in quick time by the commander of the escort. Elements in rear conform. The band does not play until it has left the inclosure.

(13) When the distance to the place of interment is considerable, the escort, after leaving the camp or garrison, may march at ease in quick time until it approaches the burial ground, when it is brought to attention. The band does not play while the troops are marching at ease.

(14) The field music may alternate with the band in playing.

b. At the funeral of a person entitled to the honor, when arms are presented, the band plays the prescribed national air, or the field music sounds *to the color,* a march, flourishes, or ruffles, according to the rank of the deceased. On conclusion of the musical honors, the band plays an appropriate air.

c. At the funeral of a mounted officer or soldier, his horse, in mourning caparison, follows the hearse or caisson.

d. Should the entrance of the cemetery prevent the hearse or caisson from accompanying the escort to the grave, the column is halted at the entrance long enough to take the casket from the hearse or caisson, when the troops are again put in march.

e. When necessary to escort the remains to a place where they are to rest before the funeral service, arms are presented upon receiving the remains and also as they are borne into the church or other place of rest.

f. Prior to the funeral the necessary arrangements are made by the commander of the escort or a designated officer and the clergyman.

g. At a military funeral, all persons in the military service in uniform or civilian clothes, attending in their individual capacity will stand at attention uncovered and hold the headdress over the left breast, while the casket is being carried to and lowered into the grave, while taps is being sounded, and during the services at the

grave. During the prayer they also bow their heads. In inclement weather the headdress may be raised and held over the head.

h. (1) In cases where the remains are cremated and the ashes interred with military honors, the provisions of *a* to *g* above will govern, the word "casket" being interpreted to include the receptacle containing the ashes.

(2) In cases where the remains are conducted to a crematory and the ashes are not to be interred with military honors, the final ceremony will consist only of the escort to the crematory. Arms are presented upon receiving the remains and also when they are borne into the crematory. The firing of volleys and the sounding of taps are omitted. In case the funeral ceremony is held at the crematory the escort will remain during the ceremony.

i. For details concerning use of flags, colors and guidons, the honors to persons, and wearing of mourning, see Volume VI, Basic Field Manual.

SECTION VI

GUARD MOUNTING, FOOT TROOPS

281. General rules.—*a.* Guard mounting may be formal or informal as the commanding officer directs.

b. When infantry and dismounted troops are united for guard mounting, all details form as prescribed herein, subject to the provisions of Volume VI, Basic Field Manual, and guard mounting will be conducted as herein provided.

c. The commanding officer prescribes the uniform, arms, and equipment for guard duty.

282. Formal guard mounting.—*a.* When assembly is sounded and at the command of the first sergeant, the men going on guard fall in by detail on their company parade ground in two ranks as prescribed for the squad and with the noncommissioned officers in the file closers. The first sergeant verifies the detail, inspects it, replaces those unfit for guard, turns the detail over to the senior noncommissioned officer, and retires. If there is no noncommissioned officer with the detail, the first sergeant turns the detail over to a noncommissioned officer of the company previously designated for the duty of marching the detail on guard. The band takes its place on the guard parade ground so that the left of its front rank is 12 paces to the right of the point where the right of the front rank of the guard is to be when formed. The adjutant signals to the band when *adjutant's call* is to be sounded and at the same time indicates whether the march music will be in quick or double time. Should double time be indicated, the adjutant and sergeant major conform to the music in taking their places.

b. (1) Immediately following *adjutant's call,* the band plays march music; the adjutant, dismounted, with the sergeant major on his left, marches to the place on the parade ground selected for the ceremony. The adjutant halts and takes post so as to be 12 paces in front of and facing the center of the guard when formed. The sergeant major continues 12 paces, moves by the left flank, halts and faces about at 12 paces to the left of the front rank of the band. The details are marched in quick or double time (as the music indicates) to the parade ground by their senior noncommissioned officers or the noncommissioned officers designated to command them. The post of the noncommissioned officer in command of a detail is abreast of the left flank man of the front rank. The detail that arrives first

will be marched toward the line with the guide right, so that, upon halting, the middle of the breast of the right front-rank man will be as near the left arm of the sergeant major as proper halting will permit. The commander of the detail, remaining at the right shoulder, halts his detail, steps forward until directly in front of the sergeant major, executes right face, and commands: 1. ***Right,*** 2. ***DRESS.*** The detail dresses up to the line established by the right front-rank man, who at the second command places the middle of his breast against the left arm of the sergeant major in such a way as to cause the fronts of the two men to be perpendicular. The detail aligned, the commander commands: ***FRONT,*** salutes, and then reports: "The detail is correct," or "(so many) sergeants, corporals, or privates are absent." The sergeant major, after the report is made, returns the salute. The commander, when a part of the detail, then moves in quick or double time (as the music indicates) 2 paces beyond the sergeant major, when he marches by the right flank past the right of the line of file closers and again by the right flank to a point 2 paces in rear of the right file of his detail, when he halts, executes right face, and either dresses on the line of file closers or establishes that line. The noncommissioned officers specially designated to march the details on guard and not a part of the details, follow the same procedure, except that after their first change of direction by the right flank after passing the sergeant major, they march 30 paces obliquely to the right rear and leave the parade ground without interfering with the ceremony.

(2) Should there be more than one detail, each additional detail is formed in like manner on the left of the one preceding. The commander of each detail dresses its ranks on their proper lines. When necessary, he closes the rear rank to the right and fills blank files with the men from his front rank.

c. (1) When the last detail has formed, the band ceases to play, the sergeant major faces to the right, steps 2 paces to the front, faces to the left, draws saber, if so armed, and commands: ***COUNT OFF.*** When the guard has counted off he sees that it is ready to march in squad formation as prescribed in Section III, Chapter 7, Part One. If there be more than five squads he divides the guard into two platoons. For this purpose he leaves his post, proceeds to and designates the dividing line between the platoons and from this position commands: 1. ***Second platoon,*** 2. ***Left step,*** 3. ***MARCH,*** 4. ***Platoon,*** 5. ***HALT.*** The command ***HALT*** is given at the proper time to insure an interval of 7 paces between platoons. He then passes completely around the guard and takes his post 2 paces to the right of the front rank and facing the point of rest. In passing around the guard, the sergeant major executes by the left flank at each necessary turn. Upon taking his post he commands: 1. ***Open ranks,*** 2. ***MARCH,*** and proceeds as in subparagraph *c.* (2).

(2) The sergeant major aligns the guard, whether it consists of one or of two platoons, in the manner that a platoon leader aligns a platoon. (See Section II, Chapter 7, Part One.) After giving the command ***FRONT,*** he moves parallel to the front rank until opposite the center, executes *by the right flank,* halts 6 paces in front of the adjutant, salutes and reports "Sir, the details are correct," or "Sir, (so many) sergeants, corporals, privates are absent." The adjutant returns the salute, directs the sergeant major: ***TAKE YOUR POST,*** and then draws saber. The sergeant major then faces about, and moves by the right oblique directly to a point 3 paces beyond the left of the front rank, halts on the line of the front rank, faces to

the front, and brings his saber to the order, if so armed. When the sergeant major leaves his post to report to the adjutant, the officer of the guard takes post 10 paces in rear of the right front-rank man of the guard. When there is a junior officer of the guard he takes post on the left of the senior officer of the guard. After the sergeant major has reported to the adjutant, the officer of the guard moves from the rear of the guard, passes around the right flank, and takes post, facing to the front, 8 paces in front of the center of the guard and draws saber. If there be a junior officer of the guard he moves with the senior officer of the guard and takes post, facing to the front, 3 paces in front of the center of the first platoon and draws saber. If the guard has not been divided into platoons the senior officer of the guard takes post, facing to the front, 3 paces in front of the center of the guard and draws saber, and the junior officer of the guard (if there be one) takes post, facing to the front, 3 paces to the left of the senior and draws saber.

(3) The adjutant then commands: 1. ***Officer (or officers) and noncommissioned officers,*** 2. ***FRONT AND CENTER,*** 3. ***MARCH.*** At the command ***CENTER,*** the officer or officers carry saber, and the noncommissioned officers in the line of file closers face toward the nearest flank. At the command ***MARCH,*** the officer or officers advance and halt, remaining at the carry, 3 paces from the adjutant. In moving to the front and center the junior officer of the guard (if there be one) marches forward with and takes position to the left of the senior. The noncommissioned officers pass around the flanks of the guard, move by the most direct route, and form in line in order of rank from right to left facing to the front and 3 paces in rear of the officer or officers of the guard. They remain at the right shoulder. If there is no officer of the guard, the noncommissioned officers halt on a line, facing to the front, 3 paces from the adjutant. When the officer or officers and noncommissioned officers have halted, the adjutant, remaining at carry saber, passes along the front of each rank from the right and assigns the officer or officers and noncommissioned officers according to rank as follows: "Commander of the guard," "leader of first platoon", "leader of second platoon," "right guide of first platoon," "left guide of first platoon," "right guide of second platoon," "left guide of second platoon," and "file closers," or, if the guard is not divided into platoons, "Commander of the guard," "junior officer of the guard" (if present), "right guide," "left guide," and "file closers." If the guard has been divided into platoons, the junior officer of the guard (if present) is assigned as "leader of first platoon."

(4) The adjutant then resumes his position in front of the guard and commands: 1. ***Officer (or officers) and noncommissioned officers,*** 2. ***POSTS,*** 3. ***MARCH.***

At the command ***POSTS,*** all, except the officer commanding the guard, face about. At the command ***MARCH,*** they step off together and take the posts assigned to them by the adjutant. They move by the most direct routes. If the guard is not divided into platoons, the junior officer of the guard (if present) takes post on the right of the line of file closers covering the right guide. The adjutant then directs the commander of the guard: "Inspect your guard, sir." The adjutant then returns saber. The officer commanding the guard faces about, commands: ***PREPARE FOR INSPECTION,*** returns saber, and proceeds to inspect the guard. The commander of the guard may direct the junior officer of the guard to assist in the inspection.

(5) During the inspection the band plays. The adjutant observes the general condition of the guard and causes to fall out any man who is unfit for guard duty or does not present a creditable appearance. Men so fallen out march off in rear of the guard. Substitutes for men fallen out report to the commander of the guard at the guardhouse.

The adjutant, when so directed, selects orderlies and color sentinels. He notifies the commander of the guard of his selections.

If there be no officer of the guard, the adjutant inspects the guard. A noncommissioned officer commanding the guard or commanding a platoon of the guard takes post as prescribed for an officer, after he has been so designated by the adjutant.

d. (1) The inspection ended, the adjutant places himself about 30 paces in front of and facing the center of the guard, and draws saber. The new officer of the day takes post in front of and facing the center of the guard, about 30 paces in rear of the adjutant. The old officer of the day takes post 3 paces to the right of and 1 pace to the rear of the new officer of the day. The officers of the day without drawing saber take the position of parade rest with the adjutant and resume the attention with him.

The commander of the guard takes his post in front of the guard. If he be an officer he draws saber with the adjutant and comes to the order.

(2) The adjutant then commands: 1. ***Parade,*** 2. ***REST,*** 3. ***SOUND OFF,*** and comes to the order and parade rest.

(3) *Sound off.* The band in place plays the *Sound off* of three chords, giving two beats in quick time to each chord and at the conclusion of the third chord moves forward playing in quick time, passes to the left of the line between the officer of the guard and the adjutant and back to its post on the right, when it halts and ceases playing, the *Sound off* being then again played.

(4) The adjutant then comes to attention, carries saber and commands: 1. ***Guard,*** 2. ***ATTENTION,*** 3. ***Close ranks,*** 4. ***MARCH.***

(5) The ranks are closed without command from platoon leaders.

(6) The adjutant then commands: 1. ***Present,*** 2. ***ARMS,*** faces toward the new officer of the day, salutes, and then reports "Sir, the guard is formed." The new officer of the day, after the adjutant has reported, returns the salute with the hand and directs the adjutant: "March the guard in review, Sir," or "March the guard to its post, Sir."

(7) The adjutant carries saber, faces about and brings the guard to the order. When directed to march the guard to its post, the adjutant repeats the command and the commander of the guard marches the guard directly to the guardhouse in the most practicable manner. The band and field music are dismissed. Otherwise the adjutant commands: 1. ***(At trail), platoons (or guard) right,*** 2. ***MARCH,*** 3. ***Guard,*** 4. ***HALT.***

(8) At the second command the guard executes the movement and the band turns to the right and places itself approximately 12 paces in front of the first platoon. The band halts with the guard at the fourth command.

(9) The adjutant places himself 6 paces from the left and 3 paces in front of the front rank of the guard; the sergeant major, 6 paces from the left flank of the front rank of the second platoon, or 6 paces from the left flank of the front rank of the guard when there is no division into platoons.

(10) The adjutant then commands: 1. ***Pass in review,*** 2. ***Forward,*** 3. ***MARCH.***

(11) The guard moves in quick time with the band playing, past the officer of the day, marching and saluting according to the principles of review. The adjutant and the commander of the guard salute together, leaders of platoons and drum major salute with their units and the sergeant major salutes with the unit by which he is marching.

(12) The band having passed the officer of the day, turns to the left out of the column, places itself opposite and facing him at a distance of 20 paces from where the left flank of the guard passes, and continues to play until the guard leaves the parade ground. The field music detaches itself from the band when the latter turns out of the column and, remaining in front of the guard, commences to play when the band ceases.

(13) Having passed 12 paces beyond the officer of the day the adjutant halts. The sergeant major halts abreast of the adjutant and 1 pace to his left. The adjutant, and sergeant major if so armed, then return saber, face each other, salute and retire. The commander of the guard then commands: 1. ***Platoons right by squads (or Right by squads),*** 2. ***MARCH,*** and marches the guard to its post.

(14) The officers of the day face toward each other and salute. The old officer of the day turns over the orders to the new officer of the day.

(15) While the band is sounding off and while the guard is marching in review, the officers of the day stand at parade rest with arms folded and raised so that the upper arms are horizontal. They take this position when the adjutant comes to parade rest, resume the attention with him, again take the parade rest at the first note of the march in review, and resume attention as the head of the column approaches.

(16) The new officer of the day returns the salutes of the commander of the guard and the adjutant. He salutes only once as the adjutant and the commander of the guard salute together.

e. The new bugler of the guard forms and continues with the field music of the band and marches with the field music to the guardhouse. When the new guard is divided into reliefs the bugler relieves the old bugler of the guard and with him reports to the new officer of the day for inspection and instruction.

283. Informal guard mounting.—*a.* Informal guard mounting is held on the parade ground of the organization from which the guard is detailed or, if the guard is detailed from more than one organization, at such place as the commanding officer may direct.

b. At *assembly,* and at command of the first sergeant, the detail for guard falls in on the company parade ground. The first sergeant verifies the detail, inspects the dress and general appearance, and replaces any man unfit for guard duty. He then turns the detail over to the commander of the detail and retires. The detail commander then reports his detail to the commander of the guard at the point designated for the assembly.

c. (1) The commander of the guard causes the guard to form as a platoon, and takes post 3 paces in front of the center of the guard, and faces to the front, with the junior officers of the guard 3 paces to his left. The officer of the day takes his place 15 paces in front of and facing the center of the guard, and commands: 1. ***Officer (or officers) and noncommissioned officers,*** 2. ***FRONT AND CENTER,*** 3. ***MARCH.*** The officers and noncommissioned officers then take

their positions, are assigned, and sent to their posts as prescribed in formal guard mounting. The officer of the day commands: ***Prepare for inspection.*** The officer commanding the guard faces about and commands: 1. ***Open ranks,*** 2. ***MARCH.*** He then proceeds to the right flank of the guard, verifies the alignment, commands: ***FRONT,*** and takes post 3 paces in front of the right guide facing to the left, commands: ***PREPARE FOR INSPECTION,*** and faces to the front remaining at carry saber.

(2) The officer of the day then inspects the guard according to the principles of company inspection, sees to its fitness for the duty for which the guard is detailed, and selects the necessary orderlies and color sentinels. The men found unfit for guard are returned to quarters and replaced by suitable substitutes. This fact is reported by the officer of the day to the adjutant immediately after guard mounting.

(3) When the inspection is completed the officer of the day resumes his position and directs the commander of the guard to march the guard to its post. Ranks are closed and the guard marched, without music, in the most practicable manner.

(4) The new bugler of the guard forms in the line of file closers at the formation of the guard detail and reports to the officer of the day as prescribed for formal guard mounting.

(5) When a noncommissioned officer commands the guard, the officer of the day gives the commands for opening and closing ranks and verifies the alignment.

(6) When the guard is commanded by a noncommissioned officer he takes post as prescribed for an officer except that in marching to the front and center he takes post on the right of the line of noncommissioned officers. At the command of the officer of the day he returns to the post prescribed for the officer, 3 paces in front of the right guide.

SECTION VII

RELIEVING THE OLD GUARD

284. March of new guard to guardhouse.—*a.* As the new guard approaches the guardhouse, the old guard is formed in line, with its field music 3 paces to its right and on the same line. When the field music at the head of the new guard arrives opposite the old guard's left, the commander of the new guard commands: 1. ***Eyes,*** 2. ***RIGHT*** (and the commander of the old guard commands: 1. ***Present,*** 2. ***ARMS.*** Commanders of both guards exchange salutes. The new guard marches in quick time past the front of the old guard.

b. When the commander of the new guard is opposite the field music of the old guard, he commands: ***FRONT.*** (The commander of the old guard commands: 1. ***Order,*** 2. ***ARMS,*** as soon as the new guard has cleared the front of the old guard.)

c. The field music having marched 3 paces beyond the field music of the old guard, changes direction to the right and followed by the guard, changes direction to the left when on line with the old guard. The changes of direction are without command. The commander of the new guard halts on the line established by the old guard, allows his guard to march past him, halts it in line, 3 paces to the right of the field music of the old guard, and dresses his guard to the left. The field music of the new guard halts 3 paces to the right of the new guard on the line of its front rank.

285. Presenting old and new guards.—*a.* After the new guard is dressed, the commander of each guard, in front of and facing its

center, commands: 1. ***Present,*** 2. ***ARMS,*** resumes his front, salutes the other guard, carries saber, faces toward his guard and commands: 1. ***Order,*** 2. ***ARMS.***

b. If the guard is commanded by a noncommissioned officer, he takes post and executes the facings as prescribed for an officer and renders the proper salute, rifle, saber or hand, according to his equipment.

286. Presenting guards to officers of the day.—After the new guard has arrived at its post and the commanders of the guards have exchanged salutes, each guard is presented by its commander to its officer of the day. If there be but one officer of the day present, or if one officer acts in the capacity of the old and new officer of the day, each guard is presented to him by its commander.

287. Salutes by guard.—*a.* If other persons entitled to a salute approach, each commander of the guard brings his own guard to attention if not already at attention. The senior commander of the two guards then commands: 1. ***Old and new guards,*** 2. ***Present,*** 3. ***ARMS.***

b. The junior salutes at the command ***Present,*** given by the senior. After the salute has been acknowledged, the senior brings both guards to the order arms.

288. Disposition of new guard.—*a.* After the salutes have been acknowledged by the officers of the day, each guard is brought to the order by its commander. The commander of the new guard then directs the orderly or orderlies to fall out and report, and causes bayonets to be fixed, if so ordered by the commanding officer. Bayonets are not thereafter unfixed during the tour except in route marches, while the guard is actually marching, or when especially directed by the commanding officer.

b. The commander of the new guard then causes to fall out members of the guard for detached posts, places them under charge of the proper noncommissioned officers and divides the guard into three reliefs. When the guard consists of troops of different arms combined, the men are assigned to reliefs, under rules prescribed by the commanding officer, so that a fair division of duty may be assured.

289. Relief by new guard.—The sentinels and detachments of the old guard are at once relieved by members of the new guard. The two guards stand at ease or at rest while these changes are being made. The commander of the old guard transmits to the commander of the new guard all his orders, instructions and information concerning the guard and its duties. The commander of the new guard then takes possession of the guardhouse and verifies the articles charged to the guard.

290. Dismissing old guard.—If considerable time is required to bring in that portion of the old guard still on post, the commanding officer may direct that, as soon as the orders and property are turned over to the new guard, the portion of the old guard at the guardhouse be marched off and dismissed. In such cases the remaining detachment or detachments of the old guard are inspected by the commander of the new guard when they reach the guardhouse. The latter directs the senior noncommissioned officer present to march these detachments off and dismiss them in the prescribed manner. For taking over prisoners, conducting relief of sentinels, etc., see Volume I, Basic Field Manual, Interior Guard Duty.

291. When field music may be dispensed with.—In bad weather, at night, after long marches, or when the guard is very small, the field music may be dispensed with.

CHAPTER 2
INSPECTIONS

		Paragraphs
SECTION I.	The Rifle Company	292–295
II.	The Battalion	296–303
III.	The Regiment	304–305
IV.	The Service Company, Regiment	306
V.	The Howitzer Company	307–310
VI.	The Machine-Gun Company	311–314
VII.	The Headquarters Company	315–316

SECTION I
THE RIFLE COMPANY

292. Formation and procedure.—*a.* (1) The company being in column of platoons, the captain commands: ***PREPARE FOR INSPECTION.*** At this command platoon leaders open ranks.

(2) Ranks having been opened, the captain commands ***REST*** and returns saber. He then inspects the guidon bearer and the second in command. During this inspection the guidon bearer without command comes to attention, guidon at the *order,* and after being inspected resumes the position of *rest;* the second in command comes to attention, executes *carry saber* and after being inspected returns saber and accompanies the captain, assisting him as the latter may direct. The captain, commencing at the head of the column, then makes a minute inspection of the arms, accoutrements, dress, and appearance of the personnel of the several platoons and the company headquarters. As he approaches each platoon, its leader faces to the left and commands: 1. ***Platoon,*** 2. ***ATTENTION,*** 3. ***PREPARE FOR INSPECTON,*** faces to the front and salutes. As soon as inspected he returns saber, places himself on the right of the captain and accompanies him throughout the inspection of the platoon.

(3) The senior noncommissioned officer present with company headquarters acts as platoon leader and prepares the detachment for inspection as prescribed for a platoon leader.

(4) The inspection is made from right to left in front and from left to right in rear of each rank and the line of file closers.

(5) Each man, as the captain approaches him, executes *inspection arms.*

(6) The captain takes the piece, grasping it with the right hand just above the lower band, the man dropping his hands. The captain inspects the piece and, with the hand and piece in the same position as in receiving it, hands it back to the man, who takes it with the left hand at the balance and executes *order arms.*

(7) Men successively execute *inspection arms* as the captain returns the piece to the man on their right. Should the piece be inspected without handling, each man executes *order arms* as soon as the captain has passed to the next man.

(8) A man armed with the automatic rifle executes *inspection arms* as the captain returns the piece of the man on his right. The

inspection completed, he pulls the trigger, replaces the magazine, and resumes the position of the soldier, the automatic rifle being slung.

(9) Enlisted men armed with the pistol execute *inspection pistol* as prescribed in pars. 143 and 152. When the captain has passed, they execute *return pistol.*

(10) Upon completion of the inspection of each platoon, its leader takes his post, draws saber, faces to the left, commands: 1. ***Close ranks.*** 2. ***MARCH*** and adds ***REST*** after ranks have been closed. He then takes his post in front of the center of the platoon.

(11) The captain may direct the platoon leaders to make the detailed inspection of arms or other equipment of the men of their platoons.

b. The company in line is inspected according to similar principles.

c. When the company is formed as a single platoon, or when extra officers are present with a platoon, the captain inspects the officers before beginning the inspection of the front rank.

293. Inspection of quarters or camp.—*a.* When the company is dismissed, arms are put away. In quarters, headdress and accoutrements are removed and the men stand near their respective bunks; in camp they stand covered but without accoutrements in front of their tents.

b. If the personal field equipment has not been inspected in ranks and its inspection in camp or in quarters is ordered, each man arranges the required articles as prescribed in Chapter 2, Part Two.

c. The captain accompanied by the other officers of the company, then inspects the quarters or camp. The first sergeant precedes the captain and calls the men to attention on entering each squad room or on approaching each tent; the men stand at attention but do not salute.

294. Inspection of personal field equipment while in ranks.—*a.* If the inspection is to include an examination of the personal field equipment while in ranks, the captain, after the inspection of arms has been completed, causes the platoon to stack arms, march backward eight half steps in rear of the stacks, take interval and prepare for inspection of equipment. Intervals having been taken, the platoon leader commands: 1. ***UNSLING EQUIPMENT,*** 2. ***OPEN PACKS.***

b. At the first command each man unslings his equipment and places it on the ground at his feet, haversack to the front, the pack one foot in front of the toes.

c. At the second command packs are opened and equipment displayed as prescribed in Chapter 2, Part Two.

d. The captain then passes along the ranks and file closers as before, inspects the equipment and directs the platoon leader to have packs closed and the platoon assembled. The platoon leader then commands: ***CLOSE PACKS.***

e. Each man assembles his equipment as prescribed in Chapter 2, Part Two, and, leaving the equipment in its position on the ground at his feet, resumes the attention.

f. All equipment being assembled, the platoon leader commands: ***SLING EQUIPMENT.***

g. Packs are slung and belts fastened.

h. The platoon leader then causes the platoon to assemble and take arms. The inspection is completed as already explained.

295. Inspecting officer other than the captain.—Should the inspecting officer be other than the captain, the latter, after commanding ***REST,*** will face to the front. When the inspecting officer

approaches, the captain will face about, bring the company to attention, face to the front and salute. As soon as the captain has been inspected he faces about, commands ***REST,*** returns saber and accompanies the inspecting officer. During the inspection of a platoon its leader marches on the right of the inspecting officer. The inspection proceeds as hereinbefore prescribed.

SECTION II

THE BATTALION

296. Preparation of companies for inspection.—The headquarters, rifle and machine-gun companies are prepared for inspection and inspected in the manner prescribed in paragraphs 315, 292, and 311 (pages 233, 223, and 229), respectively.

297. Procedure in inspecting.—*a.* The battalion being in column of platoons, with all personnel except that of the machine-gun company dismounted, the major commands: ***PREPARE FOR INSPECTION.*** At this command each company and the band, if present, are prepared for inspection. The color bearer and the color guard proceed to the head of the column and take position three paces in rear of the staff. Buglers rejoin their companies.

b. The major then commands ***REST,*** returns saber and inspects his staff and the color guard. When the major approaches the staff the officers, without command, come to attention and execute *carry saber.* When they have been inspected they return saber and accompany the major. As the major approaches the color guard the color bearer commands: 1. ***Color guard,*** 2. ***ATTENTION,*** 3. ***PREPARE FOR INSPECTION.*** The color guard may be dismissed as soon as inspected.

c. The major, commencing at the head of the column, makes an inspection of the arms, accoutrements, dress, and appearance of the personnel of the band and the several companies in succession.

d. When the inspection of the band has been completed it may be dismissed or may be conducted to the rear of the column and be required to play during the inspection, as the major may direct.

e. As the major approaches each company its captain faces toward it and commands: 1. ***Company,*** 2. ***ATTENTION,*** 3. ***PREPARE FOR INSPECTION,*** faces to the front and salutes. As soon as he has been inspected he faces about and commands ***REST,*** returns saber and accompanies the major. The inspection proceeds as prescribed for company inspection.

f. The major may direct the captains to make the detailed inspection of arms or other equipment of their companies. He may require officers of his staff to assist in the inspection, especially by checking equipment.

g. When a company has been inspected the major directs that it be dismissed or otherwise occupied.

298. Other formations authorized.—The battalion, in any other formation directed, may be inspected according to similar principles.

299. Companies not under inspection may fall out.—When desired, the major may cause companies not under inspection to stack arms, fall out, and resume their places in time to be inspected.

300. Inspection of camp or quarters.—During the inspection of the camp or quarters of a company the major is preceded by the first sergeant and followed by the captain. Such other officers as may be designated follow the captain.

301. Inspection of field and combat trains.—Field and combat trains are inspected at such place and in such formation as the major may direct.

302. Inspecting officer other than the major.—If the inspecting officer be other than the major, the latter prepares the battalion for inspection as prescribed in the preceding paragraphs. Upon the approach of the inspecting officer the major brings the battalion to attention, faces to the front and salutes. The inspecting officer inspects the major, who then commands ***REST,*** returns saber and accompanies the inspecting officer. The inspection then proceeds as hereinbefore prescribed.

303. Inspection by battalion exceptional.—As a general rule an inspection by battalion is not made unless special conditions make it desirable. Ordinarily it is preferable to inspect each company in its own area, or have the companies marched successively to a designated place in time to be inspected.

SECTION III

THE REGIMENT

304. General.—The commands, means, and principles are the same as prescribed for the battalion. The regiment may be formed in any suitable formation required by the space and ground available. Before opening ranks battalions and companies are extended to full distance. Battalions are prepared for inspection as prescribed for battalion inspection. Upon the approach of the inspecting officer, each major brings his battalion to attention and salutes. Battalion inspection follows.

305. Regimental inspections exceptional.—Only in very exceptional situations will a regimental inspection be ordered. As a rule inspections will be as indicated for the battalion in Section II.

SECTION IV

THE SERVICE COMPANY, REGIMENT

306. General.—*a.* The company commander prescribes the formation and equipment for company inspection.

b. At regimental inspection the part of the service company with the combined special units is inspected as a rifle company.

c. For the inspection of transportation, the combined special units and battalion trains will ordinarily be in line or column of company sections. (See Figure 33.) Assistant wagonmasters in charge of trains are posted, facing the front, 10 yards in front of their trains. Other personnel, individually mounted, form the leading element of the combined special unit train.

d. For regimental inspection, trains are formed as shown in Figure 33, Section II, Chapter 7, Part One. The regimental train commander is posted 20 paces in front of the center of the line of trains when the regiment is formed in line, and 20 paces in front of the center of the column of trains when the regiment is formed in column of battalions. The wagonmaster is posted 5 yards in rear of the train commander.

e. In passing in review, trains are in column of company sections. The train commander marches at the head of the column of trains, followed by the wagonmasters in charge of the combined special unit and battalion trains, who march at the heads of their trains.

f. The formation of transportation for inspection may be modified to suit the ground.

SECTION V

THE HOWITZER COMPANY

307. General principles.—*a.* The instructions contained in this section apply only to the inspection of the gun, fire control, signal communication, and cart equipment of the howitzer company, platoon or squad transportation. The following paragraphs outline the method of displaying the equipment for inspection and the procedure in inspecting a howitzer company.

b. The method of inspection may be modified by the inspecting officer as circumstances require.

c. Individual equipment of the soldiers will be displayed as prescribed in Chapter 2, Part Two.

308. To open ranks.—*a.* The company being in line or column of platoons at a distance of 20 paces, the command is: 1. ***To the front, open ranks,*** 2. ***MARCH.*** At the command ***MARCH*** the front rank of each platoon and company headquarters, if it is present, marches forward 4 paces; the rear rank 2 paces. Both ranks and the transportation dress to the right. Each platoon leader aligns his platoon, commands: ***FRONT,*** and returns to his original post. The senior member present with company headquarters dresses the headquarters detachment in like manner. The platoon sergeant and transport corporal may be directed to assist in aligning the carts.

b. To close ranks, the command is: 1. ***Close ranks,*** 2. ***MARCH.*** At the command ***MARCH*** the front rank stands fast, the rear rank marches forward 2 paces, and the transportation moves forward to its normal position. Both ranks and the transportation dress to the right. Each platoon leader aligns his platoon, commands: ***FRONT,*** and takes his original post.

309. To lay out equipment for inspection.—Ranks being opened, the company commander commands: ***PREPARE FOR INSPECTION.*** Platoon leaders command: ***LAY OUT EQUIPMENT.***

a. The company commander and platoon leaders dismount and supervise the laying out of the equipment. All mounted men dismount. A bugler holds the company commander's horse 5 paces in rear of the line of file closers of the company headquarters detachment. The mount of each platoon leader is held by a designated platoon runner who takes post 3 paces to the left of and in line with the line of mules. Squads break ranks and under the supervision of the squad leaders place the equipment as shown in Figure 82.

b. Equipment having been displayed, the squad leaders take post in rear of the equipment of their squads, facing to the front 4 paces in front of the front rank. Platoons reform in their original positions with ranks opened. Platoon leaders take post 3 paces in front of the line of guns on the right of their platoons, facing to the front. The company commander takes post facing to the front, 12 paces in front of the center of the center platoon when the company is formed in line and 12 paces in front of the center of the leading platoon when the company is formed in column of platoons for inspection as a separate unit. When the company forms part of a larger unit undergoing inspection the company commander takes post 3 paces in advance of the line of the platoon leaders, on the right flank of the company, facing to the front.

310. The inspection.—*a.* As the inspecting officer approaches, the company commander faces the company, brings it to attention, faces to the front, and salutes the inspecting officer. When the inspection

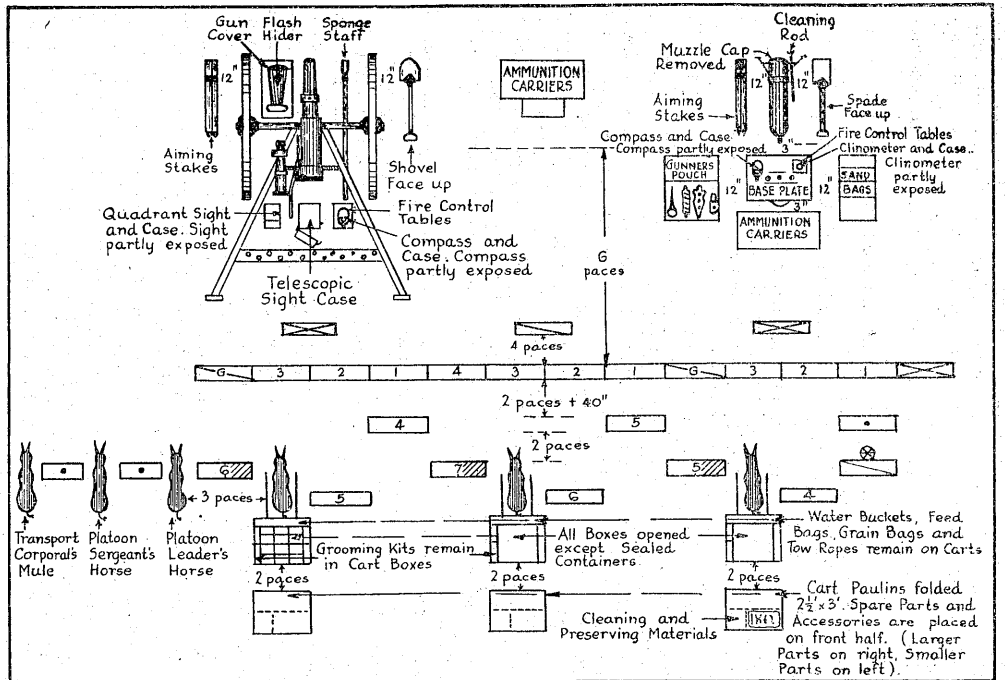


FIG. 82.—Formation and display of equipment for inspection.

of the company commander is completed, he again faces the company, commands: ***AT EASE,*** and accompanies the inspecting officer.

b. As the inspecting officer approaches the right or leading platoon, the platoon leader faces to the left, brings the platoon to attention and again faces to the front. When the inspection of the platoon leader is completed, he faces to the left, commands: ***AT EASE,*** and takes post on the right of the inspecting officer and accompanies the inspecting officer during the inspection of his platoon.

c. The inspecting officer, passing in front of the line of guns, inspects the guns and equipment of the platoon. As the inspecting officer approaches each squad equipment, the squad leader comes to attention. When the inspecting officer concludes his inspection of the equipment the squad leader stands at ease.

d. When the inspecting officer arrives on the right of the line of the squads in ranks, the platoon leader brings the platoon to attention. The inspecting officer makes such inspection of the arms, accoutrements, clothing and personnel as desired. Each man executes *inspection pistol* as the inspecting officer approaches. Those armed with the rifle execute *inspection arms.* When the inspecting officer has passed, those armed with the pistol execute *return pistol;* those armed with the rifle close the chamber, pull the trigger, and sling the rifle on the right shoulder. The inspection of the squads in ranks having been completed the platoon leader commands: ***AT EASE.***

e. The inspecting officer then inspects the mule leaders, others stationed with the carts, animals, harness, carts, and cart equipment of each squad, passing from the front to rear on the right of the cart of each squad and from rear to front on the left of the cart of each squad. Mule leaders having executed *inspection pistol,* hold the pistol in the left hand in a position corresponding to *raise pistol.* They execute *return pistol* after the inspecting officer has passed. Mule leaders and others stationed with the carts individually come to attention as the inspecting officer approaches and stand *at ease* after he has passed.

f. The inspection of the remaining platoons is conducted in a similar manner. Following the inspection of the platoons the inspecting officer inspects the equipment, clothing, and personnel of the company headquarters. The formation of the company headquarters and train detachment will conform to the general formation of the company and will be prescribed by the company commander.

g. During inspection, the guidon bearer takes post dismounted on the right of the company headquarters.

SECTION VI

THE MACHINE GUN COMPANY

311. General principles.—*a.* The instructions contained in this section apply only to the inspection of the gun, fire control, signal communication and cart equipment of the machine-gun company, platoon or squad with transportation. The following paragraphs outline the method of displaying the equipment for inspection and the procedure in inspecting a machine-gun company.

b. The method of inspection may be modified by the inspecting officer as circumstances require.

c. Individual equipment of the soldiers will be displayed as prescribed in Chapter 2, Part Three (p. 235).

312. To open ranks.—*a.* The company being in line, or column of platoons at a distance of 20 paces, the command is: 1. ***To the front, open ranks,*** 2. ***MARCH.*** At the command ***MARCH*** the front rank of each platoon and company headquarters, if it is present, marches forward 4 paces; the rear rank 2 paces. Both ranks and the transportation dress to the right. Each platoon leader aligns his platoon, commands: ***FRONT,*** and returns to his original post. The senior member present with company headquarters dresses the headquarters detachment in like manner. The platoon sergeant and transport corporal may be directed to assist in aligning the carts.

b. To close ranks, the command is: 1. ***Close ranks,*** 2. ***MARCH.*** At the command ***MARCH*** the front rank stands fast, the rear rank marches forward 2 paces, and the transportation moves forward to normal distance. Both ranks and the transportation dress to the right. Each platoon leader aligns his platoon, commands: ***FRONT,*** and takes his original post.

313. To lay out equipment.—Ranks being opened, the company commander commands: ***PREPARE FOR INSPECTION.*** Platoon leaders command ***LAY OUT EQUIPMENT.***

a. The company commander and platoon leaders dismount and supervise the laying out of the equipment. All mounted men dismount. A bugler holds the company commander's horse 5 paces in rear of the line of file closers of the company headquarters detachment. The mount of each platoon leader is held by a designated platoon runner who takes post 3 paces to the left of and on line with the gun cart mule of the left squad of the platoon. Squads break ranks and under the supervision of the squad leaders place the gun equipment as described below.

b. The gun is mounted on its tripod, muzzle to the front and slightly elevated, 6 paces in front of No. 2 of the gun squad. The gun is cleared as described in paragraph 242*q* (p. 133).

c. The gun cover is placed on the ground on the right of the tripod with the left edge 3 inches from the shoe of the right leg, and upon it are placed from front to rear in the order named, the clinometer, the panoramic sight, the luminous sights, the alidade protractor, fire-control tables, and the gun record. If the gun is stripped during the inspection, the parts are placed on the gun cover in rear of the articles named above.

d. The gun cart paulin is neatly folded into an oblong 2½ feet by 3 feet, and placed on the ground on the left of the tripod so that the right edge is 3 inches from the shoe of the left leg. Upon the right of the paulin are placed the contents of the gunner's pouch, smaller parts in front, larger parts in rear. In the center of the paulin from right to left are placed the spare-barrel cover, the spare barrel, and the cleaning rod. Upon the upper left of the paulin is placed the steam-condensing device, coiled. In the center is placed the flash hider. In the lower left are the asbestos mittens.

e. The ammunition boxes are placed side by side, latches to the front, 4 paces in front of the front rank. The ammunition box covers are raised and the tag end of the belt in each box is pulled out about 12 inches and laid back on the cover, so that the belt may be easily inspected.

f. On a line 2 paces in front of the front rank are placed the water boxes. Platoon or section equipment, such as antiaircraft sights, spare-parts boxes, range finder, plane table, and panoramic sight, may be displayed on this line in front of the right squad of the platoon or section. Spare-parts boxes are opened exposing the contents.

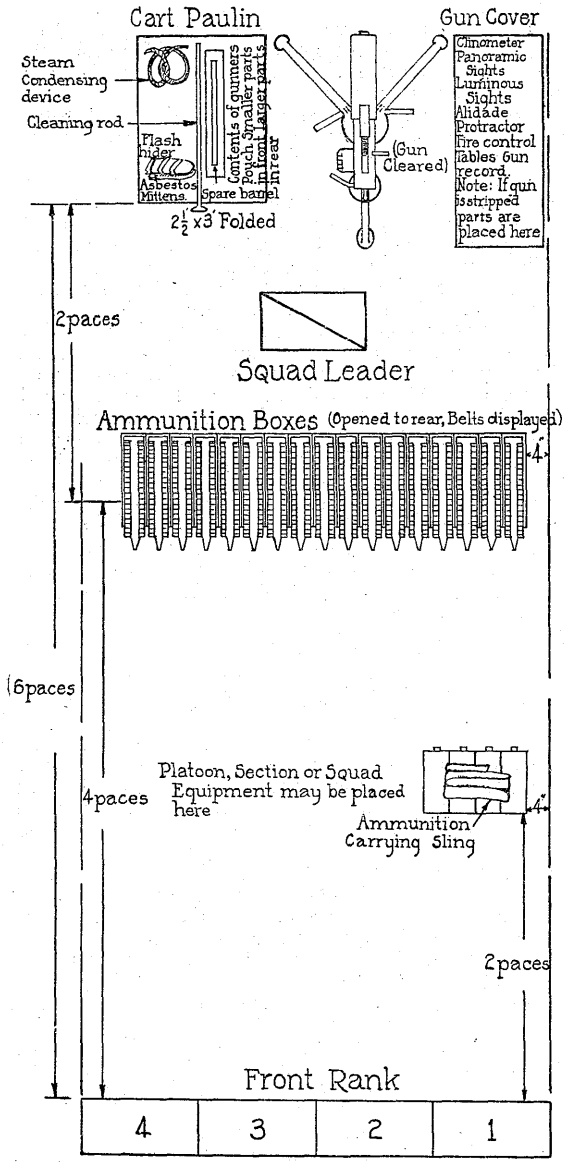


FIG. 83.—Layout of equipment for inspection.

g. The ammunition-carrying slings are displayed on top of the water boxes.

h. The tool chest covers are unhooked and opened. The tool box is pulled to the rear and the cover is raised. The tool roll, pertaining to the cart-repair outfit, is displayed on the top of the ammunition rack of the ammunition cart.

i. Signal communication and other special unit equipment carried by the personnel of the company headquarters is displayed on a line 3 paces in front of the detachment.

j. Equipment having been displayed, the squad leaders take post one pace in rear of the line of guns. Platoons reform in their original positions with ranks opened. Platoon leaders take post 3 paces in front of the line of guns on the right of their platoons, facing to the front. The company commander takes post facing to the front, 12 paces in front of the center of the center platoon when the company is formed in line and 12 paces in front of the center of the leading platoon when the company is formed in column of platoons for inspection as a separate unit. When the company forms part of a larger unit undergoing inspection the company commander takes post 3 paces in advance of the line of the platoon leaders on the right flank of the company, facing to the front.

314. The inspection.—*a.* As the inspecting officer approaches, the company commander faces the company, brings it to attention, faces to the front and salutes the inspecting officer. When the inspection of the company commander is completed, he again faces the company, commands: ***REST,*** and accompanies the inspecting officer.

b. As the inspecting officer approaches the right or leading platoon, the platoon leader faces to the left, brings the platoon to attention and again faces to the front. When the inspection of the platoon leader is completed, he faces to the left, commands: ***AT EASE,*** takes post on the right of the inspecting officer and accompanies him during the inspection of this platoon.

c. The inspecting officer inspects the guns and equipment of the platoon, passing in front of the line of guns and in rear of the line of ammunition boxes.

d. As the inspecting officer approaches each gun the corporal comes to attention. When the inspecting officer concludes his inspection of the gun, the corporal faces to the rear and stands *at ease* until the inspecting officer again approaches the ammunition boxes of his squad, when he again comes to attention and resumes *at ease,* as before.

e. When the inspecting officer arrives on the right of the line of the squads in ranks, the platoon leader brings the platoon to attention. Squad leaders pass around the nearest flank of the platoon and take their posts. The inspecting officer makes such inspection of the arms, accoutrements, clothing, and personnel as desired. Each man executes *inspection pistol,* as the inspecting officer approaches. Those armed with the rifle execute *inspection arms.* When the inspecting officer has passed, those armed with the pistol execute *return pistol;* those armed with the rifle close the chamber, pull the trigger, and sling the rifle on the right shoulder. The inspection of the squads in ranks having been completed the platoon leader commands: ***AT EASE.***

f. The inspecting officer then inspects the mule leaders and others stationed with the carts, animals, harness, carts and cart equipment of each squad, passing from front to rear on the right of the gun and ammunition cart of each squad and from rear to front on

the left of the gun and ammunition cart of each squad. Mule leaders having executed *inspection pistol,* hold the pistol in the left hand in a position corresponding to raise pistol. They execute *return pistol* after the inspecting officer has passed. Mule leaders and others stationed with the carts individually come to attention as the inspecting officer approaches and stand *at ease* after he has passed.

g. The inspection of the remaining platoons is conducted in a similar manner. Following the inspection of the platoons the inspecting officer inspects the equipment, clothing, and personnel of the company headquarters and train. The formation of these units will conform to the general formation of the company and will be prescribed by the company commander.

h. During inspection, the guidon bearer takes post dismounted on the right of the company headquarters.

SECTION VII

THE HEADQUARTERS COMPANY

315. General.—The company, in any of the special formations given in paragraph 227 (p. 76), is inspected in a manner similar to that of the rifle company. For a more detailed and accurate inspection of the personnel and equipment the special formation described below may be used.

316. Inspection formation.—*a.* The company being in mounted assembly formation, and having arrived near the ground selected for the inspection, forms for inspection as follows: The company commander, mounted, establishes the senior noncommissioned officer of company headquarters at the point where he wishes the right of the formation to rest, and causes him to face in the direction the company is to be faced for inspection. He then takes post 4 paces in front of the noncommissioned officer so posted, faces to the rear and commands: ***FORM FOR INSPECTION.***

b. At this command the next senior noncommissioned officer of company headquarters marches the company headquarters and halts it 4 paces in rear of the senior noncommissioned officer. He then commands: 1. ***Form for inspection,*** 2. ***MARCH.*** At the command ***MARCH*** the men of company headquarters move forward and place themselves in single rank on line with, and to the left of, the senior noncommissioned officer. All dress to the right. The senior noncommissioned officer aligns company headquarters and commands: 1. ***Front,*** 2. ***AT EASE.***

c. Each remaining section then forms in a similar manner in rear of the company headquarters with a distance of 4 paces and in the following order: Staff section, intelligence platoon, pioneer platoon, communications platoon headquarters, message center section, radio and visual section, wire section and transportation section. If a given element such as the pioneer platoon occupies an excessive frontage it may be divided into two sections, the second being formed 4 paces in rear of the first. Each section is marched by its senior noncommissioned officer present or its officer to a point 4 paces in rear of where it is to form. The senior takes post, faces to the left, and commands: 1. ***Form for inspection,*** 2. ***MARCH.*** He then faces to the front. Men of the section execute the movement as prescribed for company headquarters. The section is properly aligned by its senior, who then commands: ***AT EASE.***

d. The company commander from his position requires the chiefs of each section to cover in file. When the movement is completed the company commander commands ***REST*** and dismounts.

e. The inspection then proceeds in a manner similar to that prescribed for the rifle company.

f. The company may be dismissed by section or platoon after the inspection of each is completed, if so directed by the inspecting officer; or the entire company can be reformed in any desired formation by establishing a right guide and giving the commands for the formation.

g. The guidon bearer is on the left of the mounted messengers of the message center section.

PART THREE. THE INFANTRY PACK, DISPLAY OF EQUIPMENT AND TENT DRILL

CHAPTER 1
THE INFANTRY PACK.

		Paragraphs
SECTION I.	Methods of attaching and assembling	317–329
II.	The adjustment of equipment	330–332
III.	Special equipment	333

SECTION I
METHODS OF ATTACHING AND ASSEMBLING

317. The cartridge belt.—*a. To assemble the cartridge belt or magazine belt.*—Place the adjusting strap on the ground, eyeleted edge to the front; place the pocket sections on the ground in prolongation of the adjusting strap, pockets down, tops of the pockets to the front; insert end of adjusting strap in outer loop of metal guide, from the upper side, carry it under the middle bar and up through the inner loop; engage the hooks on the end of the adjusting strap in the eyelets provided on the inner surface of the belt. The belt should be adjusted to fit the individual.

b. To assemble the pistol belt.—Place the belt on the ground, outer side of the belt down. Insert hook end of belt through sliding keeper, then through the unattached male buckle; double the belt back through the sliding keeper and secure the end hook in that particular center eyelet required to give proper length. Slide the magazine pouch over attached female buckle end and attach it to the fastener provided. The belt is put on with the male buckle on the man's right, thus bringing the magazine pouch in front of left hip.

c. To fill the cartridge belt.—Unsnap the flap of a pocket and the retaining strap, if one is provided; pull the retaining strap out to full length. Insert a clip of cartridges, bullets down, in front of the retaining strap, press down until the points of the bullets rest on the bottom of the pocket. Snap the retaining strap to its fastener. Insert a second clip, bullets down, in the same pocket, in rear of both the first clip and the retaining strap; press down until the points of the bullets rest on the bottom of the pocket. Close the flap of the pocket and snap it to its fastener. The remaining nine pockets are filled in the same manner.

d. To fill the magazine belt.—Unsnap the flap of a pocket and insert two automatic clips, base plates up, magazine catches toward the buckles of the belt. Refasten the flap. The remaining pockets are filled in the same manner.

e. To fill the pistol belt.—Unsnap the flap of the magazine pouch and insert magazines in pouches, magazine base plates up, prolonged ends of the magazine base plates to the right (toward the buckle), refasten the flap.

318. To attach the first-aid pouch.—*a. To the cartridge belt.* When the haversack is carried, attach the first-aid pouch under the

fourth pocket from the front of the left section of the cartridge belt by inserting from inside of the belt one hook of the double hook attachment in the eyelet; pinch the base of the fourth pocket, bringing the eyelets together; insert in the same manner the other hook in the other eyelet. When the haversack is not carried, attach the first-aid pouch under the fifth (rear) pocket of the left section of the belt in the manner prescribed above. This provides room for the bayonet scabbard when carried on the belt.

b. To the magazine belt.—Attach the first-aid pouch under the third pocket from the front of the left section of the belt in the manner prescribed for the cartridge belt.

c. To the pistol belt (see Figure 84).—Attach the first-aid pouch in the fifth and sixth holes from the female buckle end on the left of the pistol belt, in the same manner as described for attaching it to the cartridge belt.

d. First-aid packet.—Place the first-aid packet in the pouch with the ring down and toward the body; secure the flap.

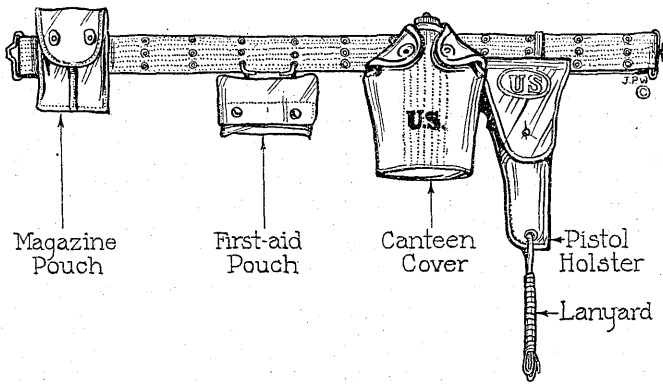


FIG. 84.—Pistol belt with magazine pouch, first-aid pouch, canteen cover and pistol holster attached.

319. To attach the canteen cover.—*a. To the cartridge belt.*—Attach the canteen cover to the cartridge belt under the fourth or fifth pocket (depending upon the waist measure of the wearer) from the front of the right section of the belt, in the manner described for attaching the first-aid pouch. Place the assembled canteen and cup in the canteen cover so that the concave surfaces are toward the body; secure the flaps.

b. To the magazine belt.—Attach the canteen cover under the third pocket from the front of the right section of the magazine belt as described for attaching it to the cartridge belt.

c. To the pistol belt (see Figure 84).—Attach the canteen cover in the fifth and sixth holes from the male buckle end on the right of the pistol belt in the manner described in subparagraph *a*.

320. To attach the pack carrier to the haversack (see Figures 85 and 86).—Spread the haversack on the ground, inner side down, outer flap to the front. Place the buttonholed edge of the pack carrier, lettered side of the pack carrier up, under the buttonholed edge of the haversack. Superimpose the buttonholes of the haver-

sack upon the corresponding ones of the pack carrier. Lace the carrier to the haversack by passing the ends of the coupling strap down through the corresponding buttonholes of the haversack and the pack carrier nearest the center, bringing the ends up through the next buttonholes and continuing to the right and left, respectively, to the sides.

321. To attach the belt to the haversack (see Figure 87).—*a. To the cartridge belt.*—Place the haversack and pack carrier (assembled) on the ground, inner side down; place the cartridge belt

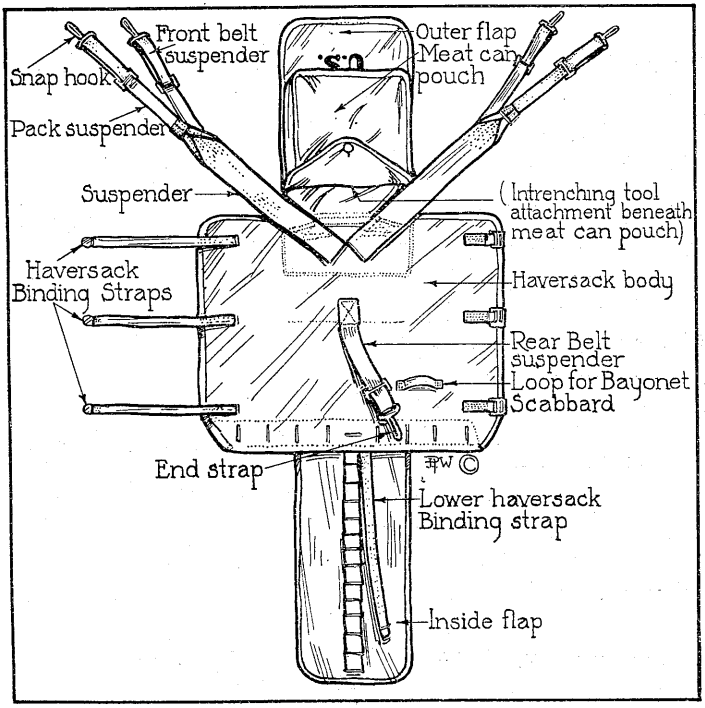


FIG. 85.—The haversack.

along the junction of the haversack and carrier, pockets down, tops toward the haversack; insert the hook on rear belt suspender in the center eyelet of the adjusting strap, so that the point of the hook will be on the outside of the belt; twist the front belt suspenders toward the ends of the belt and insert the hooks in the eyelets between the first and second pockets from each end of the belt, so that the points of the hooks will be on the outside of the belt and the suspenders will be flat on the body.

b. To the magazine belt.—Proceed as with the cartridge belt.

c. To the pistol belt.—Proceed as with the cartridge belt, the hooks on the ends of the front belt suspenders being inserted in the

second eyelets from the buckle, and the hook on the rear belt suspender in the center eyelet of the belt.

322. To attach the bayonet scabbard.—*a. To the haversack.*—Attach the scabbard by passing its lower end through the loops provided on the side of the haversack body; then engage the double hook attachment in the eyelets on the outer flap of the haversack, inserting the hook from the under side. Place the bayonet in the scabbard, ring to the rear.

b. To the cartridge belt.—When the haversack is not carried, attach the scabbard under the third pocket from the front of the

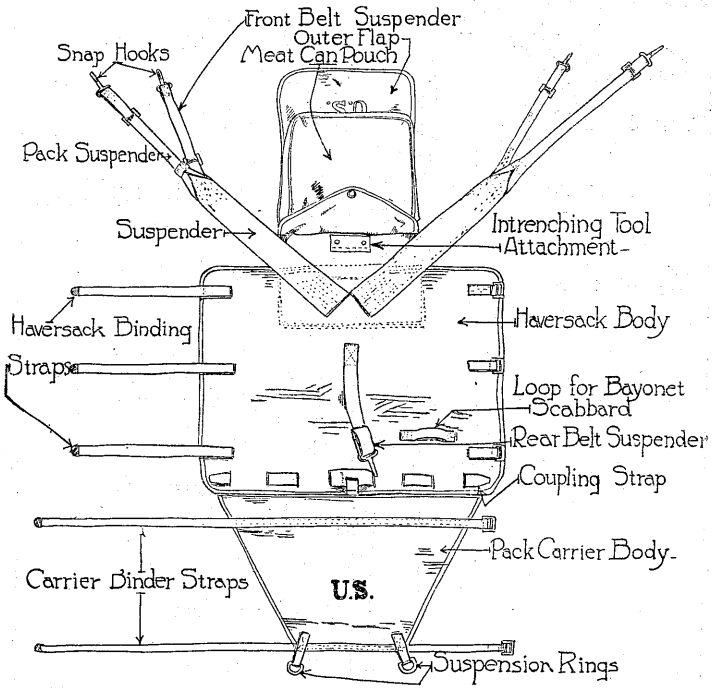


FIG. 86.—Haversack with pack carrier attached.

left section of the cartridge belt. To do this remove first-aid pouch from under the fourth pocket and attach it under the fifth pocket of the left section. Place the bayonet in the scabbard, ring to the front.

323. To attach the intrenching-tool carrier to the haversack (see Figures 93 and 94).—Fold the outer flap of the haversack over so that the meat-can pouch is uppermost; pass the intrenching-tool carrier underneath the meat-can pouch and engage the double hook attachment in the eyelets in the flap provided, inserting the hooks from the under side. Place the intrenching tool in its carrier and secure it by means provided on the intrenching-tool carrier. Secure the intrenching-tool to the roll by means of the third haversack binding strap.

324. To make the roll (see Figure 88).—Spread the shelter half on the ground and fold in the triangular end so that the shelter half forms a rectangle. Make a second fold by carrying the folded edge to the opposite edge. Fold the blanket twice parallel to its longer axis so that the blanket is now one-fourth its previous width, and then fold once at the middle so as to bring the ends together. This will form a rectangle approximately 17 by 42 inches. Place the blanket symmetrically in the center of the folded shelter half; place

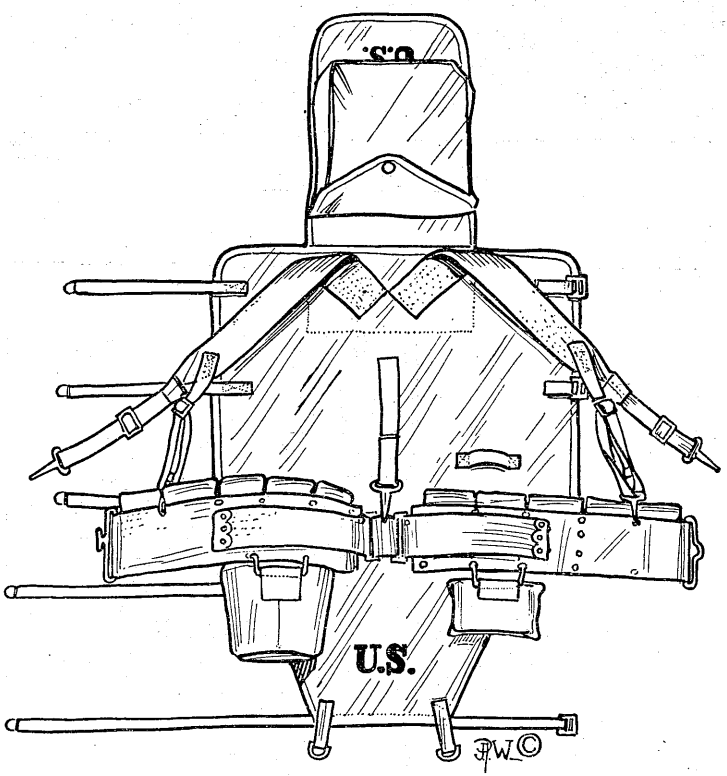


FIG. 87.—The haversack attached to belt.

the underwear, the tent pole, and the pins on that end of the blanket from which the rolling is to begin (near end). Fold the sides and then the near end of the shelter half snugly over the blanket, fold 10 inches of the far end of the shelter half toward the blanket and, beginning at the near end, roll as tightly as possible, rolling the roll into the folded end of the shelter half, thus making an envelope roll.

325. To assemble the full equipment with rations (see Figures 89 and 90).—*a. To pack the haversack.*—Place the equipment on the ground, inside of the haversack up, pockets of the cartridge belt up,

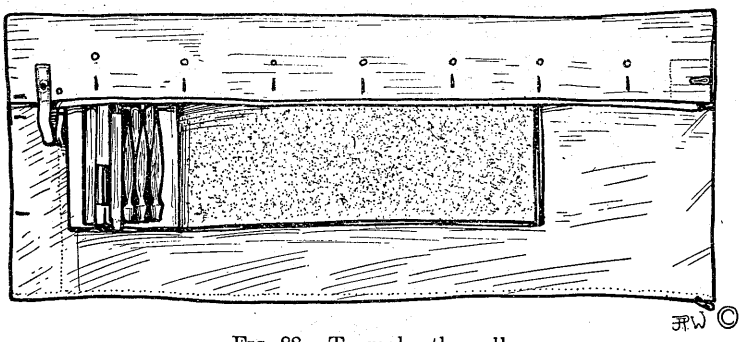


FIG. 88.—To make the roll.

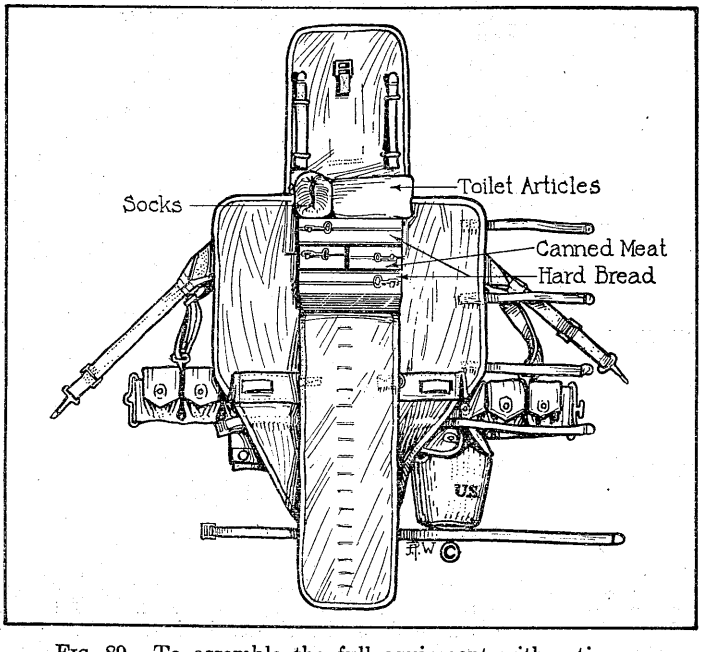


FIG. 89.—To assemble the full equipment with rations—packing the haversack.

haversack spread out, inside flap and pack carrier extended to their full length. Place one container of hard bread on its side in the center of the haversack, in front of and touching the line of attachment of the inside flap. Place two cans of meat component end to end, parallel to and in front of the can of hard bread. Place the remaining can of hard bread in front of the cans of meat component. Place the toilet articles and socks in front of the hard bread. Fold the inside flap of the haversack over these articles. Fold the sides of the haversack over the rations and toilet articles. Pass the upper

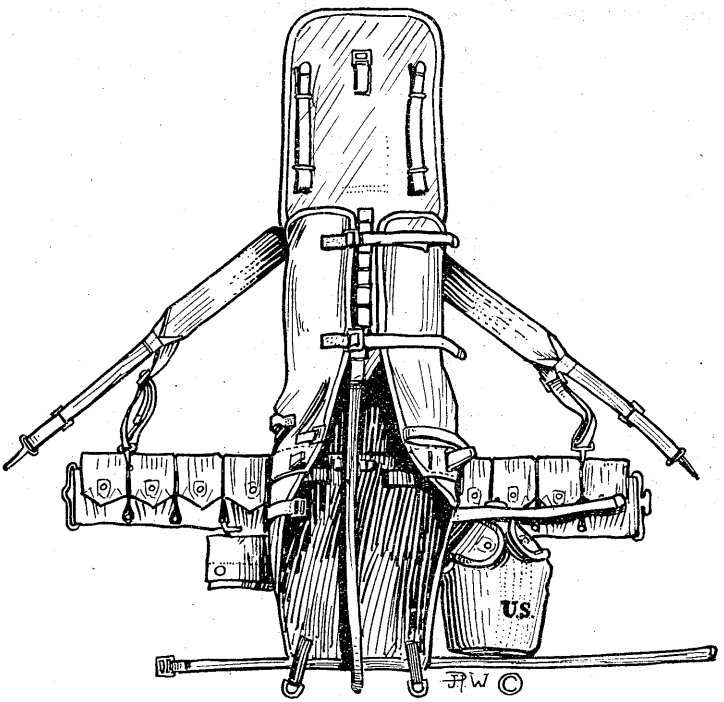


FIG. 90.—To assemble the full equipment with rations—assembling the pack.

two binding straps through the loop opposite the point of attachment of the strap to the haversack body. Fasten each strap by passing the end of the strap through the opening of its opposite buckle next to the buckle attachment, over the center bar and back through the opening of the buckle away from the attachment. Pull the strap tight and make the fastening secure. Fold over the outer flap of the haversack and fasten it by means of the lower haversack binding strap passed through the buckle on the inside of the outer flap. Pull the strap tight, drawing the outer flap snugly over the filled haversack. The haversack is now packed and the carrier is ready for the reception of the roll.

b. To assemble the pack (see Figure 91).—Place the roll in the pack carrier and haversack with one end against the bottom of the packed haversack. Grasp the lower suspension rings, one in each hand. Place the right knee against the bottom of the roll. Pull the carrier down and force the roll up close against the bottom of the packed haversack. Without removing the knee, fasten the lower pack carrier binding strap over the roll and secure it by passing, from below, its end up through the opening of its corresponding buckle away from the buckle attachment, then over the center bar, and down through the opening of the buckle next to the buckle attachment, and then back underneath the standing end of the strap.

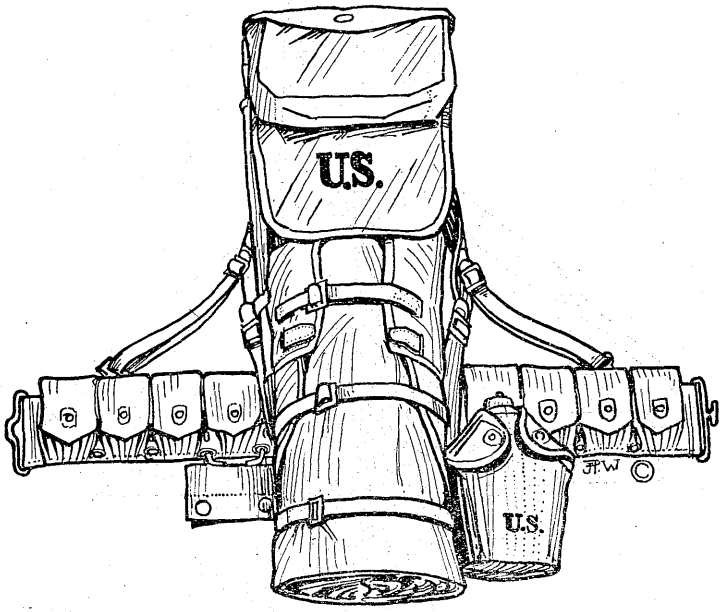


FIG. 91.—To assemble the full equipment with rations—assembling the pack.

In a similar manner secure the third haversack binding strap and then the upper carrier binding strap. Engage the snap hooks on the pack suspenders in the lower suspension rings.

c. To attach the overcoat (see Figures 92 and 93).—Turn the sleeves inside out, place the overcoat on the ground outside down, coat smooth, collar extended, sleeves smooth and extended toward pockets, move the inside flap of the tail under the outside flap about 6 inches and gather the slack in the coat (thus caused) in one fold along the middle seam, tapering toward the collar. Fold the bottom of the front edges of the coat about 12 inches toward the center seam, forming a parallelogram approximately 42 inches by 52 inches. Fold the collar end down about 15 inches again at the top and roll smoothly and tightly toward the tail; turn the tail up to a depth of

about 9 inches, and roll the entire coat into this pocket. Place the overcoat thus rolled, the open side of roll down, on top of the haversack, in rear of the bayonet handle so that the center back seam is over the center of the top of the haversack. Secure the coat at the top with a shelter half rope. Bind the ends of the overcoat down and along the sides of the haversack. Lash the ends of the roll to the haversack with the rope; using a half hitch near each end of the overcoat, and passing the rope around the haversack over the outside flap.

d. To attach the raincoat.—Fold the raincoat neatly into a rectangle about 10½ inches long by 8½ inches wide, with the outside

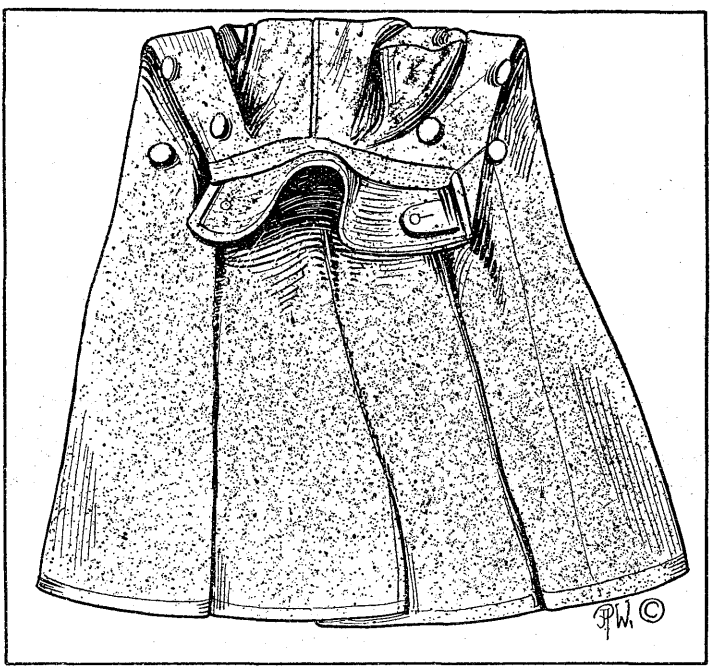


FIG. 92.—To fold the overcoat.

of the raincoat out. Place the raincoat between the inner and the outer haversack flaps. Secure it with the lower haversack binding strap, by passing the latter under the bottom haversack binding strap and fastening it tightly to the buckle on the under side of the outer haversack flap.

e. To attach the helmet (see Figures 93 and 94).—Attach the helmet by placing the chin strap over the meat-can pouch; the chin strap is then secured by tying it on with a cord (shoe or legging lace).

326. To assemble the full equipment without rations.—*a. To pack the haversack.*—Place the equipment on the ground as hereinbefore described. Roll the toilet articles and the extra pair of socks in the inside flap so that the top of the toilet articles will be on line

with the top of the haversack body. Fold up the lower haversack strap against the roll thus formed.

b. To assemble the pack.—Place the roll on the haversack and pack carrier, with its upper end against the roll formed by the toilet articles. Bind it to the haversack and carrier by means of the haversack and carrier binding straps, turning up the bottom of the pack carrier so that the folded edge of the pack carrier will be even with the bottom of the roll and so that the lower carrier binding strap will engage the roll. Fold down the outer flap of the haversack and secure it by means of the middle haversack binding strap and the

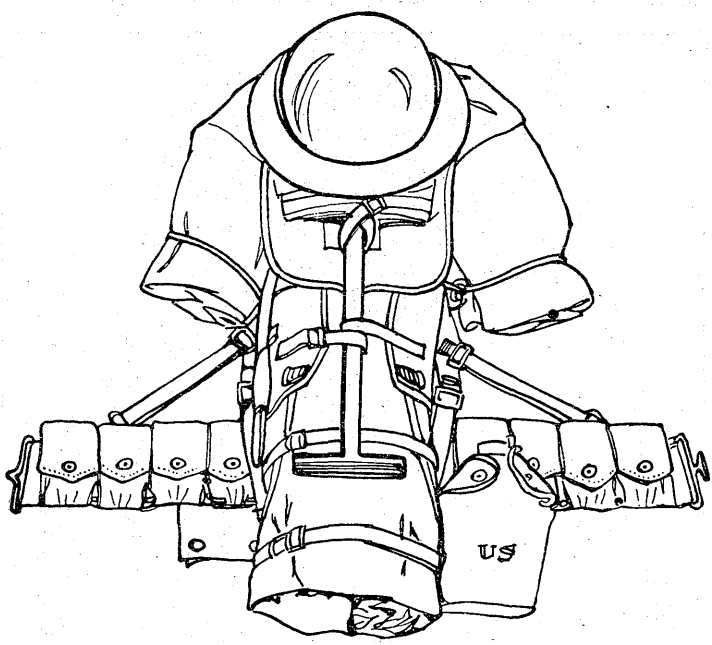


FIG. 93.—The full equipment assembled.

buckle provided on the under side of the flap; engage the snap hooks of the pack suspenders in the lower suspension rings.

c. Other articles.—The coat and helmet are attached as provided in paragraph 325.

327. To assemble the full equipment, less the roll, with rations. *a. To pack the haversack.*—Detach the carrier from the haversack. Place the rest of the equipment on the ground as hereinbefore described. Place the rations, the toilet articles, and the socks in the middle of the haversack as prescribed for the assembling of the full equipment with rations. Fold the inside flap and the side of the haversack up and over. Pass the three haversack binding straps through the loops on the inside flap and secure them by means of the buckles on the opposite side of the haversack. Pass the lower haversack binding strap through the buttonhole in the lower edge

of the haversack, fold the outer flap of the haversack over the whole, and secure it by means of the buckle on its under side and the lower haversack binding strap. Pass the haversack suspension rings through the adjoining buttonholes in the lower edge of the haversack and engage the snap hooks on the ends of the pack suspenders.

b. Other articles.—Attach the overcoat, raincoat, and helmet as prescribed in paragraph 325.

328. To assemble the full equipment, less the roll, without rations.—*a. To pack the haversack.*—Detach the carrier from the haversack. Place the rest of the equipment on the ground as hereinbefore described. Fold up the inside flap of the haversack and form a pouch as described for assembling the full equipment, less the pack, with rations. Place the socks and the toilet articles in the bottom of the pouch thus formed. Fold the outer flap of the haversack over the whole and secure it by means of the buckle on its under side and the lower haversack binding strap. Pass the haversack suspension rings through the adjoining buttonholes in the lower edge of the haversack and engage the snap hooks of the pack suspenders.

b. Other articles.—Attach the overcoat, raincoat, and helmet as prescribed in paragraph 325.

329. To discard the roll without removing the equipment from the body.—Unsnap the pack suspenders from the suspension rings and snap them into the eyelets on top of the belt and in rear of the rear pockets of the right and left pocket sections. Support the bottom of the pack with the left hand, with the right hand grasp the coupling strap at its middle, and withdraw first one side and then the other. Pull down on the roll with both hands and remove it. When the roll has been removed, lace the coupling strap through the buttonholes along the upper edge of the carrier.

SECTION II

THE ADJUSTMENT OF EQUIPMENT

330. Cartridge and magazine belt.—Adjust the belt to fit loosely about the waist, that is, so that when buckled it may rest well down over the hip bones and below the pit of the abdomen. Care should be taken that the adjustments are made equally from both ends of the adjusting strap, so that the center eyelet will be in the middle of the belt. The proper position of the belt is the same, whether filled or empty.

331. Full equipment.—Put on the equipment, slipping the arms through the pack suspenders as through the sleeves of a coat. By means of the adjusting buckles on the belt suspenders, raise or lower the belt until it rests well down over the hip bones and below the pit of the abdomen. Raise or lower it in rear until the adjusting strap lies smoothly across small of the back. By means of the adjusting straps on the pack suspenders, raise or lower the load on the back until the top of the haversack is on a level with the top of the shoulders, so that pack suspenders from their point of attachment on the haversack to the shoulders will be horizontal. *The latter is essential to the proper adjustment of the load.*

332. Full equipment, less the roll.—Put on the equipment as prescribed for the full equipment. Adjust the belt as prescribed in paragraph 330. Adjust the pack suspenders as prescribed in paragraph 331.

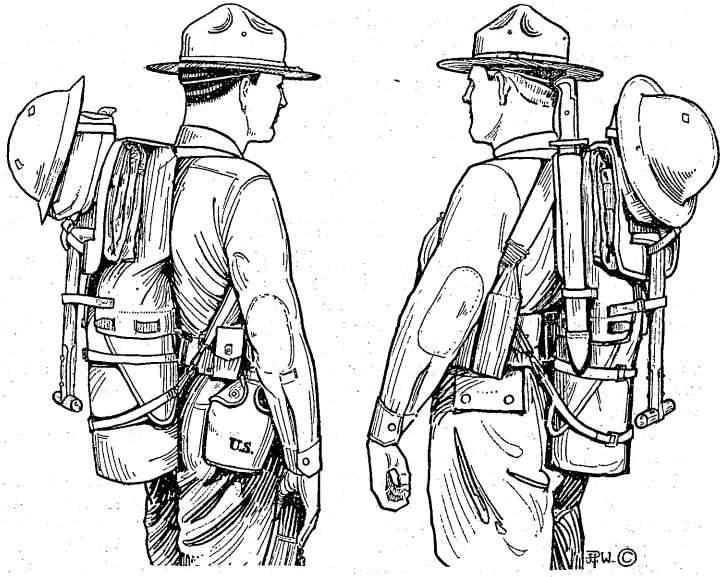


FIG. 94.—Full equipment adjusted to the soldier.

SECTION III

SPECIAL EQUIPMENT

333. Special equipment.—Special equipment will be carried as prescribed below. Articles which are not mentioned may be disposed about the person in the most advantageous manner, unless otherwise prescribed by commanding officers.

a. Ammunition carrier, 3-inch trench mortar.—On top of all equipment except the gas mask.

b. Bandoleer, magazine, for Browning automatic rifle.—Suspended on either side by strap passed over the opposite shoulder.

c. Bolo with scabbard.—As prescribed for intrenching tools.

d. Bugle.—Suspended on the left side by a strap passed over the right shoulder.

e. Discharger, rifle grenade.—On the belt, in front of the first-aid pouch.

f. Case, dispatch.—Suspended on the right side by a strap passed over the left shoulder.

g. Case, record.—Suspended on the left side by a strap passed over the right shoulder.

h. Glasses, field.—On the left side, suspended from the belt or by a strap passed over the right shoulder.

i. Clinometer, 3-inch trench mortar.—Suspended on the left side by a strap passed over the right shoulder.

j. Clinometer, machine-gun.—On the belt in front of the right hip.

k. Compass, case.—On the belt in front of the right hip.

l. Cutter, wire, small.—Attached to the left side of the belt immediately in front of the first-aid pouch.

m. Gas mask.—Worn under the left arm and over all other equipment, suspended by a strap passed over the right shoulder.

n. Instrument, angle of site.—On the right side, suspended by a strap passed over the left shoulder.

o. Kit, flag, combination.—On the right side, suspended by a strap passed over the left shoulder. Worn over all equipment except the gas mask.

p. Pistol and holster.—On the right hip.

q. Pistol, Very, with holster.—Same as pistol. When worn together, the Very pistol is worn in rear.

r. Pockets, web, for Browning automatic rifle.—Attached to the belt in front of the right hip.

s. Pockets, magazine, web, double.—In front of the left hip.

t. Sight, quadrant, for 37-mm. gun.—On the left side, suspended by a strap passed over the right shoulder, with telescopic sight.

u. Sight, telescopic, for 37-mm. gun.—On the left side, suspended by a strap passed over the right shoulder, with quadrant sight.

v. Sight, telescopic, rifle.—On the right side, suspended by a strap passed over the left shoulder.

CHAPTER 2

THE DISPLAY OF EQUIPMENT, FOOT TROOPS, DISMOUNTED AND MOUNTED

334. General provisions.—For all inspections, whether indoors or in the field with or without shelter tents, the equipment of foot troops will be displayed as shown in the accompanying figures.

335. Display of individual equipment, dismounted men (Figure 95).—*a.* For display, the blanket is folded within the shelter half exactly as the blanket and shelter half are folded for rolling the infantry pack.

b. If both the overcoat and raincoat are carried, the raincoat will be displayed on top of the overcoat. If only the raincoat is carried it will replace the overcoat.

c. Special articles of equipment issued to individuals and carried on the belt will remain attached.

d. Foot powder when carried will be displayed in the same relative position to the toilet articles as the extra shoe laces but on the opposite side.

e. Bandoleers will be displayed between the overcoat and the tent pins, the bottoms of the pockets being flush with the rear edge of the blanket.

f. All other articles of equipment issued to individuals, such as field glasses, field message book, pencil, watch, compass, signal kit, and hand or rifle grenades, will be displayed in the extra space between overcoat and the tent pins.

g. When the equipment is displayed with shelter tents pitched it will be placed outside and in front of the tent, with the rear edge of the blanket on the line of the tent front, one corner of the blanket touching the center pole.

h. The automatic rifle, when displayed, will occupy the same general position relative to the equipment as the rifle.

i. Arms may be stacked before intervals are taken for the purpose of laying out equipment, in which case the rifle will not be displayed on the ground.

336. Display of individual equipment, mounted men (Figure 96).—The display of individual equipment of mounted men will be in accordance with that prescribed in paragraph 335 and Figure 95, with the following exceptions:

a. The equipment will be displayed on the shelter half, if shelter tents are not pitched. The shelter half will be laid out, buttons up and to the left, triangular end to the rear and folded on top of the shelter half. If shelter tents are pitched, the blankets will be laid out on the ground in the same manner as if the shelter half was being used.

b. The canteen cover will remain on the saddle and be displayed with the mounted equipment.

337. Display of mounted equipment (Figure 96).—The mounted equipment will be displayed in front of the shelter half or blanket as follows:

a. Saddle.—The saddle is placed seat up, pommel to the front, saddle bags immediately in front of the front edge of the shelter

half, or as close to the front edge of the blanket as the helmet and gas mask will permit, cincha and cincha strap crossed over seat, stirrups crossed over seat, hoods up.

b. Saddle bags.—Attached to saddle, spread out flat.

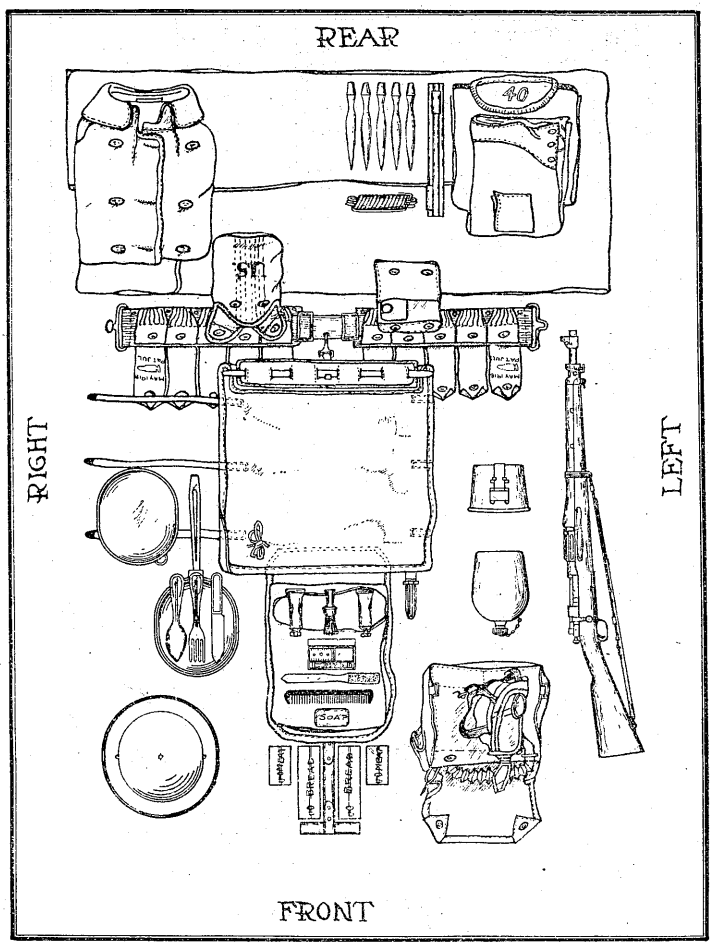


FIG. 95.—Display of individual equipment, dismounted man.

c. Lariat and picket pin with case.—Lariat coiled and to the left of left saddle bag; picket pin case attached to and on left of lariat; picket pin to the left of case.

d. Horse kit.—Arranged opposite saddle bags as follows:

(1) *Curry comb*—teeth up, to right of right front half of right saddle bag.

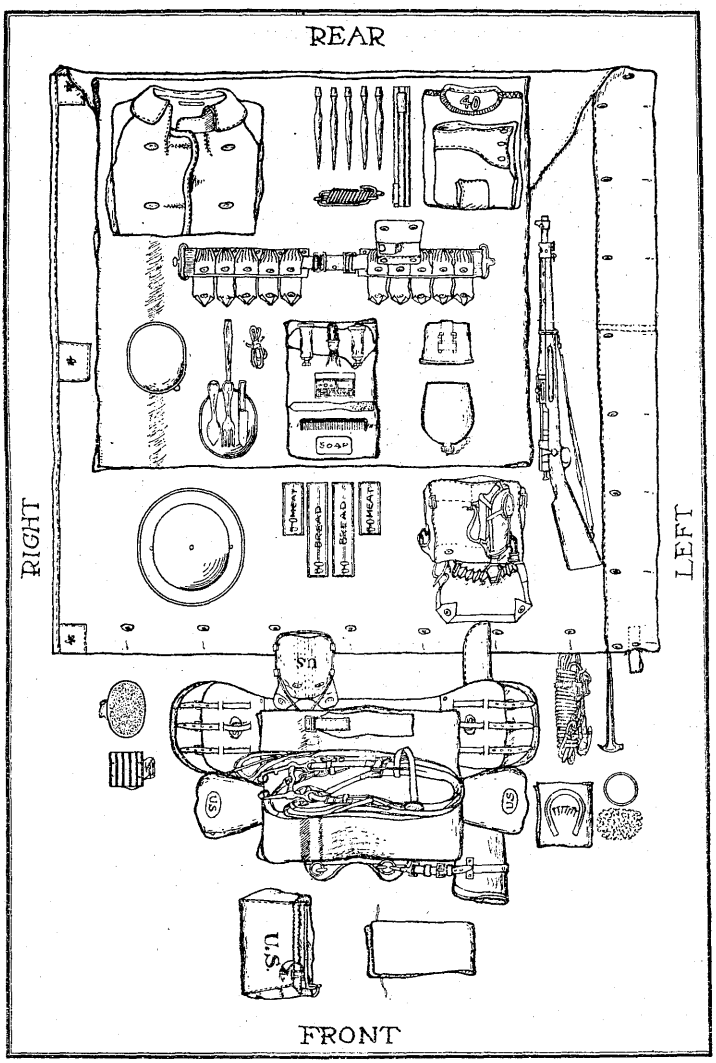


FIG. 96.—Display of individual equipment, mounted man.

(2) *Horse brush*—bristles up, in rear of curry comb.
(3) *Grooming cloth*—folded and placed in front of lariat.
(4) *Extra horseshoes*—on top of grooming cloth.
(5) *Extra horseshoe nails*—on top of grooming cloth.
(6) *Saddle soap container*—to the left of horseshoes.
(7) *Sponge for saddle soap*—to the left of horseshoes, in front of saddle soap container.

e. Rifle scabbard.—Attached to and parallel to long edge of saddle.

f. Saddle blanket.—Folded, horse side in, folded edge to the front, double fold to the left, across seat of saddle.

g. Bridle.—Reins folded over headstall, laid on blanket, bits to the right, browband up.

h. Surcingle.—Folded, buckle to the right, laid on rear edge of blanket.

i. Feed bag.—Longer axis of the bag parallel to the front and on line with the pommel of the saddle. The "U. S." up and bottom to the right.

j. Grain bag.—Placed to the left of the feed bag, bottom to the left and organization mark up.

k. Special articles of equipment issued mounted individuals are displayed in the most convenient manner as prescribed by the commanding officer. The saddle used by the guidon carrier has a special right stirrup with a bracket in which the guidon ferrule is inserted. It is displayed in the same manner as the ordinary stirrup.

338. Display of officers' equipment.—Officers' equipment, if displayed, is laid out in a manner similar to that described for enlisted men. (See Figures 95 and 96.)

CHAPTER 3
SHELTER TENT DRILL, FOOT TROOPS

		Paragraphs
SECTION I.	Pitching single shelter tents	339–343
II.	Pitching double shelter tents	344–347
III.	When packs are not carried	348
IV.	To strike shelter tents	349–353
V.	In the field	354–355

SECTION I
PITCHING SINGLE SHELTER TENTS

339. Purpose.—The purpose of this exercise is to enable the unit commander to establish his unit rapidly and correctly in single shelter tents, arranged in a neat and orderly way.

340. Formation.—The company commander forms the company in column of platoons on smooth or level ground suitable for instruction. During the instruction, if level ground is not available, the normal formation may be departed from sufficiently to indicate to the men the correct manner of taking advantage of the ground in camping. When tents are pitched on broken or rolling ground, the company commander indicates the general disposition for platoons. Platoon leaders provide for the proper disposition of tents in their own platoons. Except at inspection the alignment should always be subordinate to the proper employment of ground in camping.

341. Commands.—*a.* ***FORM FOR SHELTER TENTS.***

b. 1. ***Take interval,*** 2. ***To the right (left),*** 3. ***MARCH,*** 4. ***Company,*** 5. ***HALT.***

c. ***PITCH TENTS.***

342. Execution.—*a. Forming*—At the command ***FORM FOR SHELTER TENTS*** the file closers fill blank files. Men taken from the left (right) of the platoon concerned fill any remaining blank files; surplus file closers and members of platoon headquarters take position as additional files on the flank away from the point of rest.

b. Taking intervals.—At the commands for taking interval, the movement is executed as prescribed in paragraph 176.

c. Pitching.—(1) At the command ***PITCH TENTS*** each front-rank man draws his bayonet with his left hand and thrusts it into the ground, ring to the front, outside of and against his left heel near the instep. The bayonet marks the position for the front pole of the tent. Men armed with the pistol mark the place with the left heel. At the same time each rear-rank man moves to the front and places himself in the center of the interval, to the right of, and on line with his front-rank man.

(2) Each man steps off obliquely to the right with the right foot, a full pace, lays his rifle on the ground, muzzle to the front, barrel to the left, butt near the toe of his right foot. He then steps back into place. All men then unsling equipment and place the packs on the ground in front of them. They then open their packs and remove their shelter halves, poles and pins. The men of each file

spread their shelter halves on the ground the tent is to occupy, triangle to the rear, buttons to the center, the rear-rank man's half on the right.

(3) They then button the halves together. The front-rank man adjusts his pole, inserts its small end through the front eyes of the tent, and holds the pole upright in position beside the bayonet.

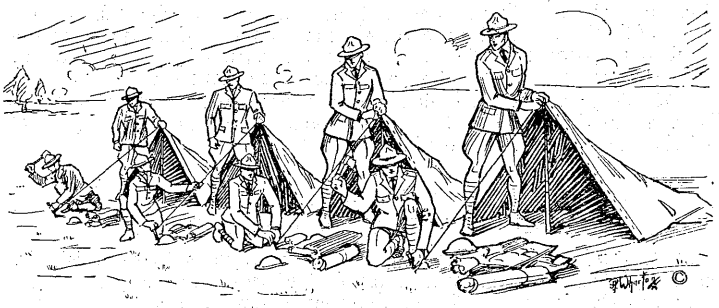


FIG. 97.—To pitch shelter tents.

The rear-rank man pins down the front corners of the tent in line with the bayonets. He then drives the front guy pin a rifle length in front of the front pole. If he is not armed with the rifle, he measures off, on the tent rope, the distance from the base of the front tent pole to either the right or left front tent pin and drives the front guy pin this distance in front of the front tent pole (the distance from the

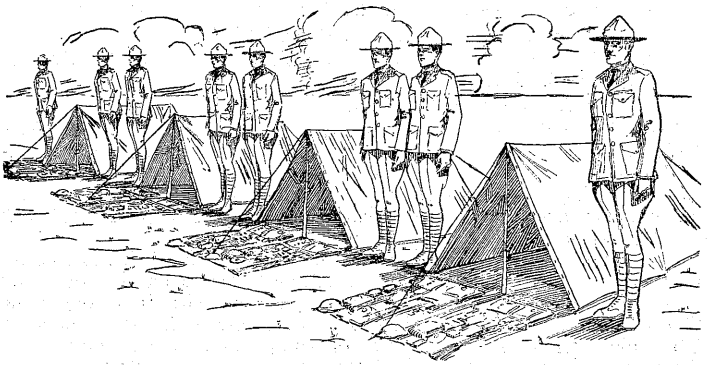


FIG. 98.—To display equipment.

base of a tent pole to its corresponding corner tent pin being equal to the length of a rifle). He places the loop of the guy rope over the front guy pin, runs the other end of the rope through the loops of the shelter halves, and ties it at such length that the pole is vertical when the rope is taut. Both men of the file then proceed to the rear of their tent. The rear-rank man adjusts his pole as described above, while the front-rank man pins the tent corners, the rear guy rope,

and the rear triangle so that the rear guy pin is a bayonet length in rear of the triangle. If he is not armed with the bayonet, he drives the rear guy pin as prescribed for the front guy pin. The rear-rank man drives the remaining pins on the right and the front-rank man drives them on the left. Axes, hand, intrenching and pick mattocks, intrenching, may be used to drive tent pins. The shovel, intrenching, the bolo, and the bayonet will not be used to drive tent pins.

(4) Each man then arranges the contents of his pack as described in paragraph 335 and stands at attention by the side of his own shelter half, toes on line with the corner tent pins.

343. Supervision.—Platoon commanders supervise their platoons throughout the exercise. They are responsible for an exact alignment of the poles and guy-rope pins.

SECTION II

PITCHING DOUBLE SHELTER TENTS

344. Purpose.—The purpose of this exercise is to establish the unit rapidly and correctly in a double-tent camp, arranged in a neat and orderly manner. The double-tent camp is preferable to the single tent in cold or inclement weather because of the superior shelter it affords. It is valuable in restricted areas, because of its greater concentration of personnel. The double tent is composed of two single tents buttoned together at the square ends. The tent is supported by three poles, one in the center and one at each end. Two guy ropes are attached to each end. Guy pins are in line with the side pins of the tent. Nos. 1 and 2, front and rear rank, pitch and occupy one double tent; Nos. 3 and 4, front and rear rank, another.

345. Formation.—As for single tents, paragraph 342.

346. Commands.—*a.* ***FORM FOR SHELTER TENTS.***

b. 1. ***Take interval, 2 paces,*** 2. ***To the right (left),*** 3. ***MARCH,*** 4. ***Company,*** 5. ***HALT.***

c. ***PITCH DOUBLE TENTS.***

347. Execution.—*a. Forming.*—At the command ***FORM FOR SHELTER TENTS*** the exercise proceeds as for single tents, paragraph 342.

b. Taking intervals.—At the commands for taking interval, the movement is executed as prescribed in paragraph 176 (p. 41), but with an interval of 2 paces.

c. Pitching.—(1) At the command ***PITCH DOUBLE TENTS*** all men proceed as for single tents, paragraph 342*c*, except that only the odd numbers of the front rank mark the line with their bayonets. The rear-rank men do not step forward in line with the front rank. They place their packs and rifles on the ground at such convenient distance to the rear as not to interfere with pitching the tent.

(2) After the bayonets have been placed, all men spread their shelter halves on the ground to be occupied by their respective tents. Front-rank men place their shelter halves with triangles to the front; the rear-rank men place theirs with the triangles to the rear.

(3) They button together the four shelter halves of each tent, the ridges first, then the square ends. The odd numbers, front and rear ranks, insert and support the front and rear poles, respectively, the front pole in contact with the bayonet, the rear pole in a line with it perpendicular to the line of bayonets. The even numbers, front and rear ranks, pin the front and rear corners of the tent.

The even number of the front rank then enters the tent with his pole and, assisted by the even number of the rear rank, adjusts the pole to the center eyes of the shelter halves. He inserts the top of the pole, in the following order, through the eyes of the lower half of the front tent, the lower half of the rear tent, the upper half of the front tent, and the upper half of the rear tent. The even numbers then fasten the guy ropes and all drive the remaining pins.

(4) The occupants turn back the triangular ends, display the contents of their packs, as prescribed in Chapter 2, Part Two, and stand at attention by the side of their own shelter halves, facing outward, with their toes on line with the corner tent pins.

SECTION III

WHEN PACKS ARE NOT CARRIED

348. Procedure.—When packs are not carried by the men the following procedure governs:

a. Arms are stacked and the men are directed to fall out to obtain and sling their packs.

b. When the men have returned to their positions, the unit commander causes them to take arms and then pitch tents as heretofore prescribed.

SECTION IV

TO STRIKE SHELTER TENTS

349. Purpose.—The purpose of this exercise is to enable the unit commander to change the unit from camp to march order.

350. Formation.—The company is brought to attention with the men in the position prescribed in paragraphs 342*c.* (4) and 347*c.* (4).

351. Command.—1. ***STRIKE TENTS.***

352. Procedure.—At the command ***STRIKE TENTS*** the men remove their equipment from the tents, pull up pins, unbutton the halves, and make up their packs. They sling their equipment and stand at attention in the positions occupied after interval was taken and before the command ***PITCH TENTS.***

353. Supervision.—Platoon commanders supervise their platoons. They require especially that packs are made up in the manner prescribed. (See Chapter 1, Part Three.)

SECTION V

IN THE FIELD

354. Procedure.—So far as practicable the same procedure is followed in the field as for instruction. Details of execution are invariably subordinated to the tactical, administrative, and sanitary requirements of field service.

355. The General.—When *the general* is sounded in camp as a signal for striking tents, they are prepared for striking by removing equipment from them and pulling up the pins. They are held in an upright position by one man at each pole until the last note of the bugle, when all are caused to fall simultaneously toward the kitchens.

CHAPTER 4

WALL AND PYRAMIDAL TENT DRILL

		Paragraphs
SECTION I.	To pitch, strike, and fold common and wall tents.	356–358
II.	To pitch, strike, and fold pyramidal tents	359–361
III.	In the field	362–363

SECTION I

TO PITCH, STRIKE, AND FOLD COMMON AND WALL TENTS

356. Pitching common and wall tents.—*a. Preliminary arrangements.*—The officer or noncommissioned officer in charge selects suitable ground. He indicates the direction in which the tent is to face, the line on which the tent is to be placed, and the position of the door pin. Four men are required to pitch each tent.

b. Procedure for each tent.—First, a pin is driven to mark the center of the door. Then the tent is spread on the ground it is to occupy, the door loops being placed over the door pin. The front corners are drawn taut, aligned, and pegged down. The rear door is laced, if there is one. Rear corners are drawn taut in both directions and pegged down. Then the four corner guy pins are driven in prolongation of the diagonals of the tent and about two paces beyond the corner pins.

The front door is temporarily loosened and the lee corner loops loosened from the corner pins. The ridge pole is inserted between the ventilation strip and the tent ridge. The upright eyelet pins are inserted in the ridge pole and in the eyelets of the tent. The fly eyelets are placed over the end-pole eyelet pins. The tent is raised and held in position. The lee corner loops are replaced and the corner and fly guy ropes secured and tightened to hold the poles vertical. The wall pins are driven through the open loops as they hang. Finally, the intermediate guy pins are driven in alignment with the corner guy pins already driven.

357. Striking common and wall tents.—The men first remove all pins except those of the four corner guy ropes. The pins are pulled and neatly placed in a receptacle. One man holds each corner guy rope, and the tent is lowered. The poles are removed and the tent folded. The poles are fastened together and the remaining pins collected.

358. Folding common and wall tents.—First, the tent is spread flat on the ground, folded at the ridge so that the bottoms of the side walls are even, ends of the tent forming triangles to the right and left. Then the triangular ends of the tent are folded in toward the middle to form a rectangle. The top is folded over about 9 inches. The tent is folded in two by carrying the top fold over to the foot, and again from the top to the foot.

All the guy ropes are thrown on the tent except the second from each end. The ends are folded in so as to cover about two-thirds of the second widths. The left end is then folded over to meet the

turned-in edge of the top right end, then the right end is folded over the top right end, then the right end is folded over the top, completing the bundle. Finally, the bundle is tied with the two exposed guy ropes.

SECTION II

TO PITCH, STRIKE, AND FOLD PYRAMIDAL TENTS

359. Pitching pyramidal tents.—*a. Preliminary arrangements.*—The commander designates the ground on which the tents are to be erected. The line of tents is marked by driving a wall pin on the spot to be occupied by the right front corner of each tent. The interval between adjacent pins should be 30 feet, which leaves a space of about 2 feet between tents. Each tent is usually erected by the squad which will occupy it.

b. Procedure for each tent.—(1) If the tripod is to be used, it is first spread on the ground where the center of the tent will be.

(2) The tent is next spread on the ground which it is to occupy, door to the front. The corners and door are laced and the right front wall loop is placed over the corner pin already driven.

(3) The left corner wall loop is carried to the left as far as it will go, and a wall pin driven through it, in line with the right corner pins already driven.

(4) At the same time the rear corner wall loops are pulled to the rear and outward, so that the bottom of the rear wall of the tent is stretched to complete the square. Wall pins are then driven through these loops. Each rear corner pin should be directly in rear of its corresponding front corner pin to form the square. Unless the canvas is wet a small amount of slack should be allowed before the corner pins are driven.

(5) Three men crawl under the tent and fit the pole into the rings, and such accessories as hood, fly, and tripod are adjusted.

(6) Steadied by one man at each corner guy rope, the tent is then raised by the men underneath.

(7) The four corner guy ropes are then placed over the lower notches of large pins, which are driven in prolongation of the diagonals at such distances as to hold the walls and ends of the tent vertical and smooth when the guy ropes are drawn taut.

(8) A wall pin is then driven through each remaining loop, and a large pin for each guy rope is driven in line with the four corner guy pins already driven. The guy ropes of the tent are placed over the lower notches of the large pins. All ropes are then drawn taut.

360. Striking pyramidal tents.—First, all pins are removed except those of the four corner guy ropes and the rear corner wall pins. The pins are neatly piled or placed in a receptacle. With one man holding each corner guy rope, the tent is then slowly lowered to the rear and folded. The tripod and poles are fastened together and the remaining pins collected.

361. Folding pyramidal tents.—*a. Procedure for each tent.*—(1) The tent is thrown toward the rear, and the back wall and roof canvas pulled out smooth. This is accomplished by leaving the rear corner wall pins in the ground with the loops attached. One man at each rear corner guy and one or two holding the square iron perpendicular, pull the canvas to its limit away from the former front of the tent. This places the three remaining sides of the tent on top of the rear side, with the door side in the middle.

(2) Next, to straighten the right side wall and roof canvas, the right front corner is carried over and laid on the left front corner. All canvas is pulled smooth, the guy ropes thrown toward the square iron, and the bottom edges pulled even. Then the right front corner is returned to the right to cover the right rear corner. This folds the right side of the tent on itself, with a crease in the middle and under the front side of the tent.

(3) Next, to straighten the left side wall and roof canvas, the left front corner is carried to the right and back in a similar fashion. This will leave the front and rear sides of the tent lying smooth and flat and the two side walls folded inward, each on itself.

(4) The square iron is folded downward toward the bottom of the tent and then the hood is placed in the square iron. The tent is now folded around the square iron as a core, all folds being pressed down flat and smooth, and parallel to the bottom of the tent. If each fold is compactly made and the canvas is kept smooth, the last fold will exactly cover the lower edge of the canvas.

(5) All exposed guys are laid along the folded canvas except the two on the center width. These two are pulled out and away from the bottom edge to their extreme length so as to be used later for the final tying of the bundle.

(6) From one end the bundle is folded toward the center hinging on the first seam; that is, the one joining the first and second widths. It is again folded toward the center, so that the canvas already folded will come to within about 3 inches of the middle width. It is again folded to the opposite edge of the middle width of canvas.

(7) From the opposite end the first width is folded in half. A second fold comes about 4 or 5 inches from the part of the tent already folded from the first end. This second fold is then thrown entirely over the part already folded.

(8) The exposed guys are drawn taut toward and across one another so that they are at right angles. The bundle is turned over on the guy rope which is in prolongation of the tent seam. The guy ropes are crossed on the new top of the bundle. The bundle is turned over again on the crossed ropes and tied.

b. The bundle.—(1) When properly tied and pressed together the bundle will be 23 by 34 inches, requiring about 8855 cubic inches to store and pack.

(2) The unit designation, stenciled on the lower half of the middle width of canvas in the back wall, will appear on the exposed top of the bundle.

SECTION III

IN THE FIELD

362. Procedure.—So far as practicable the same procedure is followed in the field as for instruction. Details of execution are invariably subordinated to the tactical, administrative, and sanitary requirements of field service.

363. The General.—When *the general* is sounded in camp as a signal for striking tents, they are prepared for striking as herein prescribed but are steadied in an upright position until the last note of the bugle, when all are caused to fall simultaneously in the same general direction.

Equipment Carried by the Rifle Squad.

Item	On the march									In combat								
	No. 1, front rank	No. 2, front rank	No. 3, front rank	No. 4, front rank	No. 1, rear rank	No. 2, rear rank	No. 3, rear rank	No. 4, rear rank	Unit weights, pounds	No. 1, front rank	No. 2, front rank	No. 3, front rank	No. 4, front rank	No. 1, rear rank	No. 2, rear rank	No. 3, rear rank	No. 4, rear rank	Unit weights, pounds
Mask, gas	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	3.875	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	3.875
Compass, watch	..	..	..	1	..	..	..	..	.200	..	..	..	1	..	..	..	..	.200
Adhesive tape, spool	..	..	..	1	..	..	..	..	.100	..	..	..	1	..	..	..	..	.100
Foot powder, ¼-lb. tin	..	..	..	2	..	..	..	..	.250	..	..	..	2	..	..	..	..	.250
Rifle, Cal. .30, complete	1	1	1	1	1	1	..	1	9.539	1	1	1	1	1	1	..	1	9.539
Bayonet	1	1	1	1	1	1	..	1	1.019	1	1	1	1	1	1	..	1	1.019
Discharger (grenade)	..	1	..	..	..	..	..	..	3.194	..	1	..	..	..	..	..	..	3.194
Scabbard, bayonet	1	1	1	1	1	1	..	1	.466	1	1	1	1	1	1	..	1	.466
Rod, cleaning	..	..	..	1	..	..	..	..	.634	..	..	..	1	..	..	..	..	.634
Screwdriver, rifle	..	..	..	1	..	..	..	..	.070	..	..	..	1	..	..	..	..	.070
Rifle, automatic	..	..	..	..	..	..	1	..	15.500	..	..	..	..	..	..	1	..	15.500
Belt, magazine, auto rifle	..	..	..	..	..	..	1	..	1.325	..	..	..	..	..	..	1	..	1.325
Case, spare parts, complete	..	..	..	..	..	..	1	..	1.250	..	..	..	..	..	..	1	..	1.250
Filler, magazine	..	..	1	1	..	..	1	..	.212	..	..	1	1	..	..	1	..	.212
Magazine (extra)	..	..	..	..	..	..	3	..	1.603	1	..	1	1	1	1	9	1	1.603
Cartridges, Ball, Cal. .30	40	40	40	40	40	40	60[1]	40	0.594	20 145	20 145	20 145	20 145	20 145	20 145	20 180	20 145	[2]
Cartridges, Tracer, Cal. .30	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	....	10	10	10	10	10	10	20	10	[2]
Cartridges, A. P., Cal. .30	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	....	5	5	5	5	5	5	20	5	[2]
Belt, cartridge, Cal. .30	1	1	1	1	1	1	..	1	1.450	1	1	1	1	1	1	..	1	1.450
Canteen, cup and cover	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1.355	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1.355
Packet, first-aid	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	.248	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	.248
Axe or bolo and carrier	1	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	2.057	1	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	2.057
Pick mattock and carrier	..	1	1	..	..	..	..	..	2.575	..	1	1	..	..	..	..	..	2.575
Shovel, int. and carrier	..	..	..	..	1	1	1	1	2.193	..	..	..	..	1	1	1	1	2.193
Wire cutter and carrier	..	..	..	1	..	..	..	..	1.000	..	..	..	1	..	..	..	..	1.000
Housewife	..	..	..	1	..	..	..	..	.185	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	....
Ration, reserve	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	3.000	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	3.000
Drawers, pair	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	.680	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	....
Handkerchief	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	.032	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	....

Equipment Carried by the Rifle Squad (Continued).

Item	On the march									In combat								
	No. 1, front rank	No. 2, front rank	No. 3, front rank	No. 4, front rank	No. 1, rear rank	No. 2, rear rank	No. 3, rear rank	No. 4, rear rank	Unit weights, pounds	No. 1, front rank	No. 2, front rank	No. 3, front rank	No. 4, front rank	No. 1, rear rank	No. 2, rear rank	No. 3, rear rank	No. 4, rear rank	Unit weights, pounds
Laces, breeches, extra	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	.002	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	....
Laces, shoe, extra	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	.002	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	....
Stockings, pair, extra	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	.170	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	....
Brush, shaving	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	....	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	....
Brush, tooth	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	....	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	....
Comb	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	.752	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	....
Mirror, trench	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	....	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	....
Razor, safety	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	....	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	....
Towel, face	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	.092	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	....
Undershirt	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	.975	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	....
Blanket, O. D.	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	3.525	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	....
Can, meat	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	.775	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	.775
Fork	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	.094	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	.094
Knife	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	.100	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	.100
Pins, tent, shelter	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	.086	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	....
Poles, tent, shelter	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	.850	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	....
Spoon	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	.109	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	.109
Tent, shelter, half	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	2.800	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	....
Carrier, pack	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	.456	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	....
Haversack	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	2.137	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	2.137
Pouch, first-aid	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	.106	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	.106
Raincoat	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	3.200	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	....
Clothing worn on person includes: Belt; breeches, wool; helmet; leggins, spiral; coat, wool; drawers, wool; overcoat; shirt, flannel; shoes; stockings, wool; tags, identification; undershirt, wool	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	19.801[3]	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	19.801[3]
Total weight, pounds	62.473	66.185	62.717	63.317	62.609	62.609	74.886	62.609		58.422	60.531	58.686	59.081	58.558	58.558	80.036	58.558	

NOTE—Panels: 3 per squad, carried by scouts and No. 4 rear-rank.

[1] Weight of auto rifle ammunition, 3.563 lbs. Weight of rifle ammunition, 2.374 lbs.

[2] Weight of auto rifle ammunition, 10.688 lbs. Weight of rifle ammunition, 13.063 lbs.

Equipment Carried by the Machine-Gun Squad.

Item	On the march											In combat										
	Sqd. Ldr.	No. 1	No. 2	No. 3	No. 4	No. 5	No. 6	No. 7	No. 8	No. 9	No. 10	Sqd. Ldr.	No. 1	No. 2	No. 3	No. 4	No. 5	No. 6	No. 7	No. 8	No. 9	No. 10
Mask, gas	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1		1	1	1
Compass, watch	1	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	1	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..
Adhesive tape, spool	1	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	1	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..
Foot powder, ¼ lb. tins	2	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	2	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..
Pistol, automatic	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
Holster, pistol	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
Magazine, pistol (extra)	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2
Cartridges, pistol, Cal. 45	21	21	21	21	21	21	21	21	21	21	21	21	21	21	21	21	21	21	21	21	21	21
Belt, cartridge, pistol	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
Canteen, cup and cover	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
Packet, first aid	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
Pouch, first aid	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
Axe, hand and carrier	..	..	1	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	1	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..
Pick mattock and carrier	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	1	1	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	1	1	..	..
Shovel, int. and carrier	..	..	..	1	1	1	1	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	1	1	1	1	..	..	..	..
Cutter, wire, small	1	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	1	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..
Haversack	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
Housewife	1	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..
Ration, reserve	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
Drawers, pair	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..
Handkerchiefs	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..
Laces, breeches, extra	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..
Laces, shoe, extra	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..
Raincoat	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..
Stockings, pair	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..
Brush, shaving	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..
Brush, tooth	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..
Mirror, trench	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..
Comb	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..
Razor	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..
Towel, face	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..
Undershirt	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..
Blanket, OD	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..

Equipment Carried by the Machine-Gun Squad (Continued).

Item	On the march											In combat										
	Sqd. Ldr.	No. 1	No. 2	No. 3	No. 4	No. 5	No. 6	No. 7	No. 8	No. 9	No. 10	Sqd. Ldr.	No. 1	No. 2	No. 3	No. 4	No. 5	No. 6	No. 7	No. 8	No. 9	No. 10
Can, meat	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
Fork	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
Knife	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
Spoon	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
Pins, shelter tent	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..
Poles, shelter tent	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..
Tent, shelter, half	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..
Carrier, pack	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..
Book, field message, with pencil	1	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	1	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..
Clinometer w/case	1	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	1	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..	..
Clothing worn on person includes: Belt, waist; breeches, woolen; coat, woolen; drawers, woolen; helmet, steel; leggins; overcoat; shirt, flannel; shoes; stockings, woolen; tags, identification; undershirt, woolen; handkerchief; ornament, collar	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1

TOPICAL INDEX OF PARAGRAPHS.

Use of index. In this text the subject matter is classified according to the drill or ceremony and the unit engaging in it. This index follows the same scheme. Thus any position or movement in the manual of arms will be found under the general heading, **DRILL, DISMOUNTED, WITH RIFLE AND AUTOMATIC RIFLE.** Anything pertaining to the pitching or striking of tents will be found under the general heading **tents,** etc. This **index,** in connection with the paragraph numbers given at the top of each right hand page will enable the reader easily to find the paragraph dealing with any desired topic.

PARAGRAPHS

adjustment of equipment.....330-332
adjutant's call, see drill or ceremony in question
arm-and-hand signals, see **SIGNALS**.....22-78
arms, manual of, see **DRILL, CLOSE-ORDER, WITH RIFLE**.....100-134
automatic rifle, see **DRILL, CLOSE-ORDER, WITH RIFLE, ETC.**

band, at drills and ceremonies, see drill or ceremony in question
BATTALION, CLOSE ORDER DRILL
- adjutant's call 211
- band in battalion formations..... 211
- designation of units 209
- dismiss the battalion, to..... 212
- formations of the battalion..... 209
- form the battalion, to..... 211
- machine gun company..... 209
- rules for close-order drill..... 209
- staff, composition and posts of..... 210

battalion headquarters company, see **COMPANY**.....227-228
battery drill, see **PLATOON, MACHINE GUN**..... 249
BRIGADE, CLOSE-ORDER
- brigade headquarters company..... 223
- dismiss the brigade, to..... 226
- does not drill..... 221
- form the brigade, to..... 223
- formations, none prescribed..... 222
- halt the brigade, to..... 225
- hourly halts 225
- march the brigade, to..... 224

brigade headquarters company, see **COMPANY**
cart drill, see unit in question

CEREMONIES, DISMOUNTED, GENERAL
- adjutant's call 263
- arrangement of units in formation..... 261
- arms, manual of..... 267
- formation of special units..... 265
- formation, place of..... 263
- formations, modification of..... 264
- rules for ceremonies.....261-267
- size of units..... 266
- staff salutes 262

ceremonies, dismounted, escorts
- escort of the color..... 278
- escort, funeral 280
- escorts of honor..... 279

ceremonies, dismounted, guard mounting, see **GUARD MOUNTING**
ceremonies, dismounted, parades
- adjutant's call 273
- band at parades.....273-275
- guidon 273 274, 276
- parade, battalion 273
  - battalion, alternate ceremony..... 274
  - regimental 275
  - regimental, alternate ceremony..... 276
- rules for parades..... 272
- special units 272, 276

ceremonies, dismounted, presentation of decorations..... 277

	PARAGRAPHS
ceremonies, dismounted, reviews	
arrangement of personnel	268
band at reviews	268-271
review, battalion	269
brigade and larger units	271
regimental	270
rules for reviews	268
staff salutes	268
close-order drill of various units, see unit in question, also DRILL, CLOSE-ORDER	
color, escort of, see ceremonies, dismounted, escorts	278
color guard, see ceremonies and inspections	
commands, rules for, see RULES	16
COMPANY, HEADQUARTERS (BN., REGT., OR BRIG.), CLOSE-ORDER DRILL	
assembly formation	228
conduct of personnel, mounted formations	227
formations, mounted and dismounted	227-228
guidon, posts of	228
mounted drill	228
rules for close-order drill	227
COMPANY, HOWITZER, CART DRILL	
change direction, to	240
definitions	240
dismiss the company, to	240
form the company, to	240
formations	240
guidon	240
increase or diminish intervals, to	240
march column, to form	240
movements from column of platoons	240
column of squads	240
line	240
organization of the company	240
route order, to form in	240
rules for cart drill	240
COMPANY, MACHINE GUN, CART DRILL	
change direction, to	248
definitions	248
dismiss the company, to	248
form the company, to	248
formations	248
guidon	248
increase or diminish intervals, to	248
march column, to form	248
movements from column of platoons	248
column of squads	248
line	248
organization of the company	248
route order, to form in	248
rules for cart drill	248
COMPANY, RIFLE, CLOSE-ORDER DRILL	
alignment, to give a new	197
alignment, to rectify	196
assembly	108
at ease, to march	207
change direction, to	204
close ranks, to	198
column of platoons successively to right (left)	202
column of squads successively to right (left)	203
column right (left)	204
column right (left), platoons	187
column, to rectify the	199
company headquarters	192
designations of platoons	192
dismiss the company, to	195
extend the mass, to	206
form the company, to	194
formation of company headquarters	192
formations of the company	192
formations, mass	205
line, front into	201
on right into	200

PARAGRAPHS

COMPANY, RIFLE, CLOSE-ORDER DRILL—Cont'd
mass formations 205
mass, to extend the 206
new alignment 197
on right (left) into line 200
open ranks, to 198
organization of the company 191
platoons, column of, successively to right (left) 202
platoons, column right (left) 187
ranks, to open and to close 198
rectify the column, to 199
route step, to march at 207
rules for close-order drill 193
squads, column of, successively to right (left) 203

COMPANY, SERVICE, REGIMENT, CLOSE-ORDER
assembly 231
drills, prescribed, not regularly engaged in 229
form the company, to 231
formations and drill, with and without transportation 231-232
guidon 232
organization of the company 230
trains 231-232

decorations, presentation of, see **ceremonies** 278
definitions, drill, general 1
definitions, see also unit and drill in question
dismounted ceremonies, see **ceremonies**
display of equipment, foot troops
general provisions 334
individual equipment, dismounted men 335
mounted men 336
mounted equipment 337
officers' equipment 338
distances and intervals, see unit and drill in question
drill and combat signals, see **SIGNALS**
drill, close- and extended-order, various units, see unit and drill in question

DRILL, CLOSE-ORDER, DISMOUNTED, WITHOUT ARMS, GENERAL
arm-and-hand signals, see **SIGNALS**
attention, position of 81
back step 94
change of direction, partial 9
change step, to 98
commands, rules for 16
correction of errors and commands 6
definitions 1
distance and step 11
double rank, formations in 12
double time 89
duties of instructor 79
errors, correction of 6
eyes right (left) 84
face, in marching 95
facings 85
flank, march by the 96
movements to right (left) 4
formations, designations of 10
formations in double rank 12
guides, positions of 7
guidons, posts of 92
half step 92
halt 90
instructor, duties of 79
intervals method of obtaining 13
mark time 91
mistakes, correction of 6
officers, posts of 14
parade rest, position of 83
pivots, fixed and moving 8
position of soldier or attention 81
positions of staff 15
posts of officers, nco, guidons 14
posts of special units 14
purpose of drill 2

PARAGRAPHS

DRILL, CLOSE-ORDER, DISMOUNTED, WITHOUT ARMS, GENERAL—Cont'd
quick time 88
rear, march to 97
recruits, grouping of 80
rests 82
right (left), how used in text 3
rules for commands 16
positions of guides 7
steps and marchings 87
salute, hand 86
signals, see **SIGNALS**
staff, positions of 15
step, back 94
step, change, to 98
step, half 92
step, side 93
steps and marchings, rules for 87

DRILL, CLOSE-ORDER, DISMOUNTED, WITH RIFLE AND AUTOMATIC RIFLE, GENERAL
arms, manual of, see **manual of arms** 100-134
attention or order arms, position of 104
automatic rifle, rules for carrying 101
bayonets, to fix 126
to unfix 127
cease firing 134
fire by volley 132
fix bayonets 126
guidon, dismounted, rules for 155
mounted, rules for 168
guidon, manual of, see **MANUAL OF GUIDON** 154-168
inspection arms, see manual of arms
instruction of recruits 99
load (rifle) 130
manual of arms
rules for 100-103
bayonets, to fix and to unfix 126-127
firings (and loadings) 129-134
cease firing 134
inspection arms 109
inspection arms to order (right) shoulder, port) 110
left shoulder arms, position of 120
left shoulder to port arms 121
loadings and firings 129-134
order arms, position of 104
order arms, rifle salute at 125
order to inspection arms 109
parade rest 122
port arms 107
present arms 111
right shoulder arms 112
stand at ease 128
trail arms 105
parade rest, position of 122
parade rest to attention (order arms) 123
port arms, position of 107
port to left shoulder arms 120
order arms 108
present arms 115
right shoulder arms 118
present arms, position of 111
present to order arms 108
port arms 114
right shoulder arms 119
right shoulder arms, position of 112
right shoulder arms, rifle salute at 124
right shoulder to order arms 113
port arms 116
rules for manual of arms 100-103
trail arms, position of 105
trail arms, rifle salute at 125
trail to order arms 106
manual of guidon, see **MANUAL OF THE GUIDON** 154-168
manual of pistol, see **MANUAL OF THE PISTOL** 135-153
men armed with pistol, rules governing conduct of 103
recruits, instruction of 99

PARAGRAPHS

DRILL, CLOSE-ORDER, DISMOUNTED, WITH RIFLE AND AUTOMATIC RIFLE, GENERAL—Cont'd
rules, carrying rifle and automatic rifle....100-101
manual of arms.... 102
manual of guidon.... 155
manual of pistol....103, 135
salute, guidon, see **MANUAL OF GUIDON**
salute, rifle, at order or at trail arms.... 125
salute, rifle, at right shoulder arms.... 124
unfix bayonets 127
unload (rifle) 131
volley fire (rifle).... 132

DRILL, EXTENDED-ORDER, MACHINE GUN SQUAD, SECTION AND PLATOON, GENERAL
exercises, extended-order 260
movements 256
purpose of training.... 256
signals 256
training, preliminary 256

DRILL, EXTENDED-ORDER, RIFLE SQUAD, SECTION AND PLATOON, GENERAL
battle sight 250
bayonet, use of.... 250
fire at will, to.... 250
purposes of drill.... 250
rules for extended-order.... 250
sights, rifle, to set.... 250

drill, mounted, see unit in question

drill, tent, see **tents**....341-363

duties, of personnel, see unit, drill or ceremony in question

equipment, infantry, see **INFANTRY PACK** and **display of equipment**

equipment of rifle squad....**appendix**
of machine gun squad....**appendix**

escorts, see **ceremonies**

extended-order drill, see **DRILL, EXTENDED-ORDER** and unit in question

firings, rifle, see **DRILL, CLOSE-ORDER, WITH RIFLE**....129-134

funerals, see **ceremonies**.... 280

GUARD MOUNTING, FOOT TROOPS, FORMAL
adjutant's call 282
assembly 282
band and field music.... 282
commander of the guard.... 282
designation of guides.... 282
details, march of.... 282
inspection of the guard.... 282
march in review.... 282
officers of the day.... 282
orderlies, selection of.... 282
posts of officers and non-commissioned officers.... 282

guard mounting, foot troops, informal.... 283

guard mounting, foot troops, relieving the old guard
dismissing old guard.... 290
disposition of new guard.... 288
field music 284
field music, when dispensed with.... 291
formation of old guard.... 284
march of new guard to guard house.... 284
presenting guards to officers of the day.... 286
presenting old and new guards.... 285
relief of old guard by new.... 289
salutes by guard.... 287

guides, see unit and drill or ceremony in question

guides, rules for, see **RULES**

guidon, at drills and ceremonies, see **MANUAL OF GUIDON** and drill or ceremony in question

gun drill, howitzer co. and machine gun units, see unit in question

PARAGRAPHS

howitzer company, see **COMPANY**

howitzer company squad, platoon, see **SQUAD** and **PLATOON**

INFANTRY PACK, ATTACHING EQUIPMENT AND ASSEMBLING
assemble full equipment, less roll, with rations, to..... 327
assemble full equipment, less roll, without rations, to..... 328
assemble full equipment, with rations, to..... 325
assemble full equipment, without rations, to..... 326
attach belt to haversack, to..... 321
attach intrenching tool carrier to haversack, to..... 323
attach pack carrier to haversack, to..... 320
bayonet scabbard 322
canteen cover 319
cartridge, pistol and magazine belts..... 317
discard roll without removing equipment, to..... 329
first aid packet and pouch..... 318
make the roll, to..... 324

infantry pack, adjustment of equipment
cartridge and magazine belt..... 330
full equipment 331
full equipment, less roll..... 332

infantry pack, special equipment..... 333

inspection, the rifle company
formation and procedure..... 292
inspection of field equipment in ranks..... 294
inspection of quarters and camp..... 293
inspecting officer other than captain..... 295

inspection, the battalion
companies not under inspection..... 299
inspecting officer other than major..... 302
inspection by battalion exceptional..... 303
inspection of camp and quarters..... 300
inspection of trains..... 301
other formations authorized..... 298
preparation of companies for inspection..... 296
procedure 297

inspection, the regiment.....304-305

inspection, the headquarters company
general 315
formations and procedure..... 316

inspection, the howitzer company
general 307
lay out of equipment for inspection..... 309
open, ranks, to..... 308
procedure 310

inspection, the machine gun company
general 311
lay out of equipment for inspection..... 313
open ranks to..... 312
procedure 314

inspection, the service company, regiment..... 306

intervals and distances, see unit and drill in question

loadings and firings, see **DRILL, CLOSE-ORDER, WITH RIFLE**....129-134

machine gun squad, section, etc., see **SQUAD, SECTION,** etc.

machine gun units, general remarks on drill..... 241

manual of arms, see **DRILL, CLOSE-ORDER, WITH RIFLE**

MANUAL OF THE GUIDON, DISMOUNTED AND MOUNTED
care and use of guidon..... 154
carry guidon, position of..... 156
carry to order guidon..... 157
carry guidon, salute from.....161-162
guidon, at ease, position of..... 166
guidon at double time..... 167
guidon salute 161
guidon salute, individual, by bearer..... 163
order guidon, position of..... 157
order guidon, salute from.....161, 163
order to carry guidon..... 158
order to trail guidon..... 164

PARAGRAPHS

MANUAL OF THE GUIDON, DISMOUNTED AND MOUNTED—Cont'd
order guidon to parade rest ... 159
parade rest, position of ... 159
parade rest to order guidon ... 160
rules for guidon, dismounted ... 155
rules for guidon, mounted ... 168
salute, guidon, dismounted ... 161, 163
salute, to carry guidon ... 162
salute, to order guidon ... 162
trail guidon, position of ... 164
trail to order guidon ... 165

MANUAL OF THE PISTOL, DISMOUNTED AND MOUNTED
general remarks ... 135, 146, 147
close chamber ... 139, 145
inspection pistol ... 143, 153
insert magazine ... 140, 150
load ... 141, 151
open chamber ... 138, 149
raise pistol ... 136, 145
return pistol ... 144, 145
unload ... 142, 152
withdraw magazine ... 137, 148

march in review, see ceremony in question

mass formations, see unit and drill in question

mounted drill, see unit in question

officers, duties and posts of, see unit, drill or ceremony in question

organization of units, see unit and drill in question

pack, infantry, see **INFANTRY PACK** ... 317-333

parades, see **ceremonies** ... 272-276

pistol, manual of, see **MANUAL OF THE PISTOL** ... 135-153

pitching tents, see **tents**

PLATOON, HOWITZER COMPANY, CART DRILL
change direction, to ... 239
definitions ... 239
dismiss the platoon, to ... 239
duties of personnel ... 239
form the platoon, to ... 239
formations ... 239
increase or diminish intervals, to ... 239
march column, to form and to break up ... 239
movements from column of squads ... 239
line ... 239
march column ... 239
organization of the platoon ... 239
route order, to form in ... 239

PLATOON, MACHINE GUN, BATTERY DRILL
angle of parallax ... 249
angle, to shift battery through an ... 249
base lines, to establish ... 249
battery position, to prepare ... 249
chart, firing by ... 249
equipment ... 249
formations ... 249
guns, to lay for elevation ... 249
to lay on I A P ... 249
to lay on parallel lines ... 249
to lay on their part of target ... 249
to parallel ... 249
object of drill ... 249
organization of the platoon ... 249

PLATOON, MACHINE GUN, CART DRILL
around carts ... 259
assembly ... 259
as skirmishers ... 259
duties of personnel ... 259
formations ... 259
platoon column ... 259
section column ... 259
squad column ... 259

PARAGRAPHS

PLATOON, MACHINE GUN, EXTENDED ORDER DRILL
around carts 259
assembly 259
as skirmishers 259
duties of personnel 259
formations 259
platoon, section, squad columns 259

PLATOON, RIFLE, CLOSE-ORDER DRILL
alignments 185
arrangement in ranks 181
at ease, movements 189
column right (left) 187
column of squads, movements from 187
diminish the front of a column, to 190
drill as a company 183
duties, individual 181
formations 183
form the platoon, to 181
front into line 187, 191
guides and file closers 184
movements at ease and at route step 189
from column of squads 187
from line 186
to the rear 188
on right (left) into line 187
open ranks, to 185
organization of platoon 181
platoon right (left) 186
platoon right (left) turn 186
right (left) by squads (twos, files) 186-190
right (left) front into line 187
right (left) front into line from column of twos or files 190
route step 189
rules for close-order drill 184
rules for guides and file closers 184
sizing the platoon 182
squads (twos), right (left) front into line 190
strength of platoon 181
turn, right (left) 186

platoon, rifle, extended-order drill, see **SECTION AND PLATOON, RIFLE,** etc. 252-260

posts, of personnel, see unit, drill or ceremony in question

recruits, grouping and instruction of, see drill in question

REGIMENT, CLOSE-ORDER
band in regimental formations 216
colors in regimental formations 216
designations of units 216
dismiss the regiment, to 220
drills, prescribed, not engaged in 213
form the regiment, to 217
formations of the regiment 214-216
halt the regiment, to 219
headquarters company 216
howitzer company 216
march of the regiment 218
rules for regimental formations 216
staff, regimental 216
special units 216
trains 216
when the regiment is drilled 213

regimental headquarters company, see **COMPANY** 227-228

reviews, see **ceremonies** 268-271

rifle squad, section, platoon, company, see **SQUAD, RIFLE,** etc.

RULES
arms, manual of 100-103
automatic rifle, carrying of 101
carrying rifle and automatic rifle 100-101
cart drill, howitzer company squad 239
howitzer company platoon 240
machine gun squad 246
machine gun platoon 247
machine gun company 248

RULES—Cont'd PARAGRAPHS
ceremonies, general 261-267
guard mounting 281
parades 272
reviews 268
close-order
battalion 209
guides and file closers 7, 184
headquarters cos. (bn., regt., brig.) 227
howitzer company, and units 233-234
machine gun company and units 241
men armed with pistol 103
rifle company 193
rifle platoon 184
regimental formations 216
steps and marchings 87
commands 16
deployments, see extended-order
extended-order
deployment, machine gun units 256
rifle units 252
rifle units, general 250
guides and file closers 7, 184
guard mounting 281
gun drill, machine gun squad 242
loadings and firings 129
manual of arms 100-103
manual of guidon, dismounted 155
mounted 168
manual of pistol 135
men armed with pistol 103
signals 18, 22, 66
steps and marchings 87
tests, gun drill, machine gun squad 244

SECTION, MACHINE GUN, EXTENDED-ORDER DRILL
around carts 258
assembly 258
as skirmishers 258
formations 258
section leader, duties of 258
squad and section columns 258

SECTION AND PLATOON, RIFLE, EXTENDED-ORDER DRILL
advance by rushes 254
advance by thin lines 255
alignment and interval 252
approach to position 260
assembly 254
assembly by squad, by section, by platoon 254
assembly formation 252
as skirmishers 253
base squad 252
commands 252
deployment 253
direction of 252
formations prior to 252
extended-order exercises 260
guides, posts of 252
interval and alignment 252
leaders, guides, runners, posts of 252
movements 255
position, approach into 260
preparation of 260
selection of 260
rules for deployment 252
rushes, advance by 254
scouts 252
section columns 253
selection of position 260
squad columns 253
supply 260
thin lines, advance by 255

PARAGRAPHS
shelter tents, see **tents**.....341-348
SIGNALS, DRILL AND COMBAT
arm-and-hand, general 22-46
additional for rifle companies.....47-48
additional for machine gun companies.....49-56
additional for howitzer companies.....57-65
additional for service companies.....66-74
additional for scouts and patrols.....75-78
attention to orders..... 20
purpose of signals..... 17
rules for signals.....18, 22, 66
suspend firing 21
whistle signals 19
SQUAD, AMMUNITION, HOWITZER CO., AMMUNITION DRILL
action 236
assembly 236
change of numbers and duties..... 236
equipment 236
form the squad, to..... 236
movements 236
organization 236
out of action..... 236
squad column 236
SQUAD, HOWITZER COMPANY, CART DRILL
form the squad, to..... 238
load carts, to..... 237
movements 238
mule, handling of..... 237
mule leader, duties..... 237
off carts 238
on carts 238
rules for cart drill..... 238
transportation 237
SQUAD, MACHINE GUN, ADVANCED GUN DRILL
action, to go into..... 243
to take gun out of..... 243
angles, to measure..... 243
base and aiming stakes, to put out..... 243
cease firing, to..... 243
commence firing, to..... 243
dial, to zero the..... 243
dismount gun, to..... 243
equipment 243
gun, to lay the..... 243
to dismount from low position..... 243
to mount in low position..... 243
to take out of action..... 243
immediate action 243
immediate action, tests..... 244
low position of gun..... 243
mount gun, to..... 243
munitions distributing point..... 243
points before, during and after firing..... 243
quadrant elevation 243
stakes, base and aiming..... 243
supply 243
suspend firing, to..... 243
tests, individual, immediate action..... 244
zero the dial, to..... 243
SQUAD, MACHINE GUN, CART DRILL
form the squad, to..... 246
load carts, to..... 245
movements 246
mule, handling of..... 245
mule leader, duties of..... 245
off carts 246
on carts 246
rules for cart drill..... 246
transportation 245
SQUAD, MACHINE GUN, ELEMENTARY GUN DRILL
change numbers and duties, to..... 242
equipment 242
examine gun equipment, to..... 242
dismount gun, to..... 242

PARAGRAPHS

SQUAD, MACHINE GUN, ELEMENTARY GUN DRILL—Cont'd
dismount tripod, to ... 242
form the squad, to ... 242
gun, to load and to half load the ... 242
to unload and to clear the ... 242
to mount and to dismount the ... 242
movements ... 242
numbers and duties, to change ... 242
object and scope of drill ... 242
organization of the squad ... 242
post the squad, to ... 242
rules for elementary gun drill ... 242
tripod, to mount and to dismount the ... 242
tests, individual ... 244

SQUAD, MACHINE GUN, EXTENDED-ORDER DRILL
around carts ... 257
assemble ... 257
as skirmishers ... 257
squad columns ... 257
squad leader, duties of ... 257

SQUAD, PLATOON AND COMPANY, MACHINE GUN, DRILL, GENERAL, see also unit in question
drills engaged in, kinds of ... 241
close-order drill ... 241
gun and battery drill ... 241
transportation and cart drill ... 241
rules for drills ... 241

SQUAD, RIFLE, CLOSE-ORDER DRILL
about, by squad ... 180
alignments ... 174
assembly from take interval ... 176
close ranks, to ... 175
count off ... 172
definition and purpose of squad ... 169
equipment of rifle squad ... Appendix
fixed pivot, to turn on a ... 180
form the squad, to ... 172
half turn ... 179
halt ... 178, 180
intervals, to take, and to assemble ... 176
march, oblique ... 178
moving pivot, to turn on a ... 179
open ranks, to ... 175
organization of the squad ... 171
pivots, fixed and moving, to turn on ... 179-180
right (left) about, by squad ... 180
right (left) turn, by squad ... 179
squad right (left) ... 180
squad right (left) about ... 180
stack arms and take arms, to ... 177
turns on fixed and on moving pivots ... 179-180

SQUAD, RIFLE, EXTENDED-ORDER DRILL
assembly ... 251
as skirmishers ... 251
cover, use of ... 251
follow the corporal ... 251
instruction as skirmishers ... 251
kneel or lie down, to ... 251
movement at night ... 251
observation ... 251
rush ... 251

squad, 37 mm. gun
drills engaged in ... 233
rules for drills ... 233

SQUAD 37 MM. GUN, GUN DRILL
action ... 234
assembly ... 234
change numbers and duties, to ... 234
dismount the gun, to ... 234
equipment ... 234
firing ... 234
fire orders ... 234
form the squad, to ... 234

SQUAD, 37 MM. GUN, GUN DRILL—Cont'd PARAGRAPHS
mount the gun, to ... 234
movements ... 234
organization of the squad ... 234
out of action ... 234
prepare for action ... 234
rules for gun drill ... 234
squad column ... 234
SQUAD, 3 INCH TRENCH MORTAR, MORTAR DRILL
action ... 235
assemble the mortar to ... 235
assembly ... 235
change numbers and duties, to ... 235
dismount the mortar, to ... 235
equipment ... 235
firing ... 235
fire orders ... 235
form the squad, to ... 235
movements ... 235
organization of the squad ... 235
out of action ... 235
prepare for action ... 235
squad column ... 235
stack and take arms, see **SQUAD, RIFLE, CLOSE-ORDER DRILL**
staff, see unit and drill or ceremony in question
steps and marchings, see **DRILL, CLOSE-ORDER, DISMOUNTED**

tents, shelter, single, pitching
commands ... 341
execution ... 342
formation ... 340
purpose of drill ... 339
supervision ... 343
when packs are not carried ... 348
tents, shelter, double, pitching
commands ... 346
execution ... 347
formation ... 345
purpose of drill ... 344
when packs are not carried ... 348
tents, shelter, striking ... 349, 353, 355
tents, common and wall, pitching, striking and folding ... 356-358
tents, pyramidal, pitching, striking and folding ... 359-363
tests, immediate action, gun drill, machine gun units ... 244
transportation, see **CART DRILL**

whistle signals, see **SIGNALS** ... 19

MACHINE GUNNER'S POCKET MANUAL

INDISPENSABLE TO OFFICERS AND NON-COMMISSIONED OFFICERS OF THE COMBAT ARMS

A FEW OF ITS FEATURES

1. FITS THE POCKET. 4 x 6 inches. Waterproof cover.
2. 200 pages, 85 illustrations. INDEXED.
3. Written primarily as a manual for use in the field, but is complete enough for use in training.
4. Arranged for ready reference. Large typed headings and sub-headings.
5. Contains notes on ANTI-AIRCRAFT TRAINING.
6. Special binding with flap and clasp; small celluloid sheet for notes and sketches; pocket for maps, tables, etc., and pencil holder.
7. Purely technical subjects conform to latest INFANTRY doctrines.
8. Chapters on Mechanics, Targeting, Care and Cleaning, Immediate Action; Fire Control Instruments; Direct Laying; Indirect Laying; Anti-Aircraft; Combat Signals; Extended Order; Barrages and Concentrations; Combat Principles; Standard Emplacements and Obstacles; Marches and Shelter; Care and Use of Animals; Use and Maintenance of Transportation and Material; and First Aid.
9. PRODUCED AT THE INFANTRY SCHOOL.

PRICE

Complete, with accessories in 6, above..... $2.25
Simple waterproof binding, without accessories..... 1.75

Your name stamped in gold on binding, 35 cts. a copy.

25% Discount on 10 or more, f. o. b. Harrisburg, Pa.

THE INFANTRY JOURNAL

1115 17th St., N. W. **Washington, D. C.**

Infantry Training Texts

13th Edition

These manuals have been widely known for many years as the best available books on Infantry training. They are suitable both for study and for reference, and contain questions and many practical problems. They cover the field of Infantry training, including all that the Infantryman has to know. Each subject has been written and illustrated by selected experts, and is strictly up-to-date. They conform to the Training Regulations and the teachings of the Infantry School. Of special value to National Guard and Reserve Personnel.

Royal octavo, bound in waterproof and bugproof cloth.
Over 2000 Pages. Over 1000 Illustrations.

VOL. I. *National Defense Act. Drill and Command. Military Courtesy. Rifle Marksmanship. Hygiene and First Aid. Scouting.*

VOL. II. *Patrolling. Musketry. Automatic Rifle. Guard Duty. Combat Principles, the Squad.*

VOL. III. *Map Reading. Sketching. Aerial Photos. Machine Guns. Howitzer Company Weapons. Combat Principles, Squad, Section and Platoon.*

VOL. IV. *Military Law. Reserve Corps Regulations. Military History and Policy. Administration. Field Engineering. Signal Communications. Combat Principles, Rifle and Machine Gun Cos., Howitzer Co. Platoon, Infantry Battalion.*

PRICES, POSTPAID.

Vol. I	$2.50	Vol. III	$3.50
Vol. II	2.25	Vol. IV	3.25
Vols. I-II	4.00	Vols. III-IV	5.75

BASIC MILITARY TRAINING

A reprint of Training Regulations, covering in one volume the same field as Vols. I and II above. Price, postpaid, $2.50.

Discount of 25% F. O. B., Washington on all orders for 10 or more books

For Sale by

THE INFANTRY JOURNAL

1115 17th St., N. W. **Washington, D. C.**

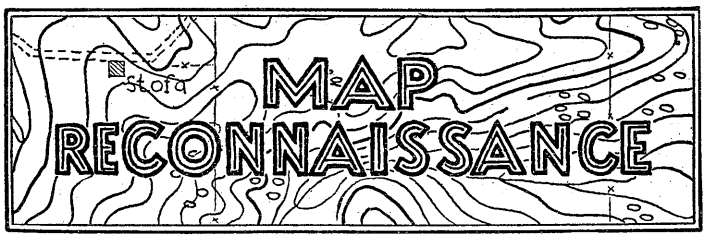
Can You Read a Map?

Can You Interpret Air Photographs?

Can You Make a Military Sketch?

Can You Teach Others to do so?

IF NOT



IS

THE BOOK YOU NEED

A simple, understandable exposition of a really non-technical subject often beclouded by "high-brow" treatment.

200 pages—110 illustrations

FIELD MANUAL SIZE CONVENIENT

PRICES

In cloth - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - $1.60 postpaid
In flexible, waterproof leatherette - - - - - - - - 1.80 postpaid

Your name stamped in gold on leatherette binding, 35 cents extra

Discount of 25% f. o. b., Washington, D. C., for 10 books or more

Order from

THE INFANTRY JOURNAL

1115 17th Street, N. W. Washington, D. C.

UNIQUE :: ACCURATE :: COMPREHENSIVE

OFFICERS' GUIDE

TABLE OF CONTENTS

THE ARMY AS A CAREER, by Gen. J. G. Harbord.

THE ARMY OF THE U. S. Military Policy. Organization.

WAR DEPARTMENT GENERAL MOBILIZATION PLAN.

M-DAY. Detailed duties during the first stages of a general mobilization.

FIRST COMMISSION. Problems that confront the new officer.

CLOTHING AND EQUIPAGE.

EDUCATION. The Army school system.

ASSIGNMENT, PROMOTION, TRANSFER.

LEAVE, PAY, ALLOWANCES.

FINANCES. Information on insurance and death provisions.

CUSTOMS OF THE SERVICE. Military Courtesies, Honors.

GARRISON AND FIELD SERVICE. Specific duties of company and staff officers.

FOREIGN SERVICE.

THE NATIONAL GUARD.

ORGANIZED RESERVES, R. O. T. C. & C. M. T. C.

THE MARINE CORPS. Customs and courtesies in the Navy.

COMPANY MANAGEMENT. Including the views of Gen. C. P. Summerall, Chief of Staff of the Army, on "Leadership."

MESS MANAGEMENT.

THE ROAD TO SUCCESS, by Gen. G. V. H. Moseley.

DISCIPLINE AND LEADERSHIP, by Gen. M. B. Stewart, Supt. of the U. S. Military Academy.

MANAGEMENT OF THE AMERICAN SOLDIER, by Gen. D. C. Shanks.

APPENDICES. Complete index to all Army, Technical, and Training, Regulations.

In Handsome Library Binding. Price, $2.75, Postpaid

DISCOUNT OF 25% F. O. B., WASHINGTON,
FOR 10 BOOKS OR MORE

Your name stamped in gold on binding, 35 cts. a copy

THE INFANTRY JOURNAL

1115 17th Street N. W. **Washington, D. C.**

UP-TO-DATE :: CONVENIENT :: AUTHORITATIVE

Victory Comes to the Leader Who Knows

Why was Hannibal successful at Cannae; Alexander at Arbela; Caesar at Pharsalus; William at Hastings; Charles Martel at Tours; The Black Prince at Poictiers; Gustavus Adolphus at Lutzen; Cromwell at Marston Moor; Frederick at Leuthen; Napoleon at Jena; Scott in Mexico; Grant and Lee in the Civil War; Moltke at Gravelotte; Oyama at Mukden?

Why was Gallipoli a failure? Who really won at Jutland? What tactical idea was the basis of the plan in the Meuse-Argonne?

Outlines of the

WORLD'S MILITARY HISTORY

By Lieutenant Colonel W. A. Mitchell
Professor, United States Military Academy

744 Pages **260 Illustrations** **Indexed**

Tells the Story of Wars Through the Ages and Gives the Reasons for Success or Failure

A TEXT BOOK AT WEST POINT

Price, Five Dollars, Postpaid

THE INFANTRY JOURNAL

1115 17th Street, N. W. **Washington, D. C.**

ENGINEER TRAINING TEXTS

Complete in two volumes

These texts are new, complete and comprehensive. They cover the entire field of Engineer training. Prepared especially for the use of Engineers, each subject has been written and illustrated by experts. The volumes are uniform in style with other training texts. They contain many practical exercises.

BASIC ENGINEER MANUAL. National Defense Act. Physical Drill. Rifle Marksmanship. Weapons (Rifle, Auto Rifle, Pistol). Scouting and Patrolling. Musketry. Guard Duty. Drill for Engineer Units. Military Courtesy. Hygiene and First Aid. Knots, Lashings and Rigging. Map Reading. Sketching. Aerial Photos. Combat Principles, the Engineer Squad. **Price $3.75 Postpaid.**

ADVANCED ENGINEER MANUAL. Military Law. Reserve Corps Regulations. Administration. Military History and Policy. Explosives and Demolitions. Roads. Railways. Bridges. Fortification. Map Making and Reproduction. Panoramic Sketching. Engineer Organization and Duties.
Price $6.00 Postpaid.

These texts contain over 2000 pages and over 1000 illustrations

THE MILITARY ENGINEER

Mills Bldg., Washington, D. C.

COAST ARTILLERY TRAINING TEXTS

These volumes are uniform in style with other training texts. They cover in two volumes the entire field of Coast Artillery training.

BASIC COAST ARTILLERY. National Defense Act. Military Courtesy. Drill and Command, Physical Drill. Rifle Marksmanship. Hygiene and First Aid. Scouting. Nomenclature, Functioning and Care of Guns and Carriages. Ammunition. Rigging. 155 mm. Gun. 3 in. Antiaircraft Gun. Telephones. Position Finding Instruments. Plotting, Prediction and Correction Devices. Aiming and Laying. Identification and Indication of Targets. Glossary. **Price $4.50 Postpaid.**

ADVANCED COAST ARTILLERY. Map Reading. Sketching. Aerial Photos. Military Law. Reserve Corps Regulations. Military History and Policy. Administration. Field Engineering. Artillery Organization. Position Finding Systems. Gunnery. Orientation. Artillery Tactics. Artillery Matériel. Tables. Glossary.
Price $6.00 Postpaid.

THE COAST ARTILLERY JOURNAL

1115 17th St., N. W., Washington, D. C.

Discount of 25% F. O. B. Washington, on all orders for 10 or more copies of any of above books

A Time Saver at the Time Time Counts

INDEX TO THE GETTYSBURG, FORT LEAVENWORTH AND FORT BENNING MILITARY AND GEOLOGICAL SURVEY MAPS

(Revised, 1931 Edition)

Price $1.00 Post Paid

THE INFANTRY JOURNAL

1115 17th St., N. W. **Washington, D. C.**

RESERVE OFFICERS' EXAMINER

This text places before Reserve Officers of all arms and services the essential information required for examination for promotion, presented in the convenient "question and answer" form. Open the book at any page and you will find there presented information that you must have to discharge your duties and qualify for promotion.

Price $2.00 Postpaid

THE INFANTRY JOURNAL

1115 17th St., N. W. **Washington, D. C.**

THE OLD SERGEANT'S CONFERENCES

An unique text prepared for the education of the young soldier. It is presented as a series of off-duty talks on the barrack porch between an old sergeant and the young recruits under his charge. It breathes the true spirit of army service, and points out the pitfalls that await the young soldier, and how they are avoided.

Cloth bound edition, $1.00 Postpaid
De Luxe edition, leather bound, $1.50 Postpaid

Special discount to organizations on request

THE INFANTRY JOURNAL

1115 17th St., N. W. **Washington, D. C.**

FUNDAMENTALS OF MILITARY STRATEGY

By COL. O. P. ROBINSON

A keen and searching analysis of the fundamentals that govern the conduct of war. Illustrated by notable examples from history. Indorsed by our leading military experts.

Add this book to your library.

Price, $3.00 Postpaid

THE INFANTRY JOURNAL

Washington, D. C.

Discount of 25% F. O. B. Washington, for all orders of 10 or more copies of any of above books